

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



3 1761 01284161 5





SUGGESTIVE THERAPEUTICS  
APPLIED HYPNOTISM  
PSYCHIC SCIENCE









A CONDITION OF VOLUNTARY RECEPTIVITY

(See page 74)

HANDBOOK  
OF  
SUGGESTIVE THERAPEUTICS  
APPLIED HYPNOTISM  
PSYCHIC SCIENCE

A MANUAL OF PRACTICAL PSYCHOTHERAPY, DESIGNED  
ESPECIALLY FOR THE GENERAL PRACTITIONER  
OF MEDICINE AND SURGERY

BY  
HENRY S. MUNRO, M. D.  
OMAHA, NEBRASKA

*THIRD EDITION, REVISED AND ENLARGED*  
RETURN TO  
DEPARTMENT OF PSYCHOLOGY LIBRARY  
UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO

ST. LOUIS  
C. V. MOSBY COMPANY

1913

COPYRIGHT, 1911, BY C. V. MOSBY COMPANY.

MN  
M

603100

1.3.55

Press of  
C. V. Mosby Company  
St. Louis

TO THE MEMORY OF  
**MY MOTHER**

WHOSE BEAUTIFUL EXAMPLE AND MOST FREQUENT  
SUGGESTION, "BE SURE YOU ARE RIGHT AND THEN  
GO AHEAD," HAS GIVEN TO MY LIFE WHATEVER  
DYNAMIC QUALITY CHARACTERIZES THIS BOOK.





## PREFACE TO THIRD EDITION.

The exhaustion of two large editions of this book within less than two years after its appearance attests the success of the humble efforts of the author in laying before the general practitioner an account of the principles of psychotherapy in such manner as to be of practical value as an adjunct to *his* therapeutic armamentarium.

That psychotherapy has won for itself the highest recognition of its deserved place in therapeutics is no longer questioned by one who has kept his eyes open to the advances of modern medical science. Its unqualified indorsement by the American Therapeutic Society; the establishment of the Henry Phipps Psychiatric Clinic at Johns Hopkins University under the efficient direction of Adolph Meyer, professor of nervous and mental diseases in that institution, where the psychoanalytic method of psychotherapy will be intelligently employed; its support by men of such recognized ability as Freud, Jung, Bleuler, Breuer, Prince, Janet, Babinski, Putnam, Sidis, Dubois, Münsterberg, Jones, Brill, Donley, Waterman, Taylor, and others shows the value of the various psychotherapeutic methods in their numerous applications in the treatment of disease. But some of these men—of unquestioned professional ability, able and scholarly—are disposed to limit its field to the department of neurology and psychiatry, when its greatest field of usefulness is in the general practice of medicine—in all classes of medical and surgical practice. A few of these men are disposed to speak disparagingly of many of the simpler psychotherapeutic devices, assuming a “holier than thou” attitude toward the employment of psychotherapeutic procedures in a class of work not coming within the domain of their own specialty. This attitude is unworthy of scientific men, many of whom apparently write to conceal thought rather than to impart practical knowledge. In their zeal for the limitation of psychotherapeutic principles to the scope of their own individual specialty, they couch their declarations in technical phrases that are beyond the grasp of the general practitioner.



To indicate the practical usefulness of psychotherapeutic principles in their application to the work of the general practitioner is the object of this book. The author simply states his experiences in support of his conviction of the broad scope and usefulness of psychotherapeutic procedures, and endeavors to show how their application is upheld by the theories advanced by the leaders of the present-day conception of psychotherapeutic principles, and describes the technic of their application.

The author hails with delight the fact that one of the greatest triumphs of neurology is its successful employment of measures aimed to modify the mental mechanism underlying the symptomatic manifestations presented in that class of nervous diseases designated as the psychoneuroses, and offers this little volume as proof beyond contradiction that this triumph does not in the least mitigate the value of the employment of the same therapeutic principle in other departments of medical practice.

The author most heartily agrees with the idea expressed by Adolph Meyer: "Habit training is the backbone of psychotherapy; suggestion merely a step to the end. Action with flesh and bone is the only safe criterion of efficient mental activity; and actions and attitude and their adaptation is the issue in psychotherapy." This idea is in perfect accord with the dynamic psychology which constitutes the basis of this thesis.

The present edition of this book contains eight entirely new chapters, which, together with the enlarged and rewritten chapters of the preceding editions, constitute an embodiment of the recent advances in psychotherapy, though still holding to all of the practical technic of the second edition.

The newer methods of employing psychotherapeutic procedures, such as are connected with the names of Freud, Breuer, and Jung, are succinctly described to meet the requirements of the general practitioner, in so far as the author conceives them to be of practical value as applied to his work. In deference to the methods of Freud, Breuer, and Jung, the reader must not regard the views herein expressed as being more than a general statement of the fundamental principles upon which the psychoanalytic method of psychotherapy is based, and an explanation of the more easily

comprehended technic of employing psychoanalysis for the diagnosis and treatment of the psychoneuroses "by bringing into consciousness the hitherto unconscious."

It has been particularly gratifying to the author that his most extreme views pertaining to the part played by that portion of our mental lives of which we are consciously unaware, as the result of forgotten experiences, are so overwhelmingly corroborated by the theories of Freud, Jung, Breuer, Bleuler, Prince, Sidis, Münsterberg, and many other men of note. The theory of dormant reserved subconscious energy, and the practical methods of its utilization in heightening the resistive powers of the individual in his effort to combat all forms of disease, was taught and demonstrated by the author to physicians as far back as 1899, and the corroboration of this theory by the experience of thousands of American practitioners has fixed the place for psychotherapeutic measures in the armamentarium of the general practitioner for all time.

HENRY S. MUNRO.

Omaha, Nebraska.

## PREFACE TO SECOND EDITION.

The author is profoundly grateful to the medical profession for the kindly reception accorded the first edition of this book. The exhaustion of a large edition since its appearance nine months ago attests its popularity.

The practicability and efficacy of psychotherapeutic procedures, as an adjunct in the treatment of disease, is no longer questioned by physicians who have personally tested the methods herein advocated.

The present edition has a more complete index, and has been brought up to date by the addition of new material on those phases of the subject on which advancement has been made during the past year in so far as such advancement is deemed of practical value to the general practitioner in the present evolution of psychotherapy.

HENRY S. MUNRO.

Omaha, Nebraska.

## PREFACE TO FIRST EDITION.

I bring to the consideration of the medical profession not merely the facts of personal experience and clinical evidence as proof of the value of suggestive therapeutics in the general practice of medicine, but also a detailed explanation of how to apply suggestion efficaciously, both with and without hypnotism, as a therapeutic adjunct. I give, in explanation of those facts, experience and clinical tests as interpreted in the light of modern scientific knowledge.

Many volumes have been written on this subject by neurologists, scientists, and psychotheraputists of note, but in most cases they lack the practicability so essential to its successful employment by the general practitioner. My aim is to emphasize the value of suggestive therapeutics, in a field of work that comes within his domain, which has not heretofore been pointed out by the authors of other works of this character. The presentation also embodies what I have assimilated and found practical from a careful study of the investigations of leading authorities on this subject. To make this book practical and easy of assimilation has been my constant aim. And here it may fitly be pointed out, with a view to forestalling criticism, that this book is not intended principally for neurologists and psychotheraputists, to whom the constant repetition of what to them are well-known facts must inevitably prove wearisome. It is intended rather to instill into the vast mass of the profession to whom this entire field is as yet *terra incognita* those basic principles of physiological psychology upon which the scientific therapeutic application of suggestion in all its forms necessarily depends. With that end in view, principles of all pervading importance are iterated and reiterated as often as their application comes under consideration, in order that they may become so fully absorbed and assimilated as to be almost axiomatic to the reader.

HENRY S. MUNRO.

Omaha, Nebraska.





# CONTENTS.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	17
CHAPTER I.	
THE AWAKENING INTEREST IN PSYCHOTHERAPY . . . . .	21
CHAPTER II.	
THE RELATION OF PSYCHOTHERAPY TO THE GENERAL PRACTICE OF MEDICINE AND SURGERY . . . . .	32
CHAPTER III.	
THE SCIENTIFIC BASIS OF PSYCHOTHERAPY . . . . .	44
CHAPTER IV.	
THE GENERAL UTILITY OF SUGGESTION . . . . .	57
CHAPTER V.	
HYPNOTISM DEMONSTRATED . . . . .	69
CHAPTER VI.	
PRACTICAL THEORETICAL CONSIDERATIONS . . . . .	87
CHAPTER VII.	
FURTHER CONSIDERATION OF THE PRINCIPLES, PROBLEMS, AND FIELD OF PSYCHOTHERAPY . . . . .	112
CHAPTER VIII.	
THE PSYCHOTHERAPEUTIC VALUE OF SUGGESTION . . . . .	130
CHAPTER IX.	
HYPNOTISM THERAPEUTICALLY APPLIED . . . . .	162
CHAPTER X.	
RATIONAL THERAPEUTICS IN EVERY-DAY PRACTICE . . . . .	207
CHAPTER XI.	
SOME OTHER PRACTICAL POINTS . . . . .	221
CHAPTER XII.	
SUGGESTION AS AN ADJUNCT IN THE ADMINISTRATION OF ANESTHETICS . . . . .	228
CHAPTER XIII.	
PSYCHOTHERAPY IN RELATION TO THE EXPECTANT MOTHER . . . . .	243

CHAPTER XIV.	
THE PSYCHOLOGIC FACTOR IN OBSTETRICS . . . . .	PAGE 247
CHAPTER XV.	
THE GUIDANCE OF THE SEXUAL INSTINCT . . . . .	255
CHAPTER XVI.	
PSYCHOANALYSIS IN THE TREATMENT OF THE PSYCHONEUROSES . . . . .	287
CHAPTER XVII.	
TRAINING THE SUBCONSCIOUS SELF . . . . .	318
CHAPTER XVIII.	
CORRECT DIAGNOSIS A SAFEGUARD AGAINST BLUNDERS . . . . .	326
CHAPTER XIX.	
PHILOSOPHY AND RELIGION — THEIR RELATION TO HEALTH . . . . .	332
CHAPTER XX.	
CONSERVATION OF ENERGY . . . . .	340
CHAPTER XXI.	
ROUGHING IT AS A MEANS OF HEALTH . . . . .	347
CHAPTER XXII.	
PERSONALITY AS A FACTOR IN THERAPEUTICS . . . . .	352
CHAPTER XXIII.	
THE ABUSE OF PERSONALITY . . . . .	359
CHAPTER XXIV.	
ENVIRONMENT — ITS INFLUENCE IN THERAPEUTICS . . . . .	364
CHAPTER XXV.	
THE BRUTALITY OF FRANKNESS . . . . .	368
CHAPTER XXVI.	
MORAL STAMINA — A THERAPEUTIC POWER . . . . .	375
CHAPTER XXVII.	
SUGGESTION IN EDUCATION . . . . .	381
CHAPTER XXVIII.	
SELF-MASTERY AS A FINE ART . . . . .	388

## INTRODUCTION.

It would be superfluous here to do more than briefly allude to the conditions under which this book was written. The problems of psychotherapy are forcing themselves so strongly upon the attention of the medical profession that I do not think that any experience that may throw light upon them should be withheld. In 1893, while a general practitioner of medicine, I became impressed with the great importance of properly directing the psychic factor in therapeutics, and for several years groped in the dark in search of ideas, with such aids as could be gained from the older writers on hypnotism and allied subjects.

Quite an impetus to my efforts was received during a three-months' stay in New York in 1895 in the personalities of well-known men in the schools of post-graduate instruction in that city, but the far-reaching influence of suggestion or the personal influence of the physician as a therapeutic aid in the general practice of medicine was not even faintly appreciated by the profession at that time.

In the latter part of 1899 I became convinced that the general profession should have a better understanding of the theory and efficacy of suggestive therapeutics and a knowledge of the practical methods of its administration; and, being fully satisfied that the methods which I had successfully employed in general practice for several years would be of practical value to all physicians as an addition to their therapeutic armamentarium, and believing also that this knowledge would be a means by which they could successfully combat the enormous increase in all the forms of quackery which were at that time springing up as the natural offspring of the rapid evolution in psychological development, I began going from city to city, giving a lecture on suggestive therapeutics, applied hypnotism, and psychic science, limiting my classes exclusively to the medical profession.

The cordial reception and appreciation accorded me in this self-



chosen field of endeavor by the more representative portion of the medical profession was beyond my most sanguine expectations, and in all places that I visited the physicians taking my lesson insisted that it be put into a permanent form, to be used by them for future reference.

I was not yet ready to commit myself to writing on this much mooted and misunderstood subject. Within the last twelve years, however, the attitude taken by the larger part of the medical profession in regard to the influence of the mind over the body has considerably changed. The study of psychology with laboratory instruments and methods has demonstrated the relation between thought and matter in a most convincing manner.

Monism, a philosophy which amalgamates or unifies the two entities called mind and matter, is becoming more popular. Physiology, psychology, and biology are on friendly terms, and harmoniously laboring to solve the problems that are being forced upon all thinking people, as well as physicians.

In contemplating my venture of 1899, I now fully appreciate the trite saying of Pope that "fools rush in where angels fear to tread." Be that as it may, I have been in association with those of the profession who have studied psychotherapeutics in all parts of the world, and they have had no hesitancy in saying that I had boiled down and crystallized the subject into a readily assimilable and excellent form for practical clinical use. So now, after enjoying the confidence and appreciation of the medical profession as a student and teacher of psychotherapy, I should deem myself reprehensible and cowardly did I not give my "mite" to help those who need strengthening on this line of advanced professional equipment.

The strong prejudice and open opposition to the free investigation and employment of psychotherapeutics has exerted an overmastering influence upon the minds of many of the members of the medical profession, and many there are who lack the courage and moral stamina to enter this field and employ its truths for the relief of countless thousands of individuals who do not need medicine or surgery, yet are vainly crying to us for help. While this state of apathy exists in the ranks of the medical profession, the popular

“ists” and “paths” and other disguises are standing with open arms, beckoning these discontented and unfortunate ones to come into their ranks and get their psychotherapy in a placebo capsule of religious dogma or bonepath massage.

I am also fully aware that it is not good policy for one seeking popularity to speak out frankly and honestly on this subject and tell the truth. Even physicians in many instances, who admit that they have made no effort to comprehend the principles of psychotherapy and apply them as a therapeutic adjunct, feel that any theory, or conception, or method that does not conform to their preconceived ideas, however worn out, moth-eaten, and useless, is an insult to their intelligence. Yet, in spite of my well-grounded and justifiable apprehensions, I now dare to offer this little volume, containing ideas, impressions, and opinions, based upon conscientious observation, demonstration, tests, and clinical evidence, on the one hand, and upheld by the more enlightened element of the medical profession in the leading cities that I have visited, on the other, perfectly willing to be ridiculed by those desiring to do so. If I succeed in convincing some part of the profession of the justice of the cause which I defend, and at the same time give others the opportunity of discussing it with a thorough knowledge of the facts upon which it is based, this alone will justify me in having undertaken the preparation of this little handbook.

It is not my desire to oppose any system of therapeutics, but to emphasize the importance of the mental factor in health and disease, and to point out practical methods that can be applied by the general practitioner as an adjunct to his therapeutic resources.

I fully realize that the ideas herein expressed will be of value only to those who find in themselves that inexplicable psychic response, which amounts to a conviction as regards the truth of the principles elucidated, sufficient to dispel the general unconcerned apathy or half-hearted uncertainty toward the practicability of these methods.

It has been my privilege to get in close touch with my colleagues in towns and cities, in private practice, and in hospitals. Here I have studied their problems and been uplifted and inspired by their courage and devotion to their work, and have learned to honor

and reverence character, manifested in the personality of a physician, as second to nothing in life. In their homes, in their conveyances, in the sick room, and in their private office work, as well as in hospitals and medical societies and colleges, I have been given a cordial welcome, and here I desire to express again my profound gratitude for such attentions by turning this little book over to them as a grateful reminder of bygone pleasant relations.

# SUGGESTIVE THERAPEUTICS.

---

## CHAPTER I.

### THE AWAKENING INTEREST IN PSYCHOTHERAPY.

The tool of psychotherapy is suggestion, and all suggestion operates upon the conscious every-day actions and beliefs of the patient, influencing the higher intellectual faculties and motor functions, and the subconscious, involuntary psychophysiological mechanisms comprising the functions of the entire animal physiology.

As comprehended today, psychotherapy is as much in the domain of physical and physiological therapeutics as is medicine, electricity, hydrotherapy, massage, surgery, or any other therapeutic expedient, and its application is just as scientific—its indications just as clearly defined. The truth of this proposition is not in the least questioned by any one familiar with the principles of modern physiological psychology.

Psychotherapeutic methods of procedure may practically be reduced to three measures—psychotherapy by hypnotic suggestion, that by suggestion in the waking state, and finally that by persuasion, reasoning, or re-education. From these various forms of psychotherapy the medical man must choose the method best adapted to the individual case as presented in actual clinical work.

All psychical treatment—direct or indirect, whatever be the form of procedure—aims at the persuasion of the patient. It is administered by the employment of suggestion to persuade, influence, or encourage the functions of the nervous system, whether acting on the higher mental levels, to which belong conscious and voluntary actions, or appealing to the lower mental levels, including



unconscious, automatic, involuntary actions. All methods of procedure make employment of suggestion, and, whatever be the difference in technic of administration, the results are obtained in conformity to a common law—the influence exerted by impressions from without upon the psychophysiological functions.

Every case requires a special method, and is in a way amenable to procedures of verbal suggestion. Psychotherapy, as a method, can not be brought under a single formula. The intelligent physician must be able to distinguish special indications, and to adapt his treatment to the psychology of each individual patient. The character of the patient, his sensitiveness, social level, and his degree of intelligence are all conditions that require from the physician, if he is to conduct a successful psychical treatment, the most varied modes of administration.

Rational psychotherapy **must** embrace physiological and educational therapeutics. The psychotherapeutic influence of dietetics, hydrotherapy, exercises, and gymnastics, combined with the individual merits of these therapeutic expedients, are so related that the employment of either procedure constitutes in some degree the employment of rational psychotherapy. The value of these procedures is not in the least questioned by any one giving adequate consideration to such rational measures in helping the individual, whatever be his ailment or disease, to secure and maintain a condition of health.

The intelligence of our age demands that an edequate study of man and the diseases that afflict him take into account the methods of developing and upbuilding the entire man, mental and physical.

The attention devoted to the study of man's diseases is most praiseworthy, and the efforts of pathology and diagnosis have been crowned with glorious achievements, but we have not devoted enough study to the methods of maintaining and developing the suffering individual. In our effort to make an exact terminological diagnosis and make a direct attack upon the pathological processes, the sick man himself has been neglected.

Besides mitigating pathological processes, physicians should be prepared to assist their patients in making use of the normal

mechanisms, or potentialities, of the entire organism in order to safeguard them against the recurrence of the outrages of pathological processes, or prevent the more serious pathological modifications, so far as such assistance is practicable. All sick people need such assistance. They need education, knowledge, and guidance in order that they may secure and maintain a heightened degree of resistive power in the cells of the organism, so as to render them invulnerable to the onslaught of diseased processes.

We should continue the study of the cause and prevention of disease. An intelligent conception of cause and prevention is an absolute necessity for the stability of medical science, but more study should be devoted to the sick individual demanding restoration to health. We have not given undue attention to the study of diseased processes, but to the living organisms we have devoted not enough.

As one of America's most eminent therapists tersely expresses it, "An adequate study of man and the diseases that afflict him takes into account all his faculties and functions, mental and nervous, as well as physical—all his surroundings, the conditions of birth, of parentage, and hence of inheritance. Man is a complex being, a conscious spark of divinity embodied in matter, and no part of his nature can be neglected or ignored without affecting the whole man in greater or less degree."

No one who has given attention to the study of psychology and of sociology can dispute that a very large percentage of our diseases are of mental origin. Of mental origin also are the countless criminals and so-called defectives of society. Mental causation and physical effects are correlated just in the same way as sensory stimuli and cerebral excitations are correlated to physical anatomy.

Butler truly says, "The power of mind over matter—or, more rationally, the relation between mind and matter—is everywhere being recognized with its true bearing on life and its various manifestations, and the uplifting of the human race to higher mental and intellectual planes has already begun. But man is not more all mind than he is all matter, and Christian science, mental healing, and such like cults, having their good and evil side according as their exponents are sincere and intelligent or the reverse, have

done some good and some harm, and so doubtless will continue to do to the end of the chapter. These cults all present interesting psychological studies, and, if examined fairly and dispassionately, they will prove valuable and instructive."

It is by reason of the neglect of psychological methods of treatment by the medical profession that many sick people have been forced to ignore scientific medicine in vain effort to obtain relief from their psychophysical ills, and to seek aid from the Christian scientist, the osteopath, the magnetic healer, or anything that offered help by means other than persistent drugging and unreasonable surgical procedures. That drugs and surgery are, and have been, two of the greatest blessings to the human race none but a tyro will question in the least, but that they have been, and at present are, greatly abused is one of the most glaring and reprehensible discredits to the medical profession.

The essential argument of the advocates of this branch of professional equipment is, first, the universality of its application as an adjunct to all classes of professional work. It is not to be regarded as a specialty. No special type of personality is essential to its successful employment any more than is requisite in any other branch of medicine or surgery. Like all other measures, all that is needed is a knowledge of the fundamental principles upon which its application as a therapeutic measure is based and a practical knowledge of the technic of the various methods of its employment. The same is true of the employment of surgery, materia medica agencies, electrotherapeutics, hydrotherapy, dietetics, and any other method of physical or physiological therapeutics.

The second of the arguments in favor of the employment of psychotherapeutic principles is that it is based upon sound, rational, scientific principles. Mental processes, physiological processes, and physical effects are related to each other in such a way that each reinforces the other.

The impression that some physicians have that psychotherapy directly demands from them that they are to humbug their patients, or throw out suggestions which they themselves do not believe, and thus bring them down to the level of the Christian



scientist, the osteopath, or the magnetic healer, is altogether an erroneous one. The tendency of the physician under such impressions to steer shy of the measure only shows his conscientious instinct on the one hand, and illustrates his misconception of the subject on the other.<sup>1</sup>

In all branches of medicine and surgery the line of demarcation between real science and its counterfeit is a very distinct one. The same is true as regards the employment of psychotherapeutic principles. A physician making employment of psychotherapy can make no greater mistake than to deviate in the least from the path of complete sincerity from his first steps in diagnosis to the employment of treatment for the relief of the condition found to be present.<sup>1</sup>

It is not necessary to make false or unreasonable promises in such cases where we believe that complete cure through the employment of psychotherapeutic principles is impossible. Even where we employ suggestion pure and simple, if we are to expect satisfactory results, they must be suggestions that are true and only the truth, as the experience of the patient and the actual physical and mental effects on the patient will in the due course of time confirm. Like the employment of all other measures, surgical or medicinal, the results largely, if not entirely, "depend upon the man behind the gun"—upon the personality of the physician making employment of the methods at hand. It is the function of the psychotherapist to so engage the psychophysical organism of his patient as to produce the results desired by the employment of the normal physiological mechanism of the nervous system.

The induction of anesthesia by suggestion is illustrative of the principle involved. The same principle is employed in securing sleep, or for the relief of pain, or to stimulate the functional activity of the stomach in perverted nutrition. The nervous system not only **acts** in the performance of its various functions, but it also **reacts** to the influence of mental and physical stimuli. In every one there are capabilities which potentially exist only when brought into action by a psychophysiological stimulus,

<sup>1</sup> Hugo Münsterberg: *Psychotherapy*.



The reaction of the nervous system to the stimulus of psychotherapeutic methods brings about the change from the abnormal to the normal, from the pathological to the physiological, from the unhealthy to the healthy, from a condition of functional inertia to one potentially active. In all diseased conditions, by whatever therapeutic measure we may employ, it is the restoration of functional activity that accomplishes the cure. This functional re-establishment is the *sine qua non* to the successful result achieved, by whatever measures we employ, in the treatment of any disease.

The third of the arguments in favor of the employment of psychotherapy is the large scope of its application in the general practice of medicine. In all acute diseases it is, when judiciously and skillfully employed, our most reliable functional stimulant, though generally unrecognized.

By its employment we quiet nervousness, promote sleep, aid digestion, encourage secretion and excretion, and, through a re-establishment of perverted functions, bring about an increased resistive power of every cell of the elements comprising the complex mechanism of the entire animal physiology. With its skillful employment the physician himself becomes one of the most potent aids in his therapeutic armamentarium.

To speak in general terms, he can employ such measures to retard the pulse, to inhibit pain, to lessen temperature, to modify hemorrhage, to stimulate functional activity, and, in consequence of its employment as a physiological stimulant, to make new blood and to increase the resistive power of all normal cellular elements to the onslaught of pathological processes.

Psychotherapy finds a most valuable field in the correction of vices, the curing of various drug habits, developing latent talents, strengthening the muscles, and in correcting such morbid psychasthenic conditions as the various phobias, obsessions and associated conditions, despondency, and other morbid mental manifestations.

Not only are results realized in so-called functional and psychoneurotic conditions—such as headaches, neuralgias, rheumatism, impotency, certain forms of asthma, writer's cramp, con-

stipation, nocturnal enuresis, inebriety, drug habit, hysteria, and monomania—but excellent results are obtained in various gynecological diseases of a functional character, and in perversions and weaknesses of all kinds; also in pernicious and other forms of anemia, chronic malarial infection, and for the relief of the morbid psychic element accompanying organic valvular lesions, and to assist in the functioning of the disabled heart as well.

Medicine has always paid much attention to the psychic side of disease. Though unconsciously and unintentionally, she has been forced to consider the psychic factor not only in coming to her diagnosis, but also in planning her treatment. From time immemorial physicians have consciously or unconsciously utilized the minds of their patients, directly or indirectly, to combat their ills. What constitutes the more recent development in this field is the more extended and more precise application of psychic methods of diagnosis, and the elaboration and more intelligent utilization of psychotherapeutic methods. As Professor Lewellys F. Barker remarks,<sup>1</sup> "Modern medicine is striving toward rational psychic diagnosis and rational psychotherapy."

The inquiry into the psychic state of the patient is often more important than the somatic inquiry, but how seldom does the physician investigate systematically the cause of the mental condition. The technic of eliciting mental symptoms has to be learned and practiced just as one has to learn and practice the technic of physical diagnosis.

The latest movement in the employment of psychotherapy in the treatment of mental diseases is in connection with the name of Freud, of Vienna, commonly referred to as the psychoanalytic form of psychotherapy, in which he seeks to remove the ultimate mental cause giving rise to certain symptoms resulting from a psychological trauma—a disagreeable idea which, inhibited in the mind, becomes the source of mischief and produces phobias, obsessions, and hysterical manifestations. This method of diagnosis and psychotherapeutic treatment, which is entirely in its beginning, promises wide application in a hitherto very intractable class of patients.

<sup>1</sup> Address before Rush College medical students, 1907.

Among others whose contributions to the development of modern psychotherapy stand out conspicuous are the names of such men as Janet, Bernheim, Liebeault, Binet, Dubois, Prince, Putnam, Boris Sidis, Münsterberg, Jung, Forel, and many others.

These writers apparently would limit the field of psychotherapy to neurology and psychiatry when it is equally applicable as a therapeutic adjunct in all classes of professional work. They have conclusively demonstrated that a functional disorder, so-called, is as much a real disease as any other abnormal mental or physical state. The work of the general practitioner is preventive as well as curative, and, if he is well equipped with the theoretical basis of psychotherapy, together with the practical methods of its employment, many patients would be relieved by him before their symptoms reach such gravity as to seek aid from the neurologist or psychiatrist. Psychotherapy is applicable in all classes of medical practice as an adjunct to other recognized agencies.

The *Journal of Abnormal Psychology*, June-July, 1909, contains eight interesting and highly instructive papers upon various aspects of psychotherapy which were read before the American Therapeutic Society at the annual meeting in New Haven, Connecticut, in May, 1909.

The significance of the awakening interest in this branch of therapeutics on the part of the medical profession is indicated by the fact that the president of the American Therapeutic Society, Frederick H. Gerrish, professor of surgery in Bowdoin Medical College, Brunswick, Maine, in the endeavor to learn what subjects most interested the physicians constituting the membership of this society, wrote to almost the entire membership, asking each to suggest topics for three symposia. Many of the correspondents proposed psychotherapy, and these suggestions, he said, coincided with his purpose to have, if possible, a discussion on the subject which has not been previously presented, and one of such importance that every medical practitioner, whatever be his favorite line of work, should be well grounded in its principles and familiar with its methods.

In the introductory address by Professor Gerrish, as president of the American Therapeutic Society, he says: "Indeed, most



physicians, and some neurologists, have little appreciation of this branch of the healing art, and treat it cavalierly, if they deign to give it any consideration. The time seemed opportune for a careful, serious, scientific study of the subject by this society, the only national organization in America devoted exclusively to therapeutics. Furthermore, it was plain to me that this association, whose single purpose is so conspicuously declared by its name, was under a peculiar obligation to the profession in the premises, and ought, as far as possible, to correct the misapprehensions which prevail concerning psychotherapy, and accord the sanction of its interest and influence to this valuable form of treatment. By great good fortune the aid of eight physicians was enlisted in this cause, all of whom are learned in modern psychology, expert in neurology, skillful in psychotherapy, and enthusiastic in expounding their favorite doctrines. They constitute a galaxy which can not be duplicated on this continent."

It is particularly pleasing to me to see that all that I have claimed for psychotherapy as an adjunct to the generally recognized therapeutic agencies, in the general practice of medicine, still stands unscathed and unreprieved by the theories of the eight participants in this symposium, all of whom, in the words of Professor Gerrish, "are learned in modern psychology, expert in neurology, skillful in psychotherapy, constituting a galaxy which can not be duplicated on the continent."

The theories advanced by these scholarly essayists and that given by me in explanation of the results obtained by the employment of psychotherapeutic principles, or of the personal influence of the physician both with and without the employment of hypnotism, are identical in idea, in fact, and in method, as well as in scope of application, the difference being only one of phraseology—of terms used to convey ideas.

For practical purposes, our knowledge of psychotherapy should consist of an apprehension of facts and a description of those facts in terms that can be comprehended by the intelligence of the average physician, as well as by the well-educated medical student. Our medical education has been so deficient in this branch of study that the average well-educated physician is lost in con-

fusion of terms used by the majority of psychotheraputists to elucidate the principles of psychotherapy, and they fall short of an elucidation of the subject that would be of practical value to the general practitioner.

Our medical schools are responsible for the apparent apathy on the part of many physicians as regards psychotherapeutic treatment, as in none of them, except two or three of the larger eastern universities, is the subject taught as a part of the medical curriculum. The physicians who have been aroused to a realization of the utility of such measures are, as a rule, those who have had their attention drawn to the subject by experiences in the post-graduate schools of Europe and also, in some measure, in New York and Chicago.

The spirit of commercialism which actuates the movements of the promoters of our multiplicity of medical colleges is evidently responsible for the neglect of the teaching of such methods as will establish or induce in the individual comparative immunity to infection and other etiological factors of disease. Many physicians are narrow enough to see in such measures as will increase the efficiency of the individual a direct antagonist to all other therapeutic expedients, instead of regarding them as an efficient therapeutic adjunct.

Doctor Jacob Gould Sherman, in his address before the Joint Council on Medical Education and the Committee on Public Legislation of the American Medical Association, sounded the keynote to the situation in saying,<sup>1</sup> "And if in this presence I do not say that the medical profession has been commercialized, I do not hesitate to assert that many medical schools and colleges have been established for the pecuniary benefit of their promoters, with the result that we now have in the United States almost as many of these institutions as all the rest of the civilized world, and our standards of medical education are a disgrace to the nation and an outrage on humanity. . . . Considering the close relation between mind and body and the dependence of some diseases on mental conditions, I am often amazed that medical men fail so completely to realize the importance of the study of the sciences

<sup>1</sup> Journal of the American Medical Association, April 16, 1910.

of mind as a part of that curriculum of the preliminary education they lay down for prospective students of medicine."

Upon this phase of the subject Münsterberg remarks: "Indeed the time is ripe for a systematic introduction of psychological studies into every regular medical course. It is not a question of mental research in the psychological laboratory where advanced work is carried on, but a solid foundation in empirical psychology can be demanded of every one. He ought to have as much psychology as he has physiology."

Lewellys F. Barker, professor of medicine in Johns Hopkins University, tells us that <sup>1</sup> "America, so far ahead in many subjects of medical instruction, is no less than fifty years behind Europe in this particular."

---

<sup>1</sup> Address before Rush College medical students.

## CHAPTER II.

### THE RELATION OF PSYCHOTHERAPY TO THE GENERAL PRACTICE OF MEDICINE AND SURGERY.

Whatever may be our favorite line of professional work, we can not overlook the fact that we are, as physicians, a body of organized men laboring for the common good of humanity. The medical profession is for mankind, and its greatest problem is to secure honest and faithful performance of professional obligation.

Important questions in special departments of medicine must constantly claim our attention, and it is therefore easy in the zeal of our specialties to lose sight of the simple requirements of fidelity to the public at large.

Whatever be the merits of our special departments of professional work, the final test must ever be found in the character and purpose of our effort to contribute to the public weal. It should be borne in mind that we are not merely doctors, but something more. We are American citizens, and as such nothing should seduce, or daunt, or affright us, or shake that adherence to the principles of fair dealing and honorable execution of duty which makes every medical practitioner the embodiment of the cause of liberty.

It is in this altruistic spirit that, as both a physician and an American citizen, these remarks are addressed to the profession of medicine. My aim is to show that in psychotherapy we have an invaluable adjunct to all classes of professional work, and that the ultimate end of its more extensive employment would be a great contribution to the common welfare of humanity; not to disparage other branches of professional work, but to show that in psychotherapy all branches of medicine have an efficient aid in the treatment of sick people and of all others who seek our help. "Its evolution, like that of all other modes of treatment, is marked by an ever-increasing precision in method and an ever-deepening com-



prehension of the conditions to which it is applicable. Progress in these two respects must always go hand in hand, for the moment therapeutics becomes divorced from pathology and diagnosis it leaves its scientific basis and stands in danger of approximating to that medical charlatanry which it is the highest interest of our profession to combat."<sup>1</sup>

Each member of the human race is potentially the result of what he brings into this world as an inheritance, on the one hand, modified by environment, on the other. In the employment of psychotherapy the physician himself becomes a part of the patient's environment in a truer and deeper sense than is done without an effort to employ psychotherapeutic principles, and through its application determines a new sequence of ideas.

All psychotherapeutic measures are educational measures pure and simple. The importance of education in determining what the individual is in mental and physical attributes is not accorded the consideration that it deserves at the present time. It constitutes one of the most potent therapeutic resources at our command, and its value extends not only in the field of preventive medicine, but as a direct therapeutic resource as well.

In the field of preventive medicine we have accomplished much by the employment of educational procedures. Smallpox, yellow fever, cholera, and many other contagious and infectious diseases have been practically exterminated, but more yet remains to be accomplished. By teaching the people how to avoid the sources of infection from the typhoid fever bacillus, the bacillus of meningitis, hookworm, diphtheria, and scarlet fever infections, which has been enforced upon the public by scientific men, thousands of human lives are today saved which in former times were sacrificed to ignorance. When more is known of the causes of cancer and pellagra, it is strongly probable that these scourges of the human race will be quelled in the same way.

Shakespeare's expression, "Ignorance is the curse of God; knowledge the wings wherewith to fly to Heaven," might well be paraphrased so as to read, "Ignorance is the cause of disease; knowl-

<sup>1</sup> Ernest Jones.—*Journal of Abnormal Psychology*, June-July, 1909.



edge is the wings wherewith to fly to health." The etiological factors of disease are here, and ever will be.

It is up to the individual to live so as to maintain a degree of resistive power that will render the cells of his organism invulnerable to the outrages of pathological process. That this is the real problem for the individual, and therefore for the medical profession—the problem of man for mankind—must be plain to every one, but how are we to go about it? The accomplishment of this end is the goal sought by scientific medicine—our real problem—before which every other problem fades into insignificance. To this end we need the contribution of every department of medical science and of surgery as well.

But pathology alone will not solve the problem. Finding microbes and abnormal cells, or making blood counts, will not do the work for the individual. Pathological findings help us better to determine what we can do for him and what we can get him to do for himself, and therein is its greatest help.

Surgery will not solve the problem. We can remove the pathological processes, cut out or destroy the diseased part, but, if we do that and nothing more, we frequently accomplish very little for the individual.

Medicine, alone or combined with electrotherapeutics, hydrotherapy, and massage, will not solve the problem.

After we have all the assistance offered by the combined therapeutic, mechanical, and surgical devices of medicine, as it is generally taught and practiced today, we have not done enough. We need to do something more. We need to help to equip the individual to help himself.

To help those individuals who stand in need of such assistance to so make employment of their physiological machinery that the highest possible condition of physical and mental stability may be maintained while making the struggle for existence, is the special function of psychotherapy.

Let me make a picture. Over on one side we see arrayed two powerful forces of nature. The one is composed of inherited weaknesses, microbes, and ignorance—the etiological factors of disease. On the other side are arrayed the accumulated knowledge of all ages,

human intelligence, altruism—the real helpers of man. The combat between these two forces is both pathetic and interesting, and a recitation of its history marks the footprints of evolution and the development of modern science. But the fight is only half begun. Obsolete therapeutic systems, unreasonable surgical procedures, false theological concepts, and irrational educational methods, which have been hindrances to the welfare of the human race, are being rapidly refuted, and the adherents of scientific knowledge, practically applied, are day by day gaining new victories—victories for the whole of mankind.

We are accomplishing much today in a therapeutic way by educational methods pure and simple. The civilized world is witnessing a movement on the part of the medical profession that is destined to equip the people to fortify themselves against the ravages of the malarial and tubercle infections, which have so long been the most formidable of the enemies of the human race, with results that promise the dawn of a new and brighter day to millions of people, as well as the saving to the world annually of thousands of human lives.

For the protection of the people against the ravages of the malarial infection, they are taught the importance of the isolation of the infected individual by the use of screens to prevent the transmission of the infection by the mosquito, and the employment of quinin taken internally to render them immune to the infection, as well as to cure the disease after the failure to observe the precautions to prevent it.

But the message that science brings today to those infected with the tubercle bacillus is an index to another important truth that the profession by these psychotherapeutic prophylactic procedures is attempting to drive home to the consciousness of mankind. Our leading pathologists and clinicians are saying to the individual in the incipient stage of tuberculosis: "Your hope is in the line of self-development; you must live so as to maintain a degree of resistive power in the cells of your organism to the extent that they will be invulnerable to the ravages of the tubercle bacillus, and this factor will not count so far as you are concerned."

The very beginning of the treatment of tuberculosis is by suggestion. It suggests that the individual avail himself of fresh air in abundance, of sunshine, easily assimilated food, sleep, and work. It assures the patient that he can outlive the enemy; and the physician who himself most sincerely believes in the efficacy of the means to secure the desired therapeutic result is always the most successful in the treatment of this disease, because his confidence not only enables the patient to better co-operate in the employment of the regimen outlined, but has a weighty psychophysiological significance in the promotion of the welfare of the patient as well.

His association with his patient results not only in the administration of psychotherapy, strictly speaking, but in the training of the patient into such habits of thought and action that call into play neuron elements, the functioning of which enables the patient to conform to the physiological requirements of health. Such association inspires hope, confidence, and expectancy, and the mental states thus created, or induced, encourage all of the involuntary physiological processes. Such a psychophysiological stimulus aids the functioning of the normal nervous mechanisms of the animal physiology to the extent that increased phagocytosis results and a corresponding increase in constructive metabolism, which adds to the dynamic potency of every cell of the human organism.

By the employment of psychotherapy we assist nature in her efforts to combat morbid processes, and in this way we aid all other therapeutic expedients. By such measures we place the patient under the most favorable circumstances for nature to do her work, and, at critical moments, we stimulate the patient's flagging powers and thus bridge over a yawning gulf. We can palliate many of the distressing symptoms of disease, but we can not atone for all the outrageous infringements of nature's inexorable laws. Neither can we remedy such matters by dosing with drugs, or by surgical procedures, or by any other therapeutic device; moreover, it is not likely that we ever shall be able to do so.

Psychotherapy, correctly construed, could very appropriately



be designated as the employment of psychological, physiological, and educational therapeutics. Such must be the conception of "psychotherapy" before it is rational. When the physician fails to employ ideas purely as a physiological or functional stimulant, especially in depressing diseases, he omits the *sine qua non* to successfully treat disease. When he leaves out of consideration the measures to get his patient to conform to the physiological requirements of health as a means of obtaining the best therapeutic results, he is neglecting one of the greatest therapeutic adjuncts available. When he fails to educate his patient into such habits of living—eating, exercise, sleep, work, rest, fresh air, sunshine, and cheerfulness—as well as to arouse in him such mental states as are within themselves of direct therapeutic value, he is strongly allied to the charlatan who ignores other well-recognized therapeutic agencies.

But it is particularly in functional and neuropathic disorders that psychotherapy is most successful. When the term "functional" is employed in the above statement, we must understand that both mind and body are in disorder—that the function of the disturbed brain cells accompanies the ineffective will, and that to reinforce the will means to again bring into equilibrium the disturbed brain cells. There is a strong temptation for the psychotherapist to give attention only to the mental symptoms of disease, but the more firmly the physician adheres to the standpoint of psychophysiology, the better he will see disorder and cure in the right proportion.<sup>1</sup>

The entire personality, mind and body, should be considered, and the popular separation between organic and functional diseases should no longer be tolerated. Every psychical disturbance is organic, inasmuch as it is based on a molecular change which deranges the function. Some of these changes are beyond restitution; some can be restored to normal activity by medicinal prescriptions, mechanics, and hydrotherapy, or dietetics; but the vast majority can be repaired only by physiological stimuli which reach directly the higher brain cells through the sense organs, and

<sup>1</sup> Hugo Münsterberg: Psychotherapy.

which we call psychical under one aspect, but which certainly remain physiological influences from another aspect.<sup>1</sup>

Most of the so-called functional disorders, among which are the neurasthenics and psychasthenics, are maintained in consequence of physiological insufficiency or incompetency. The cells of the entire physiological organism do not properly perform their function. Consequently a lowered degree of resistive power is maintained, which renders the individual particularly susceptible to the ravages of pathological processes. The timely treatment of such cases by such measures as will restore the disordered function will prevent its resulting in gross pathological changes. "The psychophysiological influence of spoken words, whether employed with or without hypnosis, is as rational and effective as the bath, the electric current, or the opiate."<sup>1</sup>

The neurasthenic and psychasthenic classes are the too frequent victims of all kinds of quackery and the over-enthusiastic surgeon as well. When surgery is resorted to for the relief of the minor structural abnormality so frequently observed in a patient of an already lowered resistive power, such patient is seldom benefited thereby, but in the larger percentage of cases actually made worse. The draught upon the reserved forces by the employment of the anesthetic with a patient of unstable nervous organization, and the amount of reserved energy consumed in the process of repair from the operation, is far in excess of the benefit that accrues in the larger proportion of cases.

What we see depends not only upon what we are looking for in the consideration of a given case, but upon the way we see it. It largely depends upon the impressions made upon and conserved by our brain cells.

The psychology of excessive specialization in medicine or surgery is a most interesting one and well worthy of our attention. Contemporary psychologists are fully agreed upon the fact that the nervous system faithfully conserves and reproduces its experiences; that conservation is fundamental for education; that ideas which make up viewpoints, attitudes of mind, beliefs, and

---

<sup>1</sup> Hugo Münsterberg: Psychotherapy.



convictions, if once firmly formed and organized, whatever or however be the experience forming them, remain as a part of our personality, to functionate again and again in the life of the individual. This theory or hypothesis is as true regarding viewpoints concerning methods of treating the neurasthenic and psychasthenic classes by surgical procedures, or by educational methods, as in other departments of experience. All of our experiences—anything that we have thought, seen, heard, or felt—tend to be conserved by the neuron elements in such a way that they can be reproduced in a form approaching the original experience.

We could never remember anything unless our experiences were conserved in a way that they could be reproduced in our consciousness by some arrangement of the neuron elements for preserving them. The importance of this well-established fact of physiological psychology for the scientific application of psychotherapy can not be overestimated. Moreover, it gives a scientific explanation for the tendency of some departments of medicine and surgery to overestimate the importance of their special methods, and this is particularly true regarding the employment of surgery for the relief of the minor structural abnormality that can almost universally be found in the neurasthenic and psychasthenic.

Operations for "reflex irritations," so-called, are no longer justifiable. It is the general condition of physiological insufficiency or incompetency which needs to be treated. In many such cases a cure can be effected only by stimulating and encouraging the patient's subconscious or involuntary physiological processes until he or she can, by such aid, secure that degree of physical and mental stability sufficient for them, unaided and alone, to possess the capacity to execute your advice concerning methods of living so as to maintain a degree of physical well-being commensurate with a useful and happy life.

Buchanan, professor of surgery in Glasgow University, in speaking of psychological methods of treatment, is quoted from an editorial in the London *Lancet* as saying:<sup>1</sup> "Pathologists will limit the area of the process to the province of functional diseases,

<sup>1</sup> Edmund J. A. Rogers: *Medical Psychology*.—Journal of the American Medical Association, June 12, 1909.

but we are not sure that we are justified by scientific facts in making this limitation. It is a fact in pathology that if the functions of an organ be maintained or restored, much of the destructive metamorphosis may be arrested, and to some extent repaired. The *vis medicatrix naturæ* is a very potent factor in the amelioration of disease if it will be allowed to have fair play."

The late Professor William James, in his masterly address to the American Philosophical Association on the "Energies of Men," a man who stands as an intellectual giant above prejudice and preconceived notion, weighing each new fact as it is presented, calls attention to the fact that in every one there are latent powers which, when aroused under extraordinary stimuli, enable one to do what would have been thought beyond all possibility.<sup>1</sup>

In speaking of methods of arousing dormant, subconscious energy in this article, Professor James says:<sup>1</sup> "Suggestion, especially under hypnosis, is now universally recognized as a means, especially successful in certain persons, of concentrating consciousness, and in others of influencing their body states. It throws into gear energies of imagination, of will, and of mental influence over physiological processes that usually lie dormant."

Professor Edmund J. Rogers, a well-known surgeon, says:<sup>1</sup> "As the disturbance of physiological function is the important element in the causation of disease, the restoration of function may often restore health; indeed, as resistance to infection, immunity, etc., are produced by the functional secretions of certain cells, we realize at once the importance of this question of the control of cell function."

The success of psychotherapy in the general treatment of disease is due to the fact that we can influence the functional activity of every cell in the human body, and that such can be done the author has demonstrated to the satisfaction of five thousand well-known American physicians.

According to Hammond, of New York, 75 percent of the patients that consult the nerve specialists are neurasthenics. A well-known western pathologist remarked in the presence of the writer that 75

---

<sup>1</sup> Edmund J. A. Rogers: Medical Psychology.—Journal of the American Medical Association, June 12, 1899.

percent of all neurasthenics had sufficient degenerative changes in the structural elements of the appendix to justify operation, and he further remarked that fully 75 percent of the American people are neurasthenics. If he had let his estimate include also the psychasthenics and other persons living minus that degree of resistive power in the cells of their organism commensurate with a normal healthful state of mind and body, it is quite likely that his estimate is not too high. It is from the neurasthenic and psychasthenic class that the great army of tuberculous victims are being recruited; they furnish the great majority of patients in our surgical wards; from them pneumonia reaps its greatest harvest; it is from this class that the stomach specialist, the gynecologist, and even the general practitioner have their greatest following. What these people need is not medicine or surgery, only in exceptional cases, but education, knowledge, and guidance—psychotherapy pure and simple.

Inherent within the protoplasmic elements of the human organism is latent unrecognized, available energy, that, by the judicious employment of psychotherapeutic methods, can be turned into self-control, both consciously and subconsciously, and by its guidance and direction the individual can achieve a quality of physical resistance commensurate with a condition of mental and physical well-being—a condition of perfect health. We thus develop the fighting capacity of the cells of the organism, and fortify the individual against the invasion of pathogenic germs and other etiological factors of disease.

As our comprehension of the scope and usefulness of psychotherapy becomes broader, the more do we appreciate its application as an adjunct to all branches of professional work.

The surgeon finds in psychotherapy a most efficient ally. By its employment the dangers of ether and chloroform anesthesia are minimized, and the possibilities of better results from surgical work enhanced to a marked degree, due to the wonderful conservation of the patient's reserved energy by the employment of the minimum amount of the anesthetic.

The general practitioner finds in psychotherapy an effectual method of relieving the nervousness and insomnia accompanying



any disease, acute or chronic, organic or psychoneurotic, and an effectual method of increasing his patient's resistive powers by the effect produced upon the patient's involuntary physiological processes as well.

Psychotherapy does not seek to supplant the employment of quinin in the treatment of malaria, of mercury in syphilis, of anti-toxin in diphtheria, or of iron and arsenic in anemic conditions; neither does it seek to replace antiseptics, eliminants, and those materia medica agencies which act by chemically antagonizing the effects of morbid conditions, but it does enable the general practitioner to dispense with narcotics, analgesics, and anodynes to a wonderful extent, and saves the patient from the necessity of taking such remedies that depress and retard functional activity and lessen the resistive power of the organism to diseased processes. In other words, by its employment we not only quiet nervousness, relieve pain, and induce sleep, but bring about a re-establishment of perverted function, and in this way increase the fighting capacity of every cell in the human organism. We help the patient to secure and maintain a condition of health.

We have, as a profession, too long neglected the higher evolutionary factors of human personality. Man is a being with intelligence, desires, aspirations, memory, will, reason, perception, and judgment; these psychic qualities can not be found with the microscope, or the test tube, or the dissecting knife, but they functionate in perfect correlation with the brain cell elements, constituting the dynamics of the human organism, and their employment in therapeutics constitutes the most potent curative agent at our command.

In all classes of disease, psychotherapy finds an important field of application as a therapeutic adjunct, for all sick people need to be taught how to exercise their capacity, physical and mental, conscious and subconscious, voluntary and involuntary, in lines of healthful thought and action, so as to maintain a degree of resistive power in the cells of the physical organism commensurate with a condition of health.

While we shall unceasingly fight the bacterial origin of disease with every available resource, we can employ psychotherapy to make

a direct impression upon the brain, the organ which concentrates and distributes our energies, and, in response to well-accepted laws of physiological psychology, increase the functional activity of every cell contained in the human body, and thus render it less vulnerable to the ravages of pathogenic germs and other etiological factors of disease.

Then the question which very naturally suggests itself in relation to so potent a curative agent is, Why is it not employed more generally by the medical profession? The answer is they don't know how to employ it. The method must of necessity appeal most strongly to the highly educated classes of people, and, since the medical schools have, except in the instance of a few of our leading universities, regarded the psychotherapeutic branch of medicine almost with absolute indifference, the people are seeking aid from all kinds of modern healing faddists, who most crudely and unscientifically make employment of psychic methods of treatment and who also ignore other rational therapeutic expedients. The medical profession is being awakened from its long sleep over its rights, the people are demanding something more substantial than the usually recognized therapeutic methods, and the day is not far distant when a chair of psychotherapy will be in all first-class medical colleges.



## CHAPTER III.

### THE SCIENTIFIC BASIS OF PSYCHOTHERAPY.

Psychotherapy exercises its potentiality as a therapeutic resource by its influence upon human experience. It is the conclusion of monism that processes of experience and brain processes belong to the same thing, as different aspects of its one and the same action, and that this thing is neither brain nor mind, but reality—the organism in function. A different brain change occurs for every difference of experience.

In the study of the nervous system we find for every difference of experience—whether of quality, intensity, or structure—a corresponding physical change. The end sought in psychotherapeutic treatment is to bring the patient under the influence of such experiences as will produce such brain changes that will promote the normal functioning of the organism on the one hand, and that will serve to adapt the individual to his environment on the other.

Every process of experience, state of consciousness, or condition of mind is associated with corresponding organized physiological processes or physical changes, which are the results of such experiences upon the neuron elements. Psychic traits, dispositions, or qualities of personality or mentality are acquired by experiences coming at some time within the life of the individual, and they do not exist apart from the functions of the nerve and brain cell. To think of a quality of personality as existing apart from the functions of the nerve and brain cell is folly. The neuron and its activities constitute the basis of all psychic action. Neurosis and psychosis go hand in hand. No neurosis, no psychosis; no psychosis, no neurosis. That every psychical phenomenon has its physical concomitant is the well-established basis of physiological psychology.

We account for the results of psychotherapeutic treatment as we account for other processes of experience. Every process of experience implies two sets of conditions—the occasion or the stimulus on one hand, the reacting structure on the other. The occasion or stimulus may be mental or physical, and we are about to see how a physical stimulus can be understood to act upon the mind and experience, and how these can be understood to act upon the body. The reacting structure is the mind, and, in assuming that it has its physical correlate in the structure of the nervous system, there accordingly it is open to description and explanation like other physical structures.

Our entire experience, and that of the lower forms of life as well, presents a growing complexity of structure and a deepening psychophysical unity. Of the mind, as of other things, there is no saying what it is by itself apart from all its connections. So long as we regard it in connection with the functions of the neuron, we are on a scientific basis.

We know the mind, as we know other things, by what it does, and we are thus enabled to reason from cause to effect. What it does is to always experience—to both act and react under the influence of innumerable internal and external stimuli; and whatever it does, consciously or unconsciously, designedly or unintentionally, must be revealed in experience, just as the most invisible works in nature are revealed in sensation.

The nervous system faithfully conserves and reproduces its experiences, and all experiences, however and whenever formed, if conserved, are a part of ourselves and belong to us as an essential part of our personality. Try as we will, we can not get away from the influence of past experiences in the determination of what we are today. We can modify, change, or neutralize the effect of our experiences to a considerable extent, but we can not destroy them. Every experience retains the right to express its influence in our later life. Conserved as they are by the nervous system, they represent in reality living, active forces operating for the good or harm of the individual.

The experience of our forgotten childhood and youth, even those of infancy, lives actively in our adult years, and contributes

to the formation of that variously named portion of our mental lives of which we are not consciously aware. The study of this portion of our mental lives—repressed, yet active—constitutes one of the most interesting phases of psychotherapeutic treatment, the importance of which is not justly appreciated at the present time.

While inheritance plays an important part, and varies within wide limits, in making us what we are in mind and body, the most important factors are the influences to which we are subjected after birth. This is not to depreciate the importance of what we bring into the world as a hereditary endowment, but to emphasize the importance of education and training after we are born.

If we would change the mental and physical constitutions of an individual, bring him under the influence of such experiences as will bring about such modifications or changes as are desired. All experience, however and whenever acquired, is education, and, whether its influence is for good or ill, it should be given a broader meaning than is usually accorded it. While the influence of all experiences of the past are ever active in the various functions of the psychophysical organism of man, it is never too late to bring him under such experiences as will modify, influence, change, inhibit, or encourage the functions of the nervous system set into operation by previous experiences. To bring about such changes as will result in the upbuilding of the physiological and mental constitutions of our patients, where such help is needed, is the function of psychotherapy.

Münsterberg remarks: "Theoretically, the field in which psychotherapy may work on both mental manifestations and bodily functions is a large and interesting one, but it is still open to little real understanding. The explanation has essentially to rest on the acceptance of a given physiological apparatus. A certain psychophysical excitement produces by existing nerve connections a certain effect, for instance, on the blood vessels or on the glands of a certain region, or on a certain lower nervous center. That such an apparatus exists, the physiological experiment with the employment of suggestion with persons in the normal waking state or in hypnosis can easily demonstrate."

By the employment of psychotherapy we simply make use of



the normal mechanisms of the physiological organism; we can do nothing more, we should do nothing less. "That ideas work on the lower centers of our central nervous system, and bring into renewed activity centers which regulate the actions of our muscles, blood vessels, and glands, must be accepted as the machinery of our physiological theory."<sup>1</sup> The connection of such theories with purely physical facts is given by our every-day processes of experience, and is evident to the most casual observer.

In his elucidation of the psychological principles and field of psychotherapy, presented before the American Therapeutic Society at the annual meeting in New Haven, Professor Morton Prince tells us:<sup>2</sup>

"It is a law that associated ideas, feelings, emotions, sensations, movements, and visceral functions of whatever kind tend, after constant repetition or when accompanied by strong emotion of feeling tones, and under other conditions, to become linked together into a system or group in such fashion that the stimulation of one element of the group stimulates the activity of the rest of the group. Such a group is conveniently called a 'complex,' and I shall hereafter refer to it as such. This tendency to the linking of functions obtains, whether the mental and physiological processes when linked form a complex which subserves the well-being of the organism and adapts the individual to his environment, or whether they form one which does not subserve the well-being of the individual, but misadapts him to his environment. In the former case the complex is called normal; in the latter, abnormal. This is only another aspect of the well-accepted principle that pathological processes are normal processes functioning under altered conditions. Both are the expression of one and the same mechanism."

Professor Prince further says:

"The linking of function may be almost entirely of ideas, as is expressed by the well-known psychological law of association of ideas. Its pathological manifestations we see in so-called fixed ideas or obsessions. We see it also exemplified within normal

<sup>1</sup> Hugo Münsterberg.

<sup>2</sup> *Journal of Abnormal Psychology*, June-July, 1909.

limits in so-called moods, when certain large systems of ideas, accompanied by strong emotion tones, occupy the mental field to the exclusion of other systems which find it difficult to take the possession of the field of consciousness. When such moods are developed and intensified to an extreme degree, we have veritable pathological alterations of personality, and even, it may be, multiple personality. But in moods besides association we meet with another principle in an exaggerated form—namely, dissociation.

“The linking, again, may be of physiological processes, as exemplified by synergesis of muscular movements. This is seen in the linked combination of muscles used in writing, piano playing, and skilled use of tools and implements of games.

“Unless nervous processes could be artificially linked into coaptive synergistic systems adapted to a purpose, education in any field would be impossible. Intellectual acquisitions, from the repetition of the alphabet to a complete knowledge of a language or a science, and physiological acquisitions, from the use of a tool to the mastery of the piano or the vocal apparatus, would be not only unknown, but would be unthinkable. The education of the mind and body depends upon the artificial synthesizing of functions into a complex adapted to an end or useful purpose. By the same principle functions may be synthesized by education into a complex which does not serve a useful purpose, but rather is harmful to the individual. When this is the case, we call it abnormal or a psychoneurosis.”

It is important to remember that psychic elements are correlated to the physiology of the brain just as physical processes are correlated to cerebral excitations. Physiological psychology deals with those psychical phenomena to which concomitant physiological processes of the brain correspond. Psychotherapy is but the application of well-demonstrated principles of physiological psychology for therapeutic purposes. It is not necessary for us to deduce from the conception of psychical life the possibility of applying mathematical computations to that field of science. Physiological psychology has, however, established important propositions capable of mathematical statement. We have become ac-



quainted with a series of psychophysical laws; psychophysics has therefore become a component part of the science of psychotherapy. As physicians, we are interested only with that branch of empirical psychology designated as physiological psychology, which embraces the conception of psychological processes with concomitant cerebral processes.

We are at times confronted with the question, How do we recognize phenomena which we designate as psychical? All and only the phenomena which are imparted to our consciousness are psychical. That which is without us in space and time, which we assign as the cause of our sensations, is material. The object whose existence we accept as external to us when we have the visual sensation of the thing seen by the eyes is material. The sensation of sight itself is psychical in so far as it concerns our consciousness. Apparently "psychical" and "conscious" are wholly identical, for we can form no idea at all of what an unconscious sensation may be; but upon closer investigation we shall find that every conscious sensation has, at least to all but a few of us, an unconscious effect. Concomitant physical processes corresponding to the psychical processes, the process of experience, are conserved by neuron elements and become in the future a part of our personality. The more intense the psychical process, the more active is the functioning of the nervous mechanism conserving the experience. Concomitant psychical processes appear and reappear, strengthened or weakened by similar experiences, in response to material excitations of the nervous mechanisms conserving such experiences.<sup>1</sup>

Most certainly "psychical" and "conscious" are primarily identical, but the changes wrought upon the neuron elements as the result of all experience may functionate again and again, though the individual may be consciously unaware of such effects, and these are very aptly designated as "subconscious psychical processes." They are the physiological residue of passing mental states that are retained by the neuron elements, and functionate as often in the life of the individual as they are aroused by sim-

<sup>1</sup> Theodor Ziehen: *Physiological Psychology*.

ilar experiences. They are brought to life, as it were, through the association of ideas.

All of our experiences—everything that we have thought, seen, heard, or felt—are conserved in such a way that they can be reproduced in a form approaching that of the original experience. Memory is but the impress conserved by our brain cells and reproduced by ideas suggesting the original experience.

“Through the sensory nerves the brain receives, through the motor nerves the brain directs, and this whole arch from the sense organs through the sensory nerves, through the brain, through the motor nerves and finally to the muscles, is one unified apparatus of which no part can be left out. The necessary relation between the sensory and motor parts should ever be kept in mind, for there can be no sensory process which does not go over into motor response. The whole mental life thus becomes the accompaniment of a steady process of transmitting impressions and memories into reactions.”<sup>1</sup> Münsterberg has well said that suggestions which are not suggestions of actions are, without exception, suggestions of belief. Actions and beliefs are the only possible material of any suggestion—the tool of psychotherapy. Psychotherapy simply makes employment of the normal mechanism of the mind and body—of the physiological machinery already provided. By the employment of suggestion we bring about a restitution of the disordered functions. Suggestion can act only as a therapeutic agent by stimulating the physiological mechanism; it can not create anything new, or do anything that is not in accord with the laws of the nervous system.

The first beginnings of a nervous process are to be found where animal anatomy first meets with a nervous apparatus in the ascending scale of animal life. A certain capacity for nervous processes are recognizable in the motor activity of even the simplest ameba. We can imagine a monad to be placed before us and a grain of sand to be brought in contact with it. Proto-plasmic masses, the so-called pseudopodia, stretch themselves out, envelop the grain, and incorporate it within the body of the main mass. In this process there are exhibited those features which we

<sup>1</sup> Hugo Münsterberg.

recognize as the essentials of nervous function—viz., (1) a sensible stimulation, and (2) a reaction; in fact, a motor effect that is by no means explicable to merely physical laws. Hence, wherever we find contractile substance, the conditions of nerve life are already present.<sup>1</sup>

This is true though only one cell be the seat of the reception of the stimulus and the motor reaction. In this way the development of the nervous system begins, the gradual accomplishment of which—in the jellyfish, for instance—might be conceived as follows: Here is an animal composed of many cells, and any given stimulus with which it is brought in contact is constantly transmitted as an excitation within the animal along the path offering the least resistance. Thus the excitations will come to be transmitted only along fixed paths, the so-called paths of conduction. According to a fundamental law of biology, the constant execution of definite functions also gradually effects certain structural modifications. Accordingly these paths of conduction become anatomically differentiated from their surroundings, and the nerves develop into independent anatomical tissues. Next is developed the so-called ganglion cell, a mediating organ between the sensory conductor receiving the stimulation and the motor conductor imparting contraction. When the stimulus acting upon the nerve end reaches a ganglion cell, and is transmitted by the latter along a new nerve path to contractile masses, so as to impart motion, the entire process is designated as reflex action. Reflex action is the simplest nervous process of which we have any knowledge. By reflex action in higher animals we understand a motion imparted by a stimulus upon a sensitive periphery. A prick of the sole of the foot is answered by a withdrawal of the foot by flexion and, to some extent, by contraction of the toes. In this case the essential anatomical elements of the process are thoroughly known. In the sole of the foot are the terminations of sensory nerves. These are irritated, and conduct the stimulus, or excitation, to a sensory ganglion cell in the spinal cord. This cell sends the excitation received along to the motor ganglion cells, which in turn transmit the impulse again toward the periphery and generate muscular activity.

<sup>1</sup> Theodor Ziehen: Introduction to the Study of Physiological Psychology, page 6.



Whether a concomitant psychical process corresponds to the nervous process concerned in reflex acts, our consciousness alone is able to decide. However this may be, the biological elements concerned in the process possess and exercise their own psychic potentialities, whether recognized by our consciousness or not, and those psychical processes which correspond to physiological functions of which we are consciously unaware may very appropriately be designated as subconscious psychical or mental processes, which have their own physical correlative. Hence, the employment of the terms "conscious" and "subconscious" as applying to the organized physiological processes of the higher and lower neuron systems respectively, whether accompanied by consciousness or unconsciousness, or controlled by volition or automatic function.

Every process of experience involves millions of such elements. The effort to explain the results of psychotherapeutic measures involves a complex mechanism, which belongs to a system of reactions of which all parts of the body are in steady correlation. The influence exerted by the stimuli of ideas upon the physiological processes of the body, and the practical application of this influence as a therapeutic agent, is one of the most interesting developments of modern medicine.

But it should be definitely understood that "ideas" given as a therapeutic measure must be practical, and not given merely to influence morbid psychic and nervous conditions. Such measures are being recognized by able physicians throughout the entire world. Crothers tells us: "If the physician had been a consultant on all matters of mind and body, there would have been no Christian science and Emanuel movement. There would be no proprietary medicines bought and sold for every imaginary condition. Epidemics and endemics would have been checked at the beginning, and the great questions of health would have been settled in the home by the family physician before they attained prominence that required public recognition. The trained physician who becomes an adviser to every man and woman is the ideal to which practical medicine is rapidly moving."<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup>T. D. Crothers, M. D.: *Forecasts of Medical Practice in the Future*.—New York Medical Journal, March 4, 1911.

Howard A. Kelly remarks:<sup>1</sup> "During convalescence the physician must avail himself of various methods of psychic stimulation and re-education, and here his knowledge of the world and of the men and women in it, their hopes, their desires, and their failings, will be most helpful to him. He must consider how long to keep the attention of his patient focused upon her cure, and how to prevent her from giving herself unhealthy suggestions. In other words, he must teach her so to train her attention that the action of the mind becomes healthy, and that it ceases to dwell upon the abnormal. He must excite in his patient the desire to get well, and must convince her as the treatment progresses that she is in reality getting well. He must teach her the importance of overcoming little difficulties, assuring her that, as she does one thing after another to which she may be disinclined, she will acquire an ever-increasing power of self-control, and that sooner or later her self-mastery will be regained.

"On the emotional side, a prolonged training is often necessary in order to get rid of abnormal fears, anxiety, and apprehension. The patient should be taught to cultivate the useful and invigorating emotions; she should be taught the dangers of excessive emotion of any kind, and the great harm of indulging in such passions as anger, hate, and fear. The positive rather than the negative side should be followed. Faith, hope, and love should be encouraged, and then worry, fear, and despair will disappear of themselves. Finally, work, physical and mental, must be undertaken, for in a properly directed occupation-therapy lies the greatest hope for making the cure permanent. These nervous women have to be educated gradually how to take up their work, and the physician's ingenuity will be greatly taxed in order to decide as to the particular physical and mental occupations suited to the individual cases coming under his care; one patient will be benefited by gardening, another by some active mental pursuit. In all cases the program of the day should be carefully arranged, and the patient should be encouraged to follow it closely. The work should be chosen in accordance with the ability and previous training and occupation of the patient. It should be interesting to her and should be such as to be capable of giving expression to her better self."

<sup>1</sup> Medical Gynecology, pages 224, 560.



Kelly further says:

“Our best neurologists today are making large use of hypnotism and suggestion in inducing sleep. To effect anything by this means, the physician must know his patient well enough to inspire confidence and must engage her aid in a common cause, operating against a common enemy—insomnia. The attitude of expectation thus created must be enhanced by the external conditions of the moment, such as retiring at a fixed hour, quieting the mind, and composedly awaiting the advent of the expected guest—sleep.”

In referring to the treatment of chronic Bright's disease, Dr. Robert Ortner, of the University of Vienna, says:<sup>1</sup>

“Especially in the interstitial variety, so much of success—of whatever hygienic, climatic, dietetic, and medicinal therapy is instituted—depends upon the establishment and maintenance of a normal psychic and nervous condition with a cheerful, hopeful frame of mind, that we as physicians must not fail to do our part in this most important branch. I encourage them by citing other cases that are living, working, and happy.”

Psychotherapy has a definite field of its own, as well as being an adjunct in all classes of professional work, and it should never be considered as antagonistic to other therapeutic expedients. When it is skillfully and judiciously employed, it is unquestionably one of the most important therapeutic resources at our command, the value of which we are appreciating more and more as our experience with its employment becomes broader.

Donley has well said:<sup>2</sup> “When we have apprehended that psychotherapy means nothing but methods whereby we may bring about a cure of the mind, or by or through the mind, we not unnaturally inquire what is the ultimate purpose that these methods subserve. This purpose may be stated in one word—re-education. To mediate between theory and life is the highest privilege, as well as the most difficult and perplexing task, of the psychotherapist. Whatever the proximate object of his endeavor, the fundamental aim of his labor is, and must always continue to be, to make the theories of science bear fruit in life and conduct. Every psycho-

<sup>1</sup> Potter: Ortner's Treatment of Internal Diseases.

<sup>2</sup> John E. Donley, M.D.: Psychotherapy and Re-Education.—*Journal of Abnormal Psychology*, April-May, 1911.

therapeutic procedure, of whatever sort, has in view this definite end—to bring about a readjustment, some sought-for and desirable reorganization of the individual in respect of his inner and outer experience; to assist him, as well as may be, in his efforts, hitherto frustrated, toward the consummation of a more harmonious adaptation to his social and physical environment; in a word, to place at his disposal those principles of modern psychology which, rightly used, will not improbably facilitate and further his psychic re-education. The situation is in nowise different from that which confronts the teacher of normal minds, except in this, that the psychotherapist is, as a rule, engaged upon problems whose solutions are freighted with an immediate and greater moiety of happiness and misery.”

By the employment of psychotherapeutic principles the great majority of chronic invalids can be trained up to a state of healthy mental and physical vigor, and by this achieve a self-reliance that can come to a patient only where such measures are employed. The patient is taught how to use his capacity—of both mind and body, conscious and subconscious—and to acquire a degree of self-reliance that proves a valuable asset through life.

What are possibilities with any therapeutic resource are, of course, not actualities in all patients alike, dependent upon an inherited quality of nerve and brain plasm, modified by education and environment. We must take our patients as they are, and make the best of each according to his or her individual limitations or possibilities.

Psychotherapy has found a response with the more enlightened spirit of our age, and by its employment we not only treat the patient, but by the very application of these methods instill into him or her facts and principles that serve to qualify them to become master of their own potentialities, be they much or little, weak or strong.

Münsterberg remarks: “In recent decades the thorough work of scientific physicians has developed a psychotherapy of considerable extent and of indubitable usefulness, far removed from the simultaneous efforts of the churches and the popular mental healing cures. A number of eminent men in all countries have

tested the methods and have published results. But the curious side of it is that all this is essentially a movement of leaders, while the masses of the profession hesitate to follow. . . . It is as if the prescription of the modern chemical drugs were confined to some leading scholars of the country, while thousands abstained from it in their office work and their family practice. In reality, psychotherapy ought to be used by every physician, as it fits perfectly the needs of the whole suffering community. Its almost exceptional use in the hands of a few scholarly leaders deprives it of its true importance. It is the village doctor who needs psychotherapy much more than he needs the knife and the electric current."

## CHAPTER IV.

### THE GENERAL UTILITY OF SUGGESTION.

This is an age of dynamics. It is a day when all minds are turned in search of the laws that govern hidden forces. The intelligent comprehension and utilization of nature's forces, through compliance with the laws that govern them, has revolutionized the external world of travel, manufacture, and communication. Step by step humanity is entering upon the field of finer forces. Electricity, a force unseen, through intelligent compliance with the laws that govern it, is utilized as never before for the comfort and happiness of man. Man's progress in the scale of evolution has been just in that degree that he has utilized forces governed by laws not previously understood and has appropriated them for his happiness and welfare.

We are in the world for growth, and to help to raise humanity in the scale of evolution is the only worthy purpose of all human endeavor and achievement. Each individual represents just so much energy, and by his use or abuse of this inherent life force is he a factor for good or evil.

As physicians, we are on the threshold of a great awakening to a conscious realization of a higher conception of our duty toward our patients, and of the potency of our influence upon determining their present and future health and happiness. By degrees, step by step—slowly, but surely—are we getting away from the superstition that has so long darkened our conception of life. From the time that the little ameba began to develop by sucking into its jelly-self nutriment from the water around it; from the time that its little jelly cousin, the moneron, put out his first pseudopodium, there began the journey toward and the feeling out after a higher conception of life. Long and tedious has been the way—slow and painful has been the ascent from darkness to light. The law of evolution in even the lower



realm or sphere of life has never mocked an ameba or a moneron. The faculties back of the ameba and moneron realm, whereby they found what they reached out after, were no more natural than those that move us to seek a higher conception of life. The infant reached out hand and mouth for food; it was there. So, the real man, the higher self, which is here in a material nursery, is in the infant stage of existence—it seems to manifest itself in a truer sense. If the little ameba was not mocked, shall he be?

In the light of present-day knowledge we are warranted in having a high degree of optimism in regard to the laws of heredity and training. The time was when there was an overpowering sense of the absolute dependence of phenomena of all sorts, including the supreme one of will, upon visible, tangible, material elements in the physical body and its activities, but now there is a growing consciousness of self-activity and freedom. Pessimism as a philosophy has not the sway that it had yesterday, and we are dwelling more and more upon the importance of education and training as a basis of character and health. We now realize that the mind, as the result of education and training, contributes to the development of the body as much as the body contributes to the growth and development of the mind; that mind and body are inseparable, both constituting a manifestation of the real self in action, and that in every human being there exists an inherent quality of psychophysical force, capable of a high degree of development, which he must use for his welfare and happiness.

A better understanding of the laws governing the development of the power that we are all using, either ignorantly or intelligently, should be the means of helping each individual to better use his life forces for the advancement of self and for the good of others, aiding them in the struggle for the achievement of happiness and health—the greatest incentives to the activities of the human race.

It is now clearly established by the advanced thinkers, who have gotten over the stunned and stunning stages of the light that evolution has shed upon us, that some individuals of all races have not reached the point of development where the self-con-

scious ego is capable of taking their lives into their own hands. Their heredity, environment, and education have not been such as to produce normally-developed personalities, and it is not any fault of their own that such is the case. Such people will be the helpless dependents upon others to think and do for them as long as they live. These children of fate are everywhere in evidence. They feel the need of something, and, like helpless worms, are driven in the direction of least resistance. There can be no higher function of a physician than that of getting such patients who come to us for aid to act upon an idea or a series of ideas and execute them consciously or subconsciously, in order that their lives may be brought under its influence, and the individual be so adapted to his environment that he is not only qualified to meet the exigencies incident to the struggle for existence, but that also health and happiness be maintained.

The universe was made for man, and all of nature's forces are beneficent and are placed here for his utilization. By intelligent conformity to nature's laws, health and happiness may be maintained; but for violation of or opposition to nature's laws, disease, impotency, or premature death are the penalty.

In the study of the laws governing the formation of viewpoints, beliefs, convictions, psychic traits, dispositions, and mental habits, suggestion, or an idea aroused in the mind of the individual by impressions from without, or conveyed by spoken words from one mind to another, is found to be the dominant factor. Moreover, we find that suggestion is a powerful factor in developing the mind and in determining the functions of the physical organism, as is illustrated by its employment on persons in the state of normal waking consciousness or in the hypnotic state.

Perhaps no one subject has been so much abused as the subject of suggestion, employed with or without the induction of the hypnotic state, by the very class of people who use this all-potent factor, which they either ignorantly or maliciously deny, as the force by which most of their results as curative measures are obtained. I refer to Christian scientists, osteopaths, Weltmerites, faith healers, and such like. To point out the danger which attends the ignorant use of suggestion, both with and without the

aid of hypnotism, as well as the possibility of benefit that may accrue from its intelligent use as an adjunct in the practice of medicine, is my purpose.

The use of suggestion is but the art of employing spoken words for the purpose of persuading an individual to act upon or execute an idea or a series of ideas, either consciously or subconsciously. A suggestion is an impression conveyed by any means whatsoever from one mind to another, or the impress received by the human brain by impressions from without.

When we remember that the nervous system faithfully conserves and reproduces its impressions or experiences, then only do we realize the significance and importance of a clear comprehension of the term "suggestion" in the study of psychotherapy; for the tool of psychotherapy is suggestion, and all of the suggestions received by the individual in any manner whatever are the factors determining his actions and beliefs.

There is nothing new in the conception of the term "suggestion." What constitutes a decided advance is the more thorough comprehension of its potency as a therapeutic agent and its influence upon the development of human character, and also of its influence in encouraging the normal functions of the nervous system. It has been used by every human being, profession, sect, school of learning, "ist" or "ism" that ever existed. All education is the result of repeated and accumulated suggestion—of the impress conserved by the brain cell elements resulting from past experiences. All theological sermonizing, dogmas, and religions make employment of suggestion upon the mind, and the impressions made by these various experiences are conserved by the neuron elements in such a way that the ideas instilled into the individual become for all future time, unless altered by other processes of experience, a part of his or her personality. Our beliefs upon any subject are the result of dominant suggestions, the impress being retained as physiological residue of past experiences which have been conserved by the neuron elements.

By our use or abuse of our powers of suggestion do we become a force for good or evil. So receptive is the human being to suggestion that we become a part of all with which we have



associated during our existence. Our beliefs or convictions upon any subject are the sum of suggestions that we have received, either consciously or unconsciously, and which have been conserved by our brain cells. These impressions are conserved as psychophysiological centers for all future time, unless altered or modified by other processes of experience, and all experience of whatever sort signifies brain cell alteration, change, growth, or development.

By suggestion, then, we are enabled to implant ideals, concepts, viewpoints, convictions, and beliefs by which individual life and conduct is guided. In this way character is developed. In this manner also are ideas instilled into the mind of the individual for the correction of vice, the cure of evil habits, and for the prevention and cure of certain forms of insanity. Intellectual acquisitions, of whatever sort, are obtained by the individual as the result of the influence of suggestion. The experiences by which such impressions are made upon the neuron elements leave permanent structural modifications by which such knowledge is conserved, which forever afterward becomes a part of the individual's personality. By the employment of suggestions in such manner as to be effective, the will power is strengthened, latent talents are developed, and inherent capabilities of mind and body brought into activity. Virtue can be instilled and vice eradicated; purity or impurity, confidence or fear, love or hate, joy or grief, can be made the dominant quality of the mind.

It is through the employment of suggestion that personal influence, of whatever sort, is exerted by which human activities are stirred, and by which we express our power for good or evil. By suggestion every center of activity in the brain can be strengthened, and every organic function in the body increased or encouraged to new activity. Indeed, new physiological centers can be established, resulting from the employment of suggestion, the process of experience being conserved as physiological residue of the passing mental states induced and retained by the neuron elements. War and bloodshed, theft, and wreck and ruin of manhood and character, are the result of evil suggestions that have been allowed to dominate the mind of an individual or a nation.



The most sacred shrine of the soul itself may be invaded, dominated, and profaned by suggestions from malicious and designing creatures intruded upon the mind of the unfortunate in whom the ideal ego, for the lack of the right heredity, education, and environment, has not been awakened and evolved. Evil suggestions on the part of low and degraded persons, operating upon the mind of the imperfectly developed or mentally incompetent individual, is accompanied by effects that are as sure and unfailing as the law of gravitation itself, and domestic unhappiness, divorce, suicide, murder, or death are not infrequent results. Such suggestions, when accompanied by deep-feeling tones, operating upon an unstable nervous organization, convert its victim into a mere automaton. Suggestion upon the normal individual is often malicious, but, cloaked in the garb of truth, is the dominant force that rules the life of every human being, of every nation, of the very world itself.

By the use of suggestion in disguise on the part of the "mother of Christian science," thousands of innocent, but conscientious, followers are being robbed of their individuality and selfhood. By its use on the part of dishonest and designing men, the markets are flooded with spurious wares of all kinds, and honest money is paid for worthless trash. Here is the stronghold of the patent medicine vender, the health food manufacturer, and advertising medical quack, as they play upon the ignorant credulity of those whose inexperience has not developed the intelligent use of their own thought powers.

The abuse of suggestion extends also into the medical profession. Through its use many people are made to submit, on the one hand, to useless surgical operations, which often aggravate the functional disturbance which they were intended to relieve, and, on the other hand, they are caused to refuse the help of honest surgery for the relief of pathological conditions beyond the reach of any other treatment.

There is absolutely no difference between hypnotic suggestion and suggestion employed without hypnotism. It produces the same influence or effect in kind, the difference being only one of degree as regards its effectiveness upon the psychophysical organism.

In reference to the observed tendency of the nervous system to conserve and reproduce its experience, or to conserve by some physical mechanism the systems of ideas that have been formed by the various psychotherapeutic methods of treatment, whether in hypnosis or in the normal waking state, Professor Morton Prince says:

“It makes no difference in what state a complex is formed—whether in every-day life, in sleep, trance, dissociated personality, subconscious states, or hypnosis—they are or may be equally firmly organized and conserved, and they are conserved, whether we can voluntarily recall the experiences or not. Whether they are to become organized depends upon the mode and conditions under which the impression is made upon the mind or nervous system, but, once organized, they are conserved and become a part of our personality.”

Suggestion without hypnotism, even when used unconsciously, may stealthily and subtly dominate the mind or nervous system of the individual without his consent; while hypnotic suggestion, intelligently applied for the relief of functional ills of the physical organism, is always employed with the individual's consent.

One can not be hypnotized without the consent of the individual. The hypnotic state is induced only by the co-operation of the true ego, the real man, which is the sum total of the psychic and physical potentialities of the individual self-consciousness. When this ideal self is fully developed, or an ideal self is awakened and evolved as the result of the influence of heredity and experience, then the mind and body are its obedient servants. It is beyond the vision of the microscope or the range of the dissecting knife, and just in proportion as it is developed will it control the mind, and through the mind produce harmonious and healthful results in the body.

I have no wish to be visionary. Life is too short for impractical theories and suggestions, but, to speak plainly, some of us have been half-doctors long enough. We have been dealing too much with effects, and have failed to consider an important etiological factor of disease. Man is both a mental and physical being, and can not be treated simply as if we were conducting experiments in a chemical laboratory. Heretofore most of the

advance made in the progress of medical science has been on a physical plane, and the achievements made in the branches of surgery, bacteriology, pathology, and hygiene challenge the admiration and applause of modern civilization. But while bacteriology and pathology can detect, and surgery remove and destroy, the diseased part, and hygiene lessen the conditions that occasion the infection of the organism with pathogenic germs, the causes of many so-called functional diseases—among them neurasthenia and certain forms of insanity—have remained obscure.

The number of inmates of the insane asylum in every state is yearly increasing far beyond the ratio of increase of population. Why so many diseased bodies and imperfect nervous organizations? These bear a strong evidence of the tendency for the species to degenerate rather than to grow healthier and stronger. These are burning and pertinent facts that are beginning to dawn upon the thinking portion of our craft.

Nor are the people satisfied. All over the world is the spirit of unrest and dissatisfaction being made manifest, as is indicated by the different "mind cure" schools and cults which attempt to carry their claims into extravagant absurdities. The doctors themselves realize this, and just in proportion as they are honest and educated men are they deeply troubled at their own deficiencies.

With a large acquaintance of professional men, I am prepared to say that physicians study hard and work unceasingly, and their brain and muscles, and their very heart's blood itself, are at the disposal of their patients; but still something more is needed. Either our remedies are insufficient, or we fail to understand the great human machine upon which we are experimenting.

While we do much good, and earn sufficient gratitude to enable us to strive on, and while we can maintain enough courage to look our patient squarely in the face, the suffering which we have not been able to relieve, and the relief and cures which we have not effected, and the universal prevalence of diseases that have not been eradicated, have become such prominent factors in the history of our profession as to seriously humble our pride.

The time has come when psychology should be brought to the front. I would that a chair of physiological psychology were es-



tablished in all our medical schools. I should like to see every boy and girl in our common schools, old enough to understand it, made to realize that a power resides in the mind, and how they can use it to maintain a healthy body, and how, by an abuse of this force, they increase their susceptibility to disease, from whatever cause.

To say the least of it, the medical profession should better acquaint itself with the importance of psychic influences as etiological factors, as well as equip itself to make use of this therapeutic power in the cure of disease. When the members of the medical profession become leaders and teachers in this important branch, the practice of medicine will be elevated to a higher plane. Then will the breach between that portion of intelligent laymen who feel that physicians are not doing their duty be bridged over.

It may be that the light upon the landscape of the future is but a reflection from the luminous regions of my own hopes, but, if we take into consideration the broader and higher course of human events—such as the work done by the medical profession in problems of social vice, intemperance, hygiene, dietetics, preventive medicine, sanitation, pure food, etc.—we can but feel that we are at last coming to a conscious realization of a lofty ideal of the brotherhood of man, and that the day is not remote when the physicians will be found doing all within their power to help their patients to help themselves.

The indifference of science has always been the mainstay of charlatanism. When the intelligent scientific application of any therapeutic measure is adopted by the medical profession, charlatanism is robbed of its use. That these people effect cures of certain forms of functional ills right before our eyes, ills that had not been amenable to cure by our ordinary methods of treatment, is self-evident. In every city, town, and hamlet the followers of the different cults and “isms” are gaining in number, and thousands of dollars are reaped by them that should go into the pockets of the medical profession, while, on the other hand, thousands of innocent lives are sacrificed on account of the neglect of scientific medical treatment.

With the intelligent recognition and application of suggestion



in therapeutics as an aid in the practice of medicine, conditions and symptoms can be relieved that can not be reached by any other remedy, and it is cases of this very class that are going from physicians and seeking aid from other sources.

The effect of the mind upon metabolism is now well established. Emotional conditions of a hopeful, optimistic, and cheerful kind encourage anabolism, or constructive metamorphosis. On the other hand, depressing emotional conditions that conduce to fear and despondency, and the like, encourage catabolism, or destructive metamorphosis. By suggestion we can produce such mental impressions as will increase the potential energy inherent in the cells of the organism, and thus render them less vulnerable to pathogenic germs and other etiological factors of disease. This is an effectual means of conserving energy and increasing the resistive powers of the individual, and lessening his susceptibility to disease.

Since the observation of Beaumont upon Alexander St. Martin, the Canadian who had a fistulous opening in the stomach sufficiently large for him to watch the physiological processes of digestion, the effect of certain emotions upon this function has been clearly recognized. Beaumont observed that mental conditions—such as worry, fear, and anger—diminished and sometimes entirely suppressed the secretion of gastric juice by the stomach. At times, under these conditions, the mucous membrane became red and dry, and at others it was pale and moist, showing the effect of mental impressions upon the vasomotor neuro regulation of the blood supply to the stomach through the involuntary nervous system. Under the conditions mentioned fluids were immediately absorbed, but food remained undigested for from twenty-four to forty-eight hours.

More recent discoveries by contemporary psychologists have shown that bad and unpleasant feelings create harmful chemical products in the body called catabolins, which are physically injurious. On the other hand, good, pleasant, benevolent, and cheerful feelings create chemical products called anabolins, which are physically helpful.

Quite frequently neurasthenic patients maintain a condition of

autotoxemia on account of morbid emotional conditions that dominate their minds, giving rise to headaches, preventing sleep, conducing to insanity, and proving destructive to all physiological processes. In this class of cases, suggestion, both with or without hypnotism, is our most reliable therapeutic aid.

From the earliest periods in the history of mankind down to the present time there is abundant and sufficient proof, undoubted and acknowledged, going to show that in innumerable instances cures of manifold diseases and ills of the physical organism have been wrought by influences brought to bear upon the mind of the person afflicted. Physicians are too familiar with the history of these cases for me to make further mention of them here. One well-demonstrated fact, the result of honest investigation, is worth a thousand opinions prompted by prejudice. Having witnessed the efficacious application of suggestion in therapeutics, both with and without hypnotism, in thousands of instances, I should still feel confident of the inestimable value of this important therapeutic adjunct if every other physician in the world doubted its efficacy.

We must face the facts as they are—exact science has proved to us the correctness of the claim of the efficacy of this method of treatment as a therapeutic agent. The people who make use of it in disguised form are here, and the proposition that confronts us is, Shall we appropriate the laws that govern the influence of the mind to the intelligent and scientific treatment of disease and make use of them as therapeutic measures, or shall we leave these laws to them?

My observation is that the members of the medical profession are ever ready and anxious to avail themselves of any therapeutic resource that will help to alleviate human suffering. All that is needed is a more thorough understanding on the part of the general profession of the theory and efficacy of suggestive therapeutics, and a better understanding of the technic and practical methods of its application.

The idea has been emphasized that only functional and neuro-pathic conditions are benefited by this treatment. But be it remembered that a functional disturbance or disease, so-called, if

neglected, may result in an organic condition, and that the timely administration of suggestive therapeutics to correct or cure the functional disorder may prevent its resulting in an organic lesion.

Furthermore, suggestive therapeutics should be applied with an understanding and comprehension of the anatomical and physiological relations of the organism, as well as of the pathological conditions to be alleviated. It is not to be used to the exclusion of other therapeutic resources, but can always be used with them, for it is not antagonistic to or incompatible with any remedy which helps to cure disease.

It is evident that some physicians are afraid that if they should adopt this method of therapeutics, they would be counted as allies of the quacks and charlatans who misuse these methods. It is the duty of every medical man who is true to his Hippocratic oath to adopt and use every measure that will help to alleviate human suffering. This science, in the hands of a conscientious physician, is capable of curing diseases and reaching conditions that no other remedy can reach.

## CHAPTER V.

### HYPNOTISM DEMONSTRATED.

Hypnotism furnishes us with a practical demonstration, or proof, of the efficacy of suggestion. It shows us the conditions under which suggestion can be successfully employed, and a better understanding of the theoretical basis and of the technic of employing hypnotic suggestion better enables the physician to successfully employ suggestion without the aid of hypnotism, which is unquestionably the finer art in employing the principles of psychotherapy. While hypnotic suggestion is more efficacious in the vast majority of conditions to which psychotherapeutic principles are applicable, and while the method is attended with much quicker results, and while it is effective in such a large number of conditions that can not be treated successfully by other methods of employing psychotherapeutic principles, its employment is very frequently handicapped by the popular prejudice which at the present time is prevalent concerning the measure. This prejudice is the fruit of the erroneous ideas that those who have made no personal investigation of the utility, practicability, and rationality of the method at the present time entertain.

The majority of people, and physicians as well, have either had no instruction in reference to the utility, sanity, and efficacy of hypnotic suggestion as a therapeutic resource, or they have been wrongly taught. The eight years spent by the author in giving practical instructions in psychotherapy to the physicians of a considerable portion of our country has given him excellent opportunities to know the "ins and outs" and "pros and cons" of all varieties of medical practice, and he makes no hesitation in saying that the prevalent ignorance in reference to all varieties of psychotherapeutic treatment, and especially in reference to the employment of hypnotic suggestion, on the part of the medical profession at the present time is appalling. Moreover, during the time de-



voted to the work of instructing physicians in the practical methods of employing psychotherapeutic principles I did not, I desire it to be clearly understood, deal with the vast majority of the physicians constituting the rank and file of our profession, but, on the other hand, I conducted my work in such manner as to appeal to the intelligence of the leaders of the medical profession, and that these men indorsed, approved, and recommended the measures advocated, illustrated, and taught by me, hundreds and hundreds of letters now in my possession abundantly attest.

It is not my desire to be arrogant—far from it. But, in view of the fact that the number of physicians whom I have instructed in the technic of applying suggestive measures, both with and without the employment of hypnotism, is greater than that of any other physician in the entire world, I feel that I am at least justified, if not qualified, in relating my experience in reference to the employment of this valuable form of treatment.

Among those physicians who were pleased to honor me with their presence at my lecture engagements were many who had studied the subject of psychotherapy, in all the varieties of its employment, in all the leading medical centers of this country and Europe, and many there were who were free to say that they had received more benefit from my explanation and demonstration of the subject than by the combined experience of reading many books and witnessing numerous clinics in which the measures were illustrated and explained.

What I have been able to accomplish by the employment of hypnotic suggestion, so far as its influence upon the physical organism of individuals taken at random would illustrate, can be estimated by the statement that I have instructed approximately five thousand American physicians to do likewise. Each one of these men demonstrated to his own satisfaction that there was nothing in my personality that enabled me to get results which he also did not possess. Whether such physicians were enabled to accomplish the same results afterward is another matter. I may say for the satisfaction of the reader that some were able to get the same results as were accomplished in my presence and others were not. It all depended upon the personality of the individual.

Some physicians can witness a surgical operation where a special technic is employed and immediately go away and do the operation with equal dexterity. Others could never employ the same technic successfully if they witnessed the procedure a hundred times. The same is true in any other department of human knowledge. There is something in the individual which either enables him to exercise the capacity to appropriate what he experiences and make it a part of his own personality, or he is not enabled to grasp and utilize it. The fault in such cases is in the capacity of the individual and not in the method illustrated. One thing is sure—a given amount of training is an essential in the employment of all therapeutic procedures, and at the present time our medical colleges are not giving the prospective physicians sufficient training in the art or technic of employing psychotherapeutic principles.

That some critics are not enabled to appreciate or assimilate the ideas here presented for the above mentioned reasons, the reader is now enabled to clearly comprehend. That the vast majority are more *en rapport* with the writer, I also fully appreciate.

The method here described is the one which I used in connection with my class work with physicians on approximately five thousand subjects, employed by the suggestions given by as many different physicians, with the result that practically every individual who gave his consent and co-operation was hypnotized, or placed in a condition of suggestibility sufficiently for anesthesia to be induced by suggestion, without a failure, I am sure, in one percent of the cases. If the reader wishes to know why these results are so much more successful than those reported by some authorities on this subject, I can only answer that I am stating the facts as they were. In all cases I exercised all the suggestive ability within my power upon the physicians themselves, positively assuring them that they could accomplish results. In other words, I made them believe that they could succeed and taught them how. This, I believe, is the secret of the success of the methods here described. One must believe in his ability to succeed and must understand the technic of employing suggestion. After each physician had obtained results by the employment of his own verbal suggestions, and had witnessed the successful application of

the method in the hands of others present, the experience had produced such a psychological effect upon him as to enable him to exercise the skill of the expert. Some of our psychotheraputists would say that the experience which I had put all such physicians through had served to form a complex which functionated as a part of their own personality. It is quite likely that this is true.

I may say, in passing, that the methods which are here described are not those that I am at present employing in my practice, for in no case now do I use the least bit of deception. This, however, was a necessity in making demonstrations for the physicians, and the method served a useful purpose in the work that I was doing at the time, as it gave a practical demonstration of the efficacy of suggestion, and illustrated how easily suggestion can be employed in conjunction with the administration of medicine—especially employed in the general practice of medicine. The principle is the same when employed for therapeutic purposes, and the demonstrations here described, witnessed by so many American physicians who can vouch for the correctness of the experiences described, should prove of great value to the student of psychotherapy. Regarding the method employed by me in actual practice upon cases referred to me by my colleagues, or those whose acquaintance with me has been the result of my writings, all of whom know that I make free use of psychotherapeutic principles, these will be made known to the reader by a careful study of this book. It should ever be borne in mind that psychotherapy can not be brought under a single formula, but must always be adapted to the psychology of the individual patient. Hypnotic suggestion, however, in well-selected cases is one of the most important of all the various psychotherapeutic methods.

Instead of appearing to use hypnotism in the presence of the physicians on the individuals brought in for demonstrations, I use a medicine in a bottle, one of the local antiseptic solutions, and call this medicine "somno-analgesic compound." I ascribe to this medicine whatever value or therapeutic property I desire it to possess, and picture on the mind of the individual what effect it will have, and, getting his consent for me to use the med-



icine, I secure all the co-operation necessary on the part of the subject to put him into that suggestible condition which is produced by suggestion and known as the hypnotic state.

If you were to ask me how to make a suggestion, I would say, "In a perfectly natural way of talking, with the least affectation possible." If you in the least doubt your ability to use the method which will be explained to you here, be actor enough to speak and act as if you had not the slightest doubt about the results to be obtained. Talk as if you meant it—talk calmly, earnestly, and kindly. Use a monotone voice. Look at your patient while you are talking to him. Look right into his eyes and get him to look at you.

The following demonstrations and explanations were stenographically reported, showing in detail my method of demonstrating hypnotism in my class work among the physicians. There were present several well-known physicians who took part in the demonstration described, who will vouch for the correctness of the incidents here reported.

The method here described demonstrates a simple, practical, efficacious method of inducing the hypnotic state to the extent that anesthesia can be produced, and each one of the several physicians present demonstrated his own ability to do so, using an entirely new subject, brought in from the street, whom we had never seen before.

When I was ready for material for the demonstrations of hypnotism, two of the physicians present were requested to go out on the street and bring in two or three men who were absolute strangers to us all. One of them was brought into the room at a time to be hypnotized, and as he walked in at the door I addressed him as follows:<sup>1</sup>

**A Pre-Hypnotic Suggestion Given.**—"Take this chair, please. Now, I will explain to you what I am doing and what I wanted with you. Do you see this little bottle of medicine? This is a sample of a preparation that I am introducing to the physicians, known as "somno-analgesic compound." "Somno" means sleep-

---

<sup>1</sup> Take note that the medicine used upon this occasion was only a small vial of water.



producing, and "analgesic" means pain-relieving; so, then, this is sleep-producing and pain-relieving medicine. It is used by rubbing it on the forehead just as you see me rub it on mine. You notice it does not harm me, and it will not harm you. Now, I have explained to the physicians here that, in order for this remedy to have its effect, it must be applied in a certain way, and that it is the way that we get our patient to do and be while the medicine is applied that determines its effect. I want you to take a seat in this chair, lean your head back against the chair, relax every muscle, close your eyes lightly, and breathe through your mouth, just as if you were going to sleep. Then, as I apply the remedy, you will soon get quiet all over, then get drowsy and sleepy, and go to sleep, and awake feeling better. Now, see here, my man, don't resist the effect of the medicine; just sit here and let it have its effect."

**Suggestions to Induce Hypnosis.**—Before beginning suggestions to induce hypnosis, after giving pre-hypnotic suggestions, have your patient relax every muscle, close his eyes lightly, and breathe through his mouth, as illustrated in the frontispiece. (See frontispiece.) Then speak about as follows: "All right, take this seat. Lean your head back against the chair. Close your eyes lightly and breathe through your mouth, and think of going to sleep. Now, as I apply this remedy you will soon become quiet all over, and get drowsy and sleepy, and go to sleep and awake feeling better.

"I will talk to you to help you to concentrate your mind. Now, as I apply this remedy you will get sleepy, sleepy, sleepy, so-o-o-o sleepy. Now, go to sleep, sleep, sleep, sleep."

"Now, you feel quiet all over. Your muscles are relaxed. Everything is dark to you. You do not hear anything but my voice. You are drowsy and sleepy, so-o-o-o sleepy. You feel the sleep coming over you. You are going to sleep. Sleep, sleep, sleep.

"By the time I count ten you will be fast asleep. One, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten, and you are asleep, fast asleep, sound asleep.

"By the time I count five more you will be sound and dead

asleep, just as you are in the dead of night when sleeping soundly in your own bed. One, two, three, four, five, and you are asleep, fast asleep, sound asleep, dead asleep. Don't awake, now, until I tell you.

"Every second your sleep will become sounder and sounder, and deeper and deeper. Sleep on quietly until I awake you.

"Now, you will not feel anything, or hear anything, or know anything except what I tell you. Sleep on quietly until I awake you."

"Now, gentlemen, this subject is in a suggestible condition, which I will proceed to demonstrate. I raise his arm."

**Suggestions to the Subject Hypnotized.**—"Sleep on quietly. When I count three this arm will be stiff—so stiff that you can't take it down. One, two, three; your arm is stiff, and you can't take it down until I tell you. Now, when I rub this medicine on your arm three times it will be dead and have no feeling in it. Now, I pinch this arm" (thrusting a pin through a fold of the skin), "but you do not feel it; there is no feeling here at all; this arm is perfectly dead."

"Gentlemen, no one minds being pinched, at least with your finger nails, so I give the easiest suggestion to accept to accomplish an end. For the same reason I say to a patient, 'I will examine this tooth,' while in reality I apply the forceps and extract it. This makes it easier for the patient to accept the suggestion."

"Now, sleep on, and when I count three, stand up. Put your heels together, and when I say 'stiff,' be as stiff as iron—so stiff I can lay you across two chairs and you will not bend. One, two, three. Now, stand up. Get stiff—stiff as iron."

"Place his heels in the other chair, please, doctor." (The man is placed with his head on one chair and his heels on another.) "Now, hold strong, be stiff." (Standing upon his body.) He sustains my weight of two hundred pounds easily. "Now, relax, limber, sit down, and sleep on."

"Now, my man, when I count three you will open your eyes and be wide awake. You will be feeling good all over. You will remember nothing that has been said or done, and will find that you

never felt better in your life, and will always be glad that you came up here. One, two, three, and you are awake."

"Have a good nap?"

"Yes, sir."

"What do you remember since coming into this room?"

"Nothing at all but sitting in that chair and going to sleep."

"You are sure that nothing has hurt you since sitting there?"

"No, sir; nothing has hurt me."

Now, the talk that I gave that man about my selling the medicine, and how it was used, and what it was used for, etc., was the pre-hypnotic suggestion. In that way I got his voluntary consent to sit in this chair and let the medicine have its effect. In doing that he was letting me put him in that suggestive condition unfortunately named the hypnotic state. Notice, again, I had that man relax every muscle, close his eyes lightly, and breathe through his mouth. He was then in a condition of voluntary receptivity. The very fact that he agrees to relax, close his eyes, and breathe through his mouth indicates that he is a hypnotic subject, because it signifies his willingness.

As to who is a hypnotic subject, it is the individual who does not know that he is to be hypnotized, whose confidence I can secure sufficiently to get him to conform to the conditions, just as we have demonstrated. I always secure the voluntary co-operation of the individual, and get that supreme factor in human consciousness—the will—to assist me in accomplishing the result. I get the co-operation of the voluntary waking consciousness to act upon or execute an idea or series of ideas, either consciously or subconsciously. In getting an individual to go into that sleep-like condition known as the hypnotic state, I am simply getting the real ego to act upon or execute an idea through intelligent co-operation. That is the way by which that subconscious condition known as the hypnotic state is produced. Then, after the subject is hypnotized, I get him to act upon or execute an idea subconsciously.

In approximately five thousand instances in which I have used men of all nationalities for demonstration in my class work, I have yet to see the first unpleasant result. In all cases pins were stuck



through their faces or arms, and their bodies put across chairs and one or more men stood upon them. I have used lawyers, preachers, doctors, dentists, merchants, mechanics, and people of all trades and classes. As regards nationalities, Germans, Frenchmen, Englishmen, Italians, Chinamen, Japanese, Indians, and negroes have been my subjects. They have all proved about equally susceptible as regards race.

The more intelligent individuals of all races made the best subjects. Every one who left the room went out with a pleasant smile on his face, and most of them thanked me for the experience. I treated them all kindly, and acted in a way to secure the co-operation of a high element of human consciousness.

People have faith in medicine, and when we proceed as if using a medicine we utilize the faith or confidence that is reposed in this material agency, inert though it is as to physiological effect, which proves a most powerful factor in producing that condition known as the hypnotic state on the one hand, and getting results by suggestion applied as a therapeutic measure on the other.

Our therapeutic measures must be adapted to the individuality of the patient with whom we are dealing.

**Demonstration No. 2.**—"Now, Doctor Blank, I want you to hypnotize the next man. I want you to convince yourself that your suggestions are just as efficacious as mine.

"See, I have tacked these printed suggestions upon the wall, over the chair that the man will occupy here. I will give him the pre-hypnotic suggestion for you. By this I convert him into a hypnotic subject. I talk him into willingness to sit in that chair and let the medicine have its effect, while you carry him, by reading those suggestions on that wall, into a deeper state of suggestibility. Bring in another man, please." (Another subject is brought in.)

**A Pre-Hypnotic Suggestion Given.**—"Take that seat, and I will explain to you what I am doing and what I want with you. Do you see this little bottle of medicine? I am introducing to the physicians here a remedy to cure headache, quiet nervousness, relieve pain, etc. It is applied by rubbing it on the forehead just as you see me do here. It must be applied in a certain way to get



results. The physician here knows how to apply it. I have explained to him that it is important to get his patient to conform to certain conditions in order that the medicine will produce results that are expected. That is what I will show you. I want you to sit in this chair, and let the doctor apply this to you just as if you had a headache and he were going to relieve it for you. Now look at me. I want you to sit in this chair as you see me, relax every muscle, close your eyes lightly, and breathe through your mouth. Then when the physician here applies this remedy, you will soon get quiet all over, and get drowsy and sleepy, and go to sleep, and awake feeling better. Now, I want to ask you, don't resist it—just sit here and allow the medicine to have its effect. Take this seat."

"Proceed to apply the medicine, Doctor." (Rubbing "the medicine" on his head on either side, the physician read the following suggestions in a conversational tone, with a low monotone, affirmative voice):

**Suggestions to Induce Hypnosis.**—"You close your eyes lightly. Breathe through your mouth. Think of going to sleep. As I apply this remedy you will soon get quiet all over, and get drowsy and sleepy, and go to sleep, and awake feeling better.

"I will talk to you to help you concentrate your mind.

"Now, as I rub this on your head you will get sleepy, sleepy, sleepy, so-o-o-o sleepy. Now, go to sleep, sleep, sleep, sleep. Now, you feel quiet all over. Your muscles are relaxed. Everything is dark to you. You do not hear anything but my voice. You are feeling quiet from your head clear down to your feet. You feel a torpor all over your body. Your arms and limbs are so-o-o-o heavy. You are drowsy and sleepy, so-o-o-o sleepy. You feel the sleep coming over you; you are going to sleep. Sleep, sleep, sleep, sleep.

"By the time I count ten you will be fast asleep. One, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten—and you are asleep, fast asleep, sound asleep.

"By the time I count five more you will be sound asleep and dead asleep, just as you are in the dead of night when you are at home in your bed. One, two, three, four, five, and you are asleep.

fast asleep, sound asleep, dead asleep. Don't awake, now, until I tell you.

"Every second your sleep will become sounder and sounder, and deeper and deeper. You now see what a quiet, sweet experience you are having. You are having a quiet, refreshing sleep. Sleep perfectly quiet until I awake you.

"Now, you will not feel anything, or hear anything, or know anything, except what I tell you. Sleep, sleep, sleep—quiet, refreshing sleep. Sleep perfectly quiet until I awake you. Every second your sleep will become sounder and sounder, deeper and deeper. Sleep on quietly until I awake you."

I then proceeded: "Now, Doctor, hold up this man's arm and suggest to him that when you count three it will be stiff—so stiff that he can not take it down." (The arm staying there as suggested indicated that the individual was in a suggestible condition.) "Now, take hold of his wrist, Doctor, and say to him, 'Your arm will come down now.'

"You notice that arm came down with a wax-like resistance—no volition exercised by him at all. When I feel that wax-like resistance as I make the 'arm-test,' I am quite sure that I can produce anesthesia by suggestion.

"Doctor, suggest to him that his arm will be dead when you rub the medicine on it three times—that it will be perfectly dead and have no feeling in it at all. You see, gentlemen, after that suggestion I am able to thrust a pin through his arm without the slightest evidence of pain."

(Doctor Blank asks if any other part of the body can be rendered anesthetic by suggestion, and if it is not a fact that the back of the arm is neither very sensitive nor vascular.) "All right, rub some of this medicine on his lower lip and suggest that when you rub it three times it will be dead and have no feeling in it. Notice this, please, gentlemen." (Thrusting a pin through his lower lip from outside to inside an inch through the lip.) "You see it does not bleed, even on the inner surface of his lip."

No place, except the eye, is more sensitive than the lip, and no place in the body is more vascular. As to why this does not bleed, I will refer later on in my lecture. It is supposed to be

the influence exerted by suggestion upon the coaptation of the neurons.

Upon one occasion, in the presence of the faculty of the medical department of one of our state universities, and of at least one hundred physicians and three hundred medical students, I thrust a steel hat pin through the cheeks of three hypnotized subjects. Then I requested a noted surgeon present to name one man's face that should bleed, and bleed more than just a few drops, and that I would remove the pin from the faces of the other two men without bleeding, while this man's face would bleed. The experiment was a perfect success. I made the same experiment again, in the presence of a local medical society.

The method of getting the part to bleed is to suggest pain in the part, and the control over the blood supply to the part through the influence of the higher centers over the vasomotor neuro regulation of the blood supply is augmented. To keep it from bleeding, suggest that the part is dead, perfectly dead, and has no feeling in it. Then the higher centers seem to exert an inhibitory influence over the flow of blood in the part with which, in suggestive anesthesia, the face pierced by a steel hat pin does not bleed—at least in nine-tenths of the cases.

“Your subject seems to be comfortable, Doctor. Now, suggest to him that when you count three he will stand up, and when you say ‘stiff’ that he will be as stiff as iron from head to foot. I will lay him across the chairs for you, as there is a knack that I have acquired of lifting a man in that position that makes it easy for me.

“Put your foot there, Doctor, and we will both stand upon him. Give me your hand. Tell him to be stiff—to hold strong. Now come up gradually.

“You see he easily sustains our combined weight of over four hundred pounds in a line in the center of his body.

“Tell him to relax, sit down, sleep on. Doctor, suggest to your subject that when you rub this medicine on his arm three times it will be dead and have no feeling in it as long as he is in this room. Tell him that when he is awake you can thrust a pin in the skin of that arm while he is looking at it and he will have no feeling in it—that his arm will be perfectly dead as long as he is in this room.



“Now suggest to him that when you count three he will be wide awake, that he will feel good all over, that he will not remember anything that has been said or done while in the room, that nothing has hurt him, and that he will never have felt better in his life, that he will be glad he came up here, and will always feel better. Now count three and tell him to awake.”

“All right, my man; how do you feel?”

“All right, sir.”

“Has anything hurt you since you came into this room?”

“No, sir; not in the least.”

“Do you see this pin?” The doctor put some medicine on your arm here and it has no feeling in it. I am going to stick it with this pin. If you feel it in the least, let me know. Now, look at it—here it goes; do you feel that?”

“Not a bit.”

“That will never hurt you or never get sore in the least.”

(The doctor asks if I ever have any trouble in waking a subject?) “Not in the slightest. He is in a condition of increased suggestibility, and to awake him is only to get him to act upon an idea or suggestion, and this he will do easier now than ever before, provided you make the suggestion properly.

“Occasionally it is necessary to repeat again, ‘Wake up.’ Rarely have I found it necessary to thump him on the face or slap him lightly, and speak more emphatically, ‘Wake up!’ Be calm, well poised, and self-possessed. Should you ever find a subject that any one else had hypnotized and found difficulty in awakening, either turn an interrupted current of electricity upon him or administer one-tenth of a grain of apomorphin hypodermatically, and see what he will do. I have never found this necessary.”

What effect does hypnotism have on the subject, is asked. “Whatever effect you suggest. The effect is determined altogether by your suggestions. Hypnotism is but the induction of a mental condition in which your suggestions will be more effective and lasting. I will cover that question in detail in my analysis of the subject later on.

“Gentlemen, you notice those men go out of this room with



smiles on their faces. They seem to appreciate and enjoy the experience.

“As these experiments are conducted here I regard our demonstrations as splendid mental gymnastics. Those men are sent out of here with a new element of selfhood having been aroused within them. The real man, the ideal ego, is more self-conscious of his mastery and control of mind and body, his servants, than when he came into this room. I never hypnotized an individual in my life who was not my friend after that, all because I dealt with him kindly and he appreciated it. The man himself, the real self, is not weakened and dethroned by the methods that we employ, as some would have you believe.

“When you rightly appeal to the individual, you can take his body, and stick it, stand upon it, cut it, etc., and it is all right with him, because every step you are taking is through the power possessed within him.

“How frequent it is that the operator becomes hypnotized instead of his subject, thinking that it was some power that he was exerting over the hypnotized individual, rather than the use of an inherent quality of force within the individual himself.

“It is largely a matter of confidence in human beings. Faith in your fellowman, confidence in his ability to exercise inherent potentialities that are written in his blood and chiseled in his cerebral cells, is the secret of success in this line of work, as well as an important essential in rendering genuine service to your fellowman in every department of life.”

(Demonstrations Nos. 3, 4, and 5 were about like those just described, and a further report of these cases is therefore unnecessary.)

“Gentlemen, with the next subject waiting on the outside I will demonstrate another method of inducing the hypnotic condition by having him fix his eyes upon some bright object, so as to get his attention while making suggestions.

“Take this seat, my man. These are physicians, and I desire to show them how I can get a man to look at this bright collar button until his eyes become tired and how he will go to sleep

in a few minutes. I will put you to sleep, and you will sleep not over five minutes and awake feeling better."

"But I do not care to go to sleep, Doctor," says the patient.

"All right, then; we will excuse you."

A physician: "Doctor Munro, I should like to see you put that man to sleep and put him through the same test as you did the others."

"I should be glad to do so, Doctor, but this man says he does not care to go to sleep, and that is the end of it so far as our efforts to hypnotize him are concerned. No one can be hypnotized against his will. Consent and co-operation are absolutely necessary, except where autosuggestion on the part of the patient can be brought into play through credulity or fear—conditions which would remove the experiment altogether from the realm of the justifiable."

The point that I have attempted to drive home upon your consciousness here is that more people will consent for the medicine to put them to sleep than will give their consent to be hypnotized; so by the use of the medicine you can accomplish results that can not be secured otherwise. It is a means to secure an end. There is no deception in it, for I tell the individual what I expect him to do, what will be the result, and what I want him to do in order that the result may be obtained. The medicine actually is the material means through which the effect is induced. It does it by the impression it makes upon the mind—the sensory nerves, if you please—and this impression reaches and influences the higher cerebral centers. It accomplishes its work in accordance with the normal physiological processes.

It may seem queer to you at first glance that we can influence the physiological processes by psychological methods. But all medicines produce their results by their influence upon function, even when taken into the stomach or applied hypodermatically. Medicine used locally as a means of suggestion is a powerful functional stimulant. By it we can inhibit certain brain centers and call into play an increased activity of others. We quiet nervousness, we relieve pain, we restore sleep, and we encourage secretion, nutrition, and excretion.

All therapeutic measures can accomplish their results only by acting in conjunction with those inherent properties and forces within the biological element of the organism. Our internal medication acts only upon function. Medicine used internally or externally, whether for its physiological or psychic effect, can, through the suggestion giving it its psychological potency, stimulate the function of every organ in the body.

Every center of activity in the brain can be influenced by suggestion. Every organ in the body and all bodily functions are under the control of the nervous centers. Every element of the organism has its center of activity in the brain. All these we can influence by suggestion, and we can use medicine and surgery, and all other therapeutic measures, not only for the effects produced by their own physical influence upon the organism, but also as a means of successfully combating the disturbing psychic factor through the influence of those measures upon the mind. Every physician uses these measures, consciously or unconsciously, every day of his life.

Do not understand by the ground that I have taken that I am a therapeutic nihilist. I am, first and last, a regular physician, anxious for any therapeutic aid by any means whatsoever that will help to alleviate human suffering and cure disease. We can demonstrate the physiological action of our medicinal agents upon the physical organism, even in unconscious persons and animals, as impressively and conclusively as by a slap or a kick we can demonstrate to the person who denies it our ability to use our hands and feet. But, understand, I am talking to you about the psychic factor in therapeutics, pointing out its value as an important therapeutic adjunct, to be used in conjunction with any measure—medicinal, surgical, or otherwise—that will help to alleviate suffering and cure disease, or that will put the individual in such condition that a cure may take place.

This science, as applied in the practice of medicine, is based upon these premises: there is inherent in mankind a psychic power or mental force presiding over the functions, conditions, and sensations of his body, and this inherent potentiality, which is a property of the cells that compose the complex mechanism of the



animal physiology, can, under proper conditions, be evoked and controlled at will and applied to the alleviation of human suffering.

What that inherent quality of force represented by each individual cell in the human body is has in ages past been called by many names. It has been designated by such expressions as the "vis medicatrix nature," "the resident energy within," "neuric energy," and, in the terms of psychology, "the subconscious mind," "the subjective mind," "the subliminal consciousness," etc.

Tennyson referred to the same incomprehensible life principle when he pulled a little flower from a crannied wall and said:

Little flower—but if I could understand  
What you are, root and all, and all in all,  
I should know what God and man is.

The tendency of modern science is toward the possibility of reducing all phenomena, physical as well as psychological, to a common cause.

Verworn remarks that "the attempt to explain the mystery that surrounds living substances—the substance that nourishes itself, breathes, moves, grows, reproduces, and develops—has exerted from the earliest times a peculiar stimulus upon the mind of inquiring thinkers."

But while we do not know what that inherent quality or force, as represented by the individual cell, is, neither do we know what electricity is, nor what matter is, in any form in its ultimate analysis, but we do know something, not all, of the laws that govern these of nature's forces, and by conforming to these laws we are better enabled to make our struggle for existence.

By conforming to this psychological law we can get results in the alleviation of human suffering, and as broadminded men we want to make use of anything that will help us to grapple with the problems of health and disease.

Just as steam and electricity were governed by nature's laws that existed forever, and required only science to make use of them, so has psychic law existed forever, and a better understanding of, conformity to, and appropriation of this law are destined to make the same revolution in the practice of medicine as have been



effected by steam and electricity in methods of travel, manufacture, and communication.

The intelligenece of our age demands that the higher evolutionary factors of human personality, call them by whatever name you will, be recognized, and their truths be appropriated for the welfare, health, and happiness of our patients.

## CHAPTER VI.

### PRACTICAL THEORETICAL CONSIDERATIONS.

For our present discussion, let us regard man as being a living, thinking entity—a functioning organism that nourishes himself, breathes, moves, grows, and reproduces, adapting himself to his environment, both acting and reacting under the influence of innumerable internal and external stimuli.

His body, with its structures, organs, and parts, is composed of millions on millions of cells, each one of which, however much it may differ in structure and function from those belonging to other organs and tissues than its own, is a lineal descendant from a single primordial cell. Just how the mind of man is related to the brain and nervous system is as yet far from being clear, but we do know that as the brain is, so is the mind, and that a healthy, well-developed mind corresponds to a healthy, well-trained, well-developed, and well-nourished nervous system.

In the use of such expressions as “soul” and “spirit” in this discussion, it is with the same meaning as the word “mind,” and to suggest that the individual has emotion, feeling, and will as well as intellect.

Emotion and will are frequently regarded as spiritual, intellect as mental, and sensation as physical, but they are all qualities of the same individual body, mind, soul, or spirit. So, in the sense that I use the term “mind,” let it be held to embrace or include the whole of man’s psychic or mental activities, conscious and sub-conscious, voluntary and involuntary.

Let us think of the human mind as being manifested by or through the sum total of the functions of every cell in the body, expressed in thought, feeling, volition, action, motion, perception, conception, memory, etc.

When I say action and motion, think not only of objective, conscious, external action and motion—such as feeling, seeing,

hearing, reading, talking, walking, or other conscious sensations and acts—but also of subjective, unconscious, internal action and motion, including even the action of the lowest cell in the body in its ability to take in new matter, fix it, change it, and throw it off.

In one sense, each cell seems to have a mind of its own, for it goes on performing its special functions, be it brain cell, gland, muscle, bone, or skin cell. Yet no one of these microscopic organisms is capable of independent existence. Each has its duty to perform, but each in turn is dependent, at least in a very large degree, for its own existence upon the activity of other cells of the body, the functioning of which constitutes the complex mechanism of the animal physiology.

**Conscious Mind.**—Man, as an entity, has conscious psychic or mental activities, which correspond to the functions of the motor area of the brain—the gray matter, the higher centers, the voluntary processes. The functioning of these we designate as the conscious mind. These centers respond to stimuli that reach them through the five special senses—sight, hearing, feeling, taste, and smell—and through these all the bodily functions can be reached and influenced. Here is the seat of all voluntary action, the home of reason and the higher intellectual faculties.

So far as we know, our higher mental functions seem to have their immediate seats in the cortex of the brain, and of these mental functions the anterior frontal lobes appear to have the power of inhibition. This is as near as we can come to absolute localization of the mental faculties.

Articulation is a motor act, and, in common with other motor functions, is governed by groups of cells in Broca's convolutions; but the mind, which is symbolized by language, giving expression to our thoughts, desires, ideas, aspirations and volitions, is a psychic phenomenon dependent upon the entire brain and nervous system. All forms of life that have ideas, however crude they may be, have the power of symbolizing them. Language is but the symbolization of ideas, and even the lower forms of life have a language of their own, however elementary and primitive they may be.

The failure of memory, as we know, is dependent upon the dis-

solution of the entire nervous system. The latest acquired, and consequently the least organized, mental attributes disappearing first indicates that the mind, as exhibited by speech through the combined effort of feeling, memory, desire, and will, is an acquirement dependent upon environment, and quality and mode of neuron organization.

Our conscious mind, then, seems to be an outgrowth of education and experience, resulting from the conditions that environ us during our struggle for existence from the cradle to the grave. This is the mind that we use in our normal, waking consciousness, as we go in the smooth, even tenor of our ways, attending to our respective vocations in life, not dominated by fear, or anger, or emotion, but controlled by reason and will. This, I say, is the conscious mind and represents the higher brain centers in action.

Hypnotism is the process or method of using suggestion to influence the action of the conscious mind. By suggestion the functions of the motor area of the brain can be soothed, quieted, made still, passive, inactive, at rest, or placed in abeyance. As an individual the subject ceases to use these brain centers and consents to allow you to use them for him, and through them to reach and influence the lower nervous system, which presides over the involuntary physiological processes of the body.

Hypnotism, in one sense, is induced sleep. The only difference between induced sleep and natural sleep is that in natural sleep you are completely oblivious to the outside world, while in induced, or hypnotic, sleep the subject is, as it were, asleep to every one except the person who induced the sleep. He is *en rapport* with the operator—in relation with him. He hears and acts upon the operator's suggestions, but appears to pay no attention to any one else than the person who induced the condition referred to as the hypnotic state.

When the conscious mind is rendered passive, as when an individual is hypnotized, or in a condition of increased susceptibility to suggestion, we can better reach and influence all those psychic activities which lie below the threshold of consciousness, the study of which throws much light upon the subject at hand.



**Subconscious Mind.**—All those psychic activities which are found below the threshold of consciousness correspond to the functions of all the involuntary physiological processes—the functions of the lower neuron systems, the functions of the ganglionic and sympathetic nervous systems, and the functions of the lowest cell in the body as it plays its part in the game of the life of the entire physical organism. These functions we designate the subconscious mind.

Moreover, the subconscious mind, which corresponds to the functions of the vegetative brain and nervous system, perceives by intuition; it is the storehouse of subjective memory, and is greatly influenced by the emotions. It presides over the functions, conditions, and sensations of the body; over all the vegetative or nutritive processes—over digestion, secretion, excretion, nutrition, waste, respiration, calorification; in short, over all cell life function and development.

When the conscious mind is inhibited or soothed into passivity, as in the hypnotic state, this subconscious mind is amenable to influence by suggestion. It can be influenced by suggestion without hypnotism, but in the hypnotic state there is an increased amenability or susceptibility of the subconscious mind to suggestion, and also an increase in its power to execute an idea or suggestion through its control over the physiological processes of the body.

In the hypnotic state we can influence and make such impressions upon the subconscious mind as will be fully carried out in its influence over the physical organism, and the fact that the subconscious mind does preside over the functions, conditions, and sensations of the body, and is more amenable to suggestion when the conscious mind is inhibited, gives us in a nutshell the reason why the results are obtained from hypnotic suggestion or suggestion in the hypnotic state.

How do we prove that the subconscious mind is amenable to suggestion? For upon the truthfulness of this proposition is based the entire structure of the science of suggestive therapeutics.

First, we use suggestion upon the conscious mind. This we do when we hypnotize a man, as was demonstrated in a previous

chapter. Then, by suggestion in the hypnotic state, we can better reach and influence the deeper thresholds of consciousness.

After an individual is hypnotized, you will remember that we held up his arm and suggested to him that when we counted three that arm would be stiff and that he could not take it down. We challenged him, "You can't take it down." The arm remained stiff, showing that voluntary function was here influenced or inhibited by suggestion; that the conscious mind which presided over this motor function was amenable to our suggestion.

Then it was suggested that after the medicine had been applied to his arm it would be dead and would have no feeling in it; and a pin was thrust into his arm without the slightest evidence of pain, showing that the subconscious mind, which presides over the sensations of the body, was also amenable to suggestion.

Then, that both the conscious and subconscious minds were amenable to suggestion was proved by suggesting to him that when he stood up and we counted three he would be stiff—so stiff that we could lay him across two chairs and he would not bend. We then caused him to sustain the weight of from two to four hundred pounds without the slightest inconvenience.

A further demonstration that the subconscious mind presides over sensation and is amenable to suggestion was given when we suggested to the individual that his lip was dead and had no feeling in it, and a pin was thrust through his lip, not only without the slightest evidence of pain, but without producing bleeding.

So we see that the mind of man, both conscious and subconscious, both voluntary and involuntary, is amenable to suggestion, and that suggestion to the voluntary waking consciousness is as much hypnotism as is suggestion in that increased condition of suggestibility usually referred to as the hypnotic state; that any influence brought to bear upon the mind of any individual by any means whatsoever is hypnotism; that the individual is hypnotized by suggestion, and that an individual with his eyes wide open, thinking he is in possession of all his conscious faculties, is frequently as much amenable to suggestion as is the subject in that sleeplike condition usually referred to as the hypnotic state.

The conscious mind presides over the voluntary functions; it

corresponds to the functions of the gray matter, the motor area of the brain, the higher intellectual faculties; but in the presence of a stronger personality, be it an attorney at law, a minister, a teacher, a salesman, or a physician, it is amenable to influence and is controlled by suggestion.

The hypnotic state, when induced by the method that we employ with the medicine, is always induced with the consent of the voluntary waking consciousness. We always get the consent and co-operation of the will of the individual to be hypnotized; but by suggestion without a sleeplike condition, as is used by all classes of individuals, the conscious mind may be stealthily and subtly dominated. Hypnotic suggestion, however employed by the medicine method which we have demonstrated and described, is always used with the individual's consent.

The subconscious mind presides not only over the involuntary functions, but over all cell life function and development. I have frequently produced copious emesis by suggesting to an individual that he had taken ipecac, thus showing the effect of suggestion upon the involuntary physiological processes. In a number of instances I have had physicians accomplish this result in my class work by suggestions made by them to the subject that they had hypnotized.

I say by suggestion we can influence cell life. In not less than one hundred instances have I taken a hat pin from a lady's hat and without sterilization thrust it through a large fold of the cheek of a person without the slightest ill results following. In several hundred instances have I thrust a smaller pin without sterilization through the face or an arm of an individual without the least untoward results.

We certainly can not influence the bacteria upon the pin; then we must increase the resistive power of the cells in the face in some way. Whether it is done by encouraging leucocytosis or the migration of phagocytes, or whether we increase the resistive power of protoplasm direct, has never been explained. Theorize upon that proposition as you will; its meaning has a far deeper import than appears at first upon the surface. To me it indicates that we can increase the resistive power—life, strength, and energy—



of every cell in the body by suggestion, both with and without hypnotism; so that in the fight between the etiological factors of disease, which is ever being made by the cells of the body, we can help these cells in their struggle against pathogenic germs or other etiological factors of disease.

Physiologists have ever endowed the brain centers with a peculiar form of energy of their own, indefinitely referred to by such expressions as neuric energy, nerve force, and the like. These higher centers occupy a relation to the general cells comprising the physical body similar to that occupied by a dynamo to a piece of machinery. By suggestion we can convert potential energy into dynamic energy, latent energy into moving energy, and in this way increase the resistive power of every cell in the body.

I am aware that some physicians will shrug their shoulders and raise their hands to heaven in protest against the foregoing statement. It goes against the grain to present an idea so completely at variance with their preconceived opinions. But if they will reflect and verify, they will be forced to bow down before the evidence of facts.

I do not mean to say that an instrument previously infected with a culture of anthrax bacilli can be thrust with impunity into the flesh of a hypnotized subject, neither do I mean to give license for any failure to observe the strictest rules of asepsis, which has been the means of the brilliant achievements that have crowned the efforts of modern surgery; but let the facts in the case speak for themselves. Let us hew close to the line of truth, let the chips fall where they may.

I have in at least five hundred instances taken a pin that has not been previously sterilized and thrust it through a fold of the skin in the face or arm, and with but one single exception have never observed the least unpleasant results. Even the exception in this case only goes to prove the efficacy and power of suggestion in the accomplishment or support of the position that I have taken.

In one instance I used a small blade of my pocket knife and jabbed it under a fold of the skin for an inch without soreness resulting. The antiseptic property of the blood is not to be discredited in making allowance for the result, nor elimination by bleeding,



but in this case the arm bled only a few drops. On an average, where a pin was used the arm did not bleed one time in fifty. Nor do I forget the natural resistive power of the cells themselves in a healthy individual, and this, in my opinion, can by suggestion be strengthened to a wonderful extent.

The one exception where the arm became sore was in the case of a physician for whom I gave a treatment by hypnotic suggestion and relieved him of a tinnitus aurium of twelve years' standing. He was an extremely neurotic individual, and when I awakened him after the treatment for his tinnitus and asked if anything had hurt him in the least, he replied, "No."

"Did you know that I had thrust a pin into the flesh of your arm?"

"No; you did not or I should have felt it," said he.

"Do you feel it now?" I asked. "No, not in the least," said he. "You did not stick me really, did you?"

"Yes," I replied, "and here it is now," and I pushed back his cuff and let him see the pin yet through the fold of the skin.

"Take that out," said he, in a most excited manner.

His tinnitus was relieved, and after one year, when I last heard from him, had not returned. Yet he seemed offended because I, a physician, should have taken such a risk as to thrust an unclean instrument into his flesh.

In the afternoon he had a red, painful arm, with a general temperature of 103° F., and he asked that I hypnotize him again and get rid of that condition. I hypnotized him and gave him appropriate suggestions to relieve his pain, quiet his nervousness, and give him a good night's sleep. After awakening him I assured him that his temperature was due to malaria. He took twenty-five grains of quinin that evening and was all right the next morning.

This, I say, was the only case in my extensive experience where there was the slightest unpleasant symptom after sticking a pin without sterilization into the flesh, and I am quite sure that I have made that experiment not less than five hundred times.

It has been reported that a physician jabbed a dull lead pencil into the flesh of a hypnotized subject and produced an infection.

Such a procedure would destroy the cells in that part, and is not at all a parallel case to where a sharp instrument is used and proper suggestions given to influence the result.

These facts have led me to conclude that, through the influences exerted by the higher centers of the brain over the vasomotor neuro regulation of the blood supply to the part, increased leucocytosis results, and that the theory of phagocytic resistance, as advanced by Metschnikoff, is an important and constant factor in natural immunity. According to this author, leucocytes, having arrived at the spot where the intruders are found, seize them after the manner of the ameba and with their bodies subject them to intracellular digestion.

The facts mentioned in regard to the case of the physician whose autosuggestions were adverse and most unfavorable, as against at least five hundred cases where suggestions were given in the hypnotic state that would possibly favor this natural physiological process of immunity, lead me to conclude that cell activity is increased or retarded in even a local area by suggestion. We know that every cell in the body, through the complex mechanism of animal physiology, is influenced by centers of activity in the brain. These centers can be stimulated and encouraged into action by suggestion. We can convert potential energy into dynamic energy, latent energy into moving energy, and in this way all the physiological processes can be increased or encouraged, and by suggestion, both with and without hypnotism, we can aid the cells of the body in the fight against the etiological factors of disease, whether due to pathogenic germs or other causes.

The physician, then, in the light of such indisputable facts, is a factor either for good or harm in the sick-room. How often is it the case that his training in the pathological laboratory so fills him subconsciously with fear of pathogenic germs that it completely offsets his confidence in the natural resistive powers of his patient; like a dog frightened and cowed, he goes into the fight with a drooped head and his tail tucked in, exercising a most depressing influence upon his patient, rather than with a sufficient faith in the potentialities inherent in the living cells that comprise the physical organism to encourage them into action.

Has it not often been your experience to see a patient very sick, so that, from the pathological condition there existing, reason would cause you to doubt the possibility of his recovery? But he had faith in you, expected to get well, was hopeful and optimistic, and that encouraged you both to encourage him and to do your best for him. Later on, when he was safely on the road to recovery, when he was thanking you for what you had done for him, you gratefully reminded him that he was getting well on account of his courage and bravery, and that had it not been for his will power and determination he never would have recovered. You really felt that your services played a small part in his recovery.

On the other hand, you have had patients who were not at all seriously sick, so far as their apparent pathological conditions would indicate, yet from the very first visit you realized that you had failed to get *en rapport* with them. You realized that you "did not make good," and upon your return the next morning you found that he was nervous and had not slept well that night; there was an increase in pulse rate, his respirations were quickened, and he was overanxious about himself, and from this condition he continued to go on from bad to worse until, finally, upon your last visit, when you realized that he would not recover—chagrined, humiliated, and mortified—you could not but feel that he had failed to recover on account of the morbid mental attitude taken toward his condition in its incipiency. He died for the lack of the will to get well.

The experience of hundreds and hundreds of physicians coincides with the cases just cited. Why is it that the mental attitude of an individual plays such an important part either toward recovery or nonrecovery? For this reason: everybody's subconscious mind is constantly amenable to the influence, suggestion, and control of his conscious mind, and, when you fully comprehend this proposition, you see very plainly that every one is treating himself by self-suggestion all the time, whether he realizes it or not. Your own thoughts, your own beliefs, your own predominating mental characteristics, whether you will it or not, whether you believe it or not, whether you know it or not, are the suggestions



that are ever influencing your subconscious mind either for good or harm.

So much so is that true, that you can put it down as a safe proposition that the individual who is hopeful, optimistic, and cheerful, constantly looking on the bright side of life, carrying sunshine and cheer into the lives of others—that such an individual, by his mental attitude, conduces to the health and strength and well-being of his own physical organism as well.

On the other hand, the individual who is pessimistic, despondent, and blue, having morbid fears about his own physical condition, worrying over the affairs of life, unduly emotional, pining and complaining—such an individual, by his mental attitude, has a wrecking, weakening, ruinous effect, not only upon his own physical organization, but upon that of others.

As we pointed out in a previous chapter, emotional conditions of a hopeful, optimistic, and cheerful kind encourage anabolism, or constructive metamorphosis, a building up of the cells of the body; while depressing emotional conditions—worry, fear, envy, anger, jealousy, and such like—encourage catabolism, or destructive metamorphosis, a tearing down of the cells of the body.

In the study of the etiology of neurasthenia and allied conditions, including all functional disturbances—and their name is legion—self-suggestion enters into these cases as a causative factor that is of a far deeper import than is generally recognized; and in treating this class of cases, as well as for the nervous element of any disease, acute or chronic, surgical or otherwise, it is our duty as physicians to make such impressions upon the conscious minds of our patients in our daily association with them as would indirectly influence the subconscious mind through autosuggestion. At least we must make the patient feel that we understand his case; that we are especially interested in him; that we are giving him due consideration, and as far as possible we should hold out a strong belief or expectancy that he will get well. Just in proportion as we keep him cheerful, hopeful, and optimistic, just so far shall we help him on the road to recovery.

Think of these two minds as two sets of men upon a war vessel. The men upon the upper deck give their attention to the fleet over



yonder. They give their attention to the objective world. These are performing the function of the conscious mind. The men below deck give their attention to the internal machinery of the ship, paying no attention whatever to the outside world. They represent the subconscious mind. Their respective duties are entirely separate and independent, yet the men below stand ever ready to obey the dictates, or orders, or signals from the men above.

Every human being is giving orders that will encourage the performance of every organic function every minute and hour of his life, or he is giving orders that will inhibit, retard, and weaken the involuntary psychic activities or nervous functions. So you see that suggestion is used both with and without hypnotism, and that any influence brought to bear upon the conscious mind of your patient indirectly reaches his subconscious mind. We are using it every day of our lives for the good or harm of ourselves and for the good or harm of our patients.

To show you the influence of the mind upon the bodily functions, I will cite one illustration. I was once talking to a physician about hypnotism or suggestion when a band stopped in front of his office and began to play. In a jocular way he remarked, "I should like to see you hypnotize that band and stop it from playing." "All right," said I, "come and watch the procedure." I procured three lemons, and gave a half of each to as many little boys on the street, instructing them to walk round and round the band, sucking the lemons and making faces at the musicians. The result was such an increase in the secretion of their salivary glands that the men were compelled to stop and swallow or empty their instruments of saliva. They were unable to continue their music and the little boys were put to flight.

An individual with a large "bay window" is usually a man who gives full appreciation to the thought of the dinner hour, the breakfast hour, the lunch hour. This pleasurable anticipation of the approaching meal time encourages the free flow of blood to his gastric mucous membrane, with a result that he has a plentiful supply of gastric juice, a good appetite, a good digestion, and a healthy physique.

On the other hand, our cadaverous-looking brother usually ap-

proaches his meal hours with pessimistic forebodings, and goes to his home at meal time more as a matter of duty than otherwise; thus he unfortunately fails to encourage this passive organ sufficiently to enable it to secrete sufficient gastric juice to give him an appetite or to secure a perfectly digested meal.

By suggestion we can influence man's conscious and subconscious psychic activities, and thus every organ and every cell in the body can be stimulated. The daily visit of the physician to his patient is one of the most important therapeutic factors at his command through the very influence of his own personality.

Before going into the practical application of the theories of hypnotic or therapeutic suggestion, I desire to briefly call your attention to other phases of this subject, which, though they may not appear to you perfectly scientific, have a bearing upon the subject at hand of such importance that it can not be ignored.

We remarked in the outset that the subconscious mind perceived by intuition—that it was the storehouse of memory, the seat of the emotions, and presided over the functions, conditions, and sensations of the body. So far we have been elaborating the influence of the subconscious mind over the functions, conditions, and sensations of the body, having made it clear that when the conscious mind was inhibited the subconscious mind was more amenable or susceptible to suggestion, and that suggestions given in the hypnotic state were more effective and lasting in certain selected cases than suggestions without hypnotism. We also made it plain that the conscious mind of every individual was amenable to influence by suggestion, and that any influence brought to bear upon the mind of an individual by any means whatever came under the broad domain of suggestive therapeutics.

**The Subconscious Mind Perceives by Intuition.**—It is now considered that thought transference, or telepathy, is rendered possible on account of the ability of the subconscious mind of one individual to be impressed or influenced by another mind by some means apart from the generally recognized modes of communication. It may be that this is based on sympathy existing between two persons concerned, and deals with something in which they are mutually interested. Be that as it may, that there should be

such a relation between two individuals of congenial habits of thought and action seems to me to be no more unreasonable than that two mechanical instruments delicately and harmoniously attuned, the one to the other, should receive electrical vibrations through air, and earth, and water thousands of miles apart, by which our wonderful system of wireless telegraphy has been perfected.

In connection with this phase of the subject I am at present an agnostic, but I am ever ready to stand by facts as I find them, hoping that some day, perhaps not far distant, some of the problems that have so perplexed honest investigators on this line will be explained by the discovery and control of a natural law that has been in operation forever, and, like all other natural laws, only required the intelligence of man to appropriate and use it for his welfare and happiness.

I have had some demonstrations and observations of certain phases of this subject presented to me which have led me to certain conclusions that I desire to bring to your attention, without which it would be impossible to intelligently practice suggestive therapeutics.

I once took a young man whom I had frequently hypnotized, and, while in the hypnotic state, blindfolded him. I wrote upon a piece of paper the following suggestion: "Go to the mantelpiece and get the baby's photograph, and bring it to me." A witness who was present at the time read the suggestion. Not a word was spoken more than to tell him that, when I counted three, I wanted him to go and do what was written upon the piece of paper; that I would not indicate what I wished him to do by look, or gesture, or word, but would constantly think of it.

I then removed the blindfold, told him to open his eyes and do what was ordered on the piece of paper. He at once went to the mantelpiece, put his hand upon the first photograph nearest to him, which was the wrong one, but put that down; then to another, which he also put down; and lastly he took the baby's photograph indicated, held it in his hand and, turning around with a blank expression on his face, handed it to me. "Good," said I. "Be seated and sleep on."



At this juncture a winter coat was thrown over his face, and I wrote on another piece of paper that he would go to a washstand, thrust his hand in the water pitcher, and wash his hands, which he did. I again wrote on another piece of paper that he would take a stool upon the floor and turn it bottom side upward, and take a seat in the bottom. This being done, I wrote that he would go to a lounge in the room, lie flat down upon his face, cover his head up with a pillow, and go to sleep.

Take notice that all these suggestions were written—not one word being spoken. Each suggestion was carried out precisely as written upon the piece of paper. When I awakened him and asked what he had been doing, he replied, “Nothing.” When I told him what he had done, he denied it. When I presented the written suggestions and assured him positively that he had carried out every suggestion given in writing, and that not a word had been spoken to indicate what we wanted him to do, he laughed aloud and said that we had played a great joke on him.

Since that one demonstration I have never doubted that man has a means of conveying an idea or impression to another individual which lies outside the domain of the five special senses. It is by this that thought transference, or telepathy, is made possible. As to whether the reader believes in thought transference, or telepathy, is a matter for him to decide. It is recognized as a fact by some of our ablest scientists and psychologists of the present day. It affords an explanation of a great mass of unexplained phenomena that have been hitherto relegated to the realm of mysticism. If there be any truth in it, it has its practical bearing upon our subject at hand in this way: the more faith one has in his ability to hypnotize a subject or to use suggestion, both with and without hypnotism, the greater will be his success; the more faith we have in any therapeutic measure, the better will be the results from its administration; the more faith we have in that inherent quality of resistive power within our patient, call it by whatever name we please, the better are the chances of our patient to recover.

The physicians who have the most confidence in suggestive therapeutics always secure the best results in its application. A



doubtful mental suggestion may outweigh a positive oral suggestion, if it be possible to give a positive suggestion orally when one is in doubt, and a physician may fail to get results for the lack of confidence in the procedure.

Furthermore, we, as physicians, should cultivate a spirit of optimism and self-confidence in our demeanor with our patients. The physician who goes into the sick-room with an air of self-sufficiency, which is based upon professional qualifications and an understanding of human nature, will always inspire his patients with confidence and secure that mental attitude on the part of the patient that is desirable. Such a man usually possesses tact sufficient, not only to influence the mental attitude of his patient in regard to his own condition, but to drop a suggestion here and there upon the minds of those around him which will secure the proper psychological environment under which the best results may be obtained.

Many men succeed in the practice of medicine far beyond their professional qualifications because they possess tact and self-confidence sufficient to properly impress and inspire confidence in those with whom they associate.

On the other hand, we often see a well-qualified physician fail to succeed on account of his lack of ability to carry that suggestive influence which is so essential to the personality of the successful physician. A lack of faith in self, however much one may try to conceal the fact from observation, repels that confidence that others would have in one.

I am frequently asked how to acquire confidence in our ability to succeed in accomplishing what we have undertaken in life, and I usually answer: **“By going the route—by making the fight, by hard work, concentration, and study, and the acquirement of self-confidence, which can come only through knowledge and experience.”** That indefinable quality of personality called “personal magnetism” is comprehended here. The man who goes down the stream of life day after day self-reliant, optimistic, and cheerful, with a pleasant greeting for his friends, glad that everything is as well with him today as it is, glad of the privilege to work, and to study, and to learn, and to be of use in the world, is always

the one that is looking out for a better tomorrow, and unconsciously attracts to him the elements that go to make up success in life.

With the physician this is indicated by his library, his post-graduate diplomas, his office equipment, and the interest that he takes, not only in his profession, but in all questions that contribute to the welfare, happiness, and onward development of the human race. The world has no use for human inertness. We must keep in line with the progress of our age, or step aside.

The individual who is pessimistic, despondent, and gloomy, and so morbidly self-conscious of his own life's battles that he has no time to speak to his friends, who is continually speaking disparagingly of life and its opportunities, brooding over his own troubles, whining and complaining, will drive away those elements that go to make life worth while.

This intuitive faculty of the subconscious mind often forces itself upon the recognition of the physician in his routine work. You have frequently been called to see a patient who was not properly within your clientele. You perhaps wondered why you received this call. On returning the next day to make your second visit, the minute you entered the sick-room you could tell whether your patient was better or worse, and who among the environment was for you or against you, and you have at times observed that the patient would be progressing very satisfactorily but for the antagonistic suggestive influence of some influential member of the family or friend who favored the patronage of another physician.

To get properly *en rapport* with all those who collectively go to make up the environing influence brought to bear upon your patient constitutes tact, and is one of the greatest elements of success in the practice of medicine.

**The Subconscious Mind is the Storehouse of Memory.**—Memory seems but to be the impress made by previous experiences in life upon the entire brain and nervous system. Aside from conscious objective memory, every experience in your life has left its indelible impress upon your subconscious mind. This is what gives rise to a great many subjective impressions and sensations which haunt the lives of neurotic individuals.

All education and instruction, and experience of any kind, are retained by the subconscious mind. These ideas or impressions here lie dormant until ready to be brought out by the association of ideas. You would say that some of your best prescriptions have been extemporaneously devised upon the spur of the moment; but the skilled surgeon finds every previous experience in the dissecting and operating room and pathological laboratory instinctively forcing itself upon the domain of consciousness as an impelling guidance or impulse to every step of the procedure.

By suggestion, both with and without the aid of hypnotism, we can modify the effect of old impressions and memories which are the result of unpleasant experiences in life, and plant new impressions and ideas that will influence the future life and conduct of an individual both consciously and unconsciously.

The physician who has the happy faculty of getting the confidence of his patients and keeping them feeling good is always a successful therapist. At every visit he lifts his patient out of a morbid self-consciousness of despondency and gloom, and, presenting a roseate hue of life, inspires him with hope and confidence.

That the subconscious mind is the storehouse of memory explains why you can give a patient a suggestion in the hypnotic state at nine o'clock this morning that will give him a good night's sleep, beginning at a specified time, the following evening, and every night afterward. This is the application of post-hypnotic suggestion. I have frequently broken up nervous, wakeful habits of neurotic individuals in a single treatment by suggestion in the hypnotic state, to affect them post-hypnotically.

The nervous element of an acute disease may be aggravated, or a neurasthenic, psychasthenic, or hysterical condition maintained, on account of some morbid emotional condition resulting from an unpleasant experience in the previous life of the individual, rendering the patient nervous, preventing sleep, and proving destructive to all physiological processes. Freud's work in this field is most instructive.

By the use of hypnotic suggestion we can modify the sense impressions causing these depressing emotional disturbances. Give such people more plentiful and refreshing sleep, and plant upon



the subconscious mind such impressions as will make them more hopeful, more optimistic, more cheerful, and happier in many ways, resulting in a good appetite, good digestion, improved nutrition, and a complete restoration to health. By suggestions properly given in the hypnotic state we can change the individual's point of view in regard to experiences which upset the mental and nervous equilibrium. I cite one case for example:

I once had a patient, a lady, who had a son accidentally killed. She was of an emotional nature, neurasthenic, and rather inclined to be on the hysterical order. Three hours after the accident which caused her son's death I was called. The large bed-room was full of friends who had come to express their sympathy. These people had unconsciously used suggestion to make her feel worse. Her minister had been on the scene to express his sympathy, and unconsciously used suggestion to make her more self-conscious of her bereavement.

As I walked in the door I began to ask each of those present to leave me alone with my patient. By the time I had reached the bed the room was cleared of all present, except her husband. I attempted bravely to talk her into being quiet, but my very presence seemed to have been a signal for an outburst of this emotional condition. At every attempt to reason with her or to soothe and console her, she would cry vehemently and answer, "Oh, you don't know, you don't know."

Seeing that I was making no headway, I prescribed chloralhydrate 15 grains and potassium bromide 30 grains to each dose, four doses, repeated every two hours. I directed that no company be allowed to come into the room, and instructed her husband to sit by her bedside and place a cold towel upon her forehead, changing it every ten minutes. This was in August and the weather was extremely warm.

After the fourth dose of the prescription just mentioned had been taken I prescribed 15 grains of trional to the dose, four doses, to be given every two hours. Three hours after the last dose of this was taken I administered a hypodermic injection of morphiin sulphate  $\frac{1}{4}$  grain, with hyoseyn hydrobromid  $\frac{1}{100}$  grain.

Three hours afterward she had still been unable to sleep, was



very nervous, had a terrific headache, and I felt that it would be unsafe to administer more medicine. At that juncture I hypnotized her. The medicine previously given apparently had a cumulative effect, as she was very easily hypnotized.

I then suggested that she would sleep soundly all night; that her sleep would be quiet and refreshing; that while she slept a perfect spirit of resignation would come over her, and she would wake in the morning feeling perfectly resigned to the accident and bereavement; that she would sleep soundly until eight o'clock the next morning, at which time her husband should awaken her by placing his hand upon her forehead and commanding her to wake up; that she would be feeling perfectly resigned to the accident, and would eat her breakfast, and give her attention to her domestic relations, and feel proud that she had ever been permitted to be the mother of so worthy a son.

On my return the next morning I found that she had slept soundly all night, and she at once began to tell me what she had decided—giving me the very ideas that I had suggested to her the night previous.

I feel quite sure that a greater change in her mental and nervous condition had taken place during this one night's sleep, together with the influence of the suggestions given, than would have resulted under normal conditions after a period of several months had elapsed.

My experience with this patient fully corroborates the conclusions of Morton Prince when he says: "When the hysterical manifestations are due to the functioning of dissociated subconscious ideas, it is not always necessary, as some writers insist, to recall those ideas to the personal waking consciousness. It is enough to break up the subconscious complex, or to suggest antagonistic ideas, or to resynthesize the ideas into a healthy complex, which gives true appreciation of the facts which they represent. This can be done in hypnosis. After waking, though amnesia for the previous subconscious ideas may persist, the symptoms disappear, for those harmful subconscious ideas which caused the trouble have ceased to exist."

I am furthermore convinced that there is much insanity, the

etiology of which is obscure, where, in many cases, if the timely administration of hypnotic suggestion had been used to give those people good, sound sleep, to change their mental attitude toward the conditions that were worrying them, to make new impressions upon their cerebral cells, and substitute more wholesome mental states, a large proportion of these cases could have been prevented, upon the principle that an ounce of prevention is worth a pound of cure.

The proof that all insanity is dependent upon diseased states of the brain has never yet been rendered in its entirety. Organic pathological changes are found in paresis, senile dementia, alcoholism, and probably in epilepsy, dementia præcox, and climacteric insanity, and this leaves out of consideration the condition of a large proportion of those adjudged as insane. The correlation between mental symptoms and pathological anatomy is as yet largely to be determined, at least in a considerable part of the acknowledged field of insanity.

Many people are incapable of thinking and reasoning for themselves as the result of false training, education, and environment. You can give them advice and make all the appeal to reason within your power, and yet they seem unable to execute your ideas. The physician who has that spirit of altruism sufficient to enable him to appropriate these methods can here apply hypnotic suggestion and obtain results that can not be obtained in any other way.

There are others upon whom the cares of life have borne heavily, whose involuntary nervous system has received many a hard blow; it has been shocked and wrought upon by cruel impressions or experiences which take possession of a patient and torment his life. These are found among all classes, from the highest bred college graduate to the most ignorant working class.

Many nervous and mental symptoms are what are designated by Boris Sidis as recurrent mental and psychomotor states—that is, according to Morton Prince, dissociations of the personality and the reproduction of systems of ideas which were originally an emotional mental accident that the patient once upon a time experienced. These experiences have been conserved as brain resi-

due, or complexes, which functionate again from time to time as psychoneurotic symptoms.

When they are sick, there is no time for re-educating and re-training them. Like miners buried in a deep, dark hole in the earth, where huge piles of shale and debris have caved in upon them, they need help. Like a man in jail, they want to get out. They expect you to do something for them. To give them narcotics and sedatives but temporarily benumbs their psychic activities, interferes with all functional processes, weakens their powers of resistance, interferes with elimination, and is actually destructive and weakening to both mind and body. The judicious, intelligent application of suggestion, both with and without hypnotism, in this class of cases is a boon to these unfortunate sufferers who rely upon us for help. A rearrangement of these conserved experiences by the neuron elements can be brought about, and the distressing nervous and mental symptoms relieved in perfect accord with the physiological mechanisms of the nervous system.

**The Subconscious Mind is the Seat of the Emotions.**—Whatever impulse dominates the individual—whether fear, worry, anxiety, envy, anger, jealousy, love, or the purely animal passions—makes its appeal to and impress on the subconscious mind, which corresponds to the functions of the involuntary nervous system.

We all have noticed that the functions of the different organs of the body are greatly disturbed through emotional influences; sorrow brings tears to the eyes; prolonged grief interferes with the secretion of gastric juice by the stomach. Of all emotional conditions which are most detrimental, however, fear, which is the opposite emotion to self-reliance and self-confidence, is the worst. Fear is the natural accompaniment of weakness, ignorance, and disease. Fear has a wonderful inhibitory influence upon both the motor and voluntary, as well as the involuntary, functions of the body. Fear of sickness, fear of death, fear of failure—fear of anything of any kind, of any nature—is detrimental to all physiological processes. We invite what we fear. Fear weakens our resistive powers to disease. It is the frequent experience of physicians to have pneumonia and enteric fever patients who die of fear and not on account of the pathological condition existing.



At the very onset of illness, quite frequently, the patient becomes afraid, gets nervous, does not sleep, and manifests a lack of confidence in the ability of his physician and doubts his own ability to recover. He thus has a psychoneurotic condition complicating his disease. His resistive powers are thus lessened, all physiological processes are disturbed, and death results from fear and not on account of the pathological condition, which would run its course and go on to recovery but for the psychoneurotic element. We should distinguish here between conscious and subconscious fear. Tuberculous patients are noted for their apparent optimism, hopefulness, and cheerfulness, which are frequently only on the surface; yet as a result of this very optimism, as has been observed by all physicians, even in the presence of such a gross pathological condition, the resistive powers of many tuberculous patients are augmented to an astonishing degree. We frequently see others, however, who are so subconsciously dominated by fear that all involuntary nervous functions are disturbed on account of impressions gathered from experiences which have come to them through their own observation of the disastrous consequences of this disease. In this class of cases suggestion, both with and without hypnotism, is particularly beneficial. We quiet an irritable, involuntary nervous system; we get them to breathe deeper; we give them suggestions which produce more plentiful and refreshing sleep, and plant subconscious impressions, which result in the re-establishment of the normal functions of every healthy cell in the body as far as this is possible. The result is an increase in the patient's resistive powers, a conservation of his protoplasmic energy, and he is in condition to more successfully combat the pathogenic germs which are making their ravages upon him. The etiological factors of disease, whether due to pathogenic germs or other causes, are powerless in the presence of cells of an organism with a degree of resistive power sufficient to render them invulnerable.

All that contributes to the health of an individual in the way of nourishment, medicine, climatic conditions, exercise, etc., should, of course, be appropriated.

The etiological factors of disease are here, and they are here to



stay, in spite of our modern methods of disinfection and improved sanitary conditions, which have practically abolished yellow fever, smallpox, cholera, and other diseases regarded as inevitable curses of the human race, and more attention should be given to increasing the resistive powers of the individual to the ravages of pathogenic processes.

We, as physicians, have studied the dead body too much and the living organism not enough. We have underrated the self-healing processes of nature and the physical effects of psychologic influences. This has frequently given charlatans, who make use of these methods in disguised form, an opportunity to give us a black eye. We are now, however, giving more attention than ever before to social, and mental, and hygienic causes of health and disease, and are placing the practice of medicine upon a more rational basis. We are giving more attention to the prevention of disease and to methods of maintaining the health of the individual.

Suggestion is used both upon the conscious and subconscious mind, and whatever we do in the way of teaching our patients how to keep well by conforming to the conditions under which health can be maintained—re-educating them—comes within the broad domain of suggestive therapeutics. It is the purpose of suggestive therapeutics to help our patients to help themselves by better control and by direction of their conscious and subconscious psychic activities.

It is important to remember that the subconscious mind of every individual is amenable to the influence, control, or suggestion of his own conscious mind. His own thoughts, his beliefs, his predominating mental characteristics, as the result of education and environment, are the suggestions by which he is continually influencing his subconscious mind.

So much so is this true that we judge character by the expression of the faces of people that we see every day. The strong face and the weak face, the honest face and the villainous face, the face which indicates a high order of individuality and self-reliance or a low element of selfishness or servitude, all are in evidence. The fact is, the body is a perfectly negative element, existing according to the laws of heredity, environment, and education.

Thought is a great factor of change and growth, and thought means that brain cells are functioning in response to internal and external stimuli. The will power is a positive part which can guide and regulate our thinking, provided it has once been evolved sufficiently to set up a new line of mental reaction, through memory and experience. We are all, then, using our thought forces or self-suggestions as either creative or destructive agencies, in accordance with this natural psychophysiological law.

In order to think for one's self, however, the individual must be equipped. He must have a well-trained and well-developed mind and nervous system, which can come only by conforming to the laws of health and by familiarity with the facts that are demonstrated by science, and not through the influence of the modern metaphysical theories of the present time, which act as temporary narcotics, lulling the intellectual faculties into passivity. Yet, to cultivate habits of cheerfulness, optimism, and self-reliance conduces to health and strength of the physical organism on account of the influences of such mental states upon the involuntary physiological processes. Such states of consciousness as give rise to pessimism, despondency, jealousy, anger, worry, envy, and discontent exert a wrecking, weakening, ruinous effect upon all the involuntary functions. The system becomes loaded with metabolic toxins, which in turn render the individual more miserable and morbidly self-conscious.

People frequently say they are miserable on account of their physical condition, and they are, but they are often reaping in full measure the conclusion of their own mental action. The condition of the body is largely the result of what an individual has thought and believed, and thought and belief are determined by his education and other experiences in life, which have left their impress upon the neuron elements. The influence of education upon the expression of the face and physique has been observed by us all, and furnishes a fitting illustration of the influence of the mind over the body.

## CHAPTER VII.

### FURTHER CONSIDERATION OF THE PRINCIPLES, PROBLEMS, AND FIELD OF PSYCHOTHERAPY.

The tendency of the logical mind of today is toward the acceptance of a philosophy that seeks for unity of body, mind, and spirit. These are qualities of the individual, but, scientifically speaking, they are one and the same thing. Thus, monistic philosophy, or monism, recognizes that mind, spirit, and matter, soul and body, God and the world, are abstractions and not things in themselves, but are incomprehensibly bound together in their inseparable oneness. Call this philosophy "monism" or "monotheism," to suit yourself, but you can not get away from the stupendous fact, even though our half-trained understandings and narrow experiences are unprepared to comprehend it, that the whole universe is animated by a single principle of life and mode of energy, and that such expressions as body, mind, and spirit are qualities of this one principle, thing, or substance. But since it is impossible to think of any quality or thing except by comparison with something else, each one of these qualities should be held in equal appreciation.

Knowledge is but an apprehension of facts based on a representation or description of those facts in terms that can be comprehended by human intelligence.

So, then, in our analysis of the qualities of personality we can with consistency, in the light of these premises, say that each individual becomes self-conscious of his existence upon one of three planes respectively—physical, mental or intellectual, and moral or spiritual, all qualities of the same individual.

For instance, the atom of hydrogen gas, considered for so long a time to be the smallest subdivision of material substance, is now known to be itself composed of from twelve hundred to three thousand "ions," or charges of electricity, or elemental units of



force; and it is now recognized that there is in the universe but this one element. Every other element or combination of elements is composed of this one elementary substance coming together in different degrees of density, so that the space a thousand feet above our heads is composed of precisely the same elementary substance as is the earth beneath our feet.

Furthermore, the cosmos, with its countless planetary systems and planets, some of which are millions of times larger than this little earth upon which we live, together with the spaces between them, is all composed of this one elementary substance—call it physical, mental, or spiritual, as you please.

The only logical conclusion, then, is that the entire cosmos is an organism—pulsating, throbbing, vibrating, living—in which we live, and move, and have our existence.

And as is the cosmos, so is man. He is an organism—pulsating, vibrating, living. And as is man, so is each individual cell in his body, with inherent potentialities and powers that are constantly being manifested, functioning in its own way, as it plays its part in the game of life according to heredity and environment.

Yet life is a fact, and all forms of life, from the first *unicellular moneron* down through the millions and millions of years in which the evolutionary development of man has passed, are all sharers of that one ever-present life, with numberless varieties of expression, infinite and limitless.

In the evolutionary development of the human race and of the human intellect and character, each individual seems to become self-conscious of life upon one or the other of these three respective planes before mentioned—physical, intellectual, and moral or spiritual—each of which is the result of training, education, and environment, so far as their manifestations in his life are concerned.

A great many people are conscious of life only upon the physical plane. They have scarcely any higher conception of existence and its meaning than what appeals to the appetites—eating, drinking, and sensual indulgences. Like two-legged animals, they live, in many instances, upon a plane even lower than the brute, as is indicated by expression of face, physique, character of speech, habits, and conduct.



Others there are who in self-consciousness reach the next higher plane and seem to go no farther. There are people that we all know, concerning whom, though they may have an intellectuality so cold and pulseless that it glitters as the stars, and be strong enough mentally to make wonderful achievements in the fields of politics and commerce, it is nevertheless easy to discover that there is an element lacking in their personality. It is lacking in expression of face, in hand shake, in tone and quality of voice and speech, and especially in their conduct and demeanor with their fellow-man. In the presence of such an individual one feels more as if one were face to face with a stone or an iceberg, rather than in the presence of a human being.

As to what conscious existence upon the higher plane of selfhood indicated implies, it is hard to define, yet it consists in the evolving and developing of those higher elements of human character regarded as the ethical, and esthetic, and moral sense. We see it manifested in its influence upon human life in magnanimity, generosity, altruism, kindness, bravery, and all other distinctly human faculties. It is the higher functioning of the true ego; the real man—call it body, mind, spirit, life, or soul. It is manifested in man or woman by the exhibition of those inner qualities of moral and spiritual dignity, in the determination to do only that which is conceived to be good and right; not in the outer esteem of their fellows or in the worthless praise of a conventional society, but in their own inner consciousness. "Unfortunately," says Ernst Hæckel, "we have to admit that in this respect we are still largely ruled by the foolish views of a lower civilization, if not of crude barbarians."

This animating life principle that functionates in human beings defies analysis, evades our comprehension, and transports our thoughts beyond what is finite and terrestrial. But it is in man because man is, and, if it were not, he would not be. Hæckel says, "Why trouble about this enigmatical 'thing in itself' when we have no means of investigating it?"

This unexplained, undefined, and incomprehensible element in man, which is the sum total of all of man's psychophysical potentialities, is the real ego. It is the power that manifests itself

on the physical, mental, or spiritual plane—in its voluntary human expression according to knowledge, education, and environment. It is the intelligent life entity which, when fully awakened and evolved in the consciousness of the individual, makes him strong, independent, capable, and free.

It is the privilege and duty of every individual to manifest the highest expression and meaning of life upon each of these planes—physical, mental, and moral; to develop harmoniously as an athlete in body, mind, and character.

When this highest element of selfhood is evolved, then do mind and body become man's obedient servants—then do we discover the meaning of Emerson's expression that "every man is a divinity in disguise, a God acting a fool."

Strange talk, this may appear, to be giving to medical men, but it is the most essential truth in connection with our subject.

In the application of suggestive therapeutics we must regard man as a thing of life, of force, of intelligence, of will, and of reason, that emanates from and is a part of the central source of all life, with millions and millions of cells in his organism that are ready to respond to stimuli in the form of human personality, therapeutically the personality of the physician.

In all events, in the light of this monistic philosophy that is accepted by every prominent man of science at the present time, let us as physicians recognize that this inherent potentiality, or quality, or element is latent in every human being, whether recognized by him or not, and let us make use of this animating life principle in therapeutics, using it as one of nature's forces by conforming to the law that governs it.

The intimate relation between neuron structure and mental activity is now fully appreciated by both physiologists and psychologists. We are taught that the morphological structure of nerve elements bears a most important and intimate relation to mental activity—that the mode of neuron structure is regarded as mirroring the mode of organization of the psychic life.

But it must also be remembered that every psychical phenomenon has its physical concomitant, which is but to say that every mental state has its influence upon the body. The changes which

appear in neuron structure are, then, the result of education and experience, which promote its growth and development. Faculty precedes function. Inherent in every human organism are latent faculties or potentialities which can be developed through the influence of environment and education—other names for suggestion.

Step by step it is dawning upon us that humanity is an organism, and that "the satisfaction, requirement, and functioning life activity are impossible without social co-operation, and it is only then that the individual becomes freed from the bonds of blood relationship." "In other words," say Sidis and Goodhart, "with the growth and development of social organization, organic bondage is replaced by functional relationship."

The lives of human beings are thus so interrelated that personality is but the outgrowth of experience. The life of each individual is constantly influencing the growth and development of the brain, and mind, and character of other individuals, by whom he is also influenced.

Morality, the functioning of the highest element or quality of selfhood, conforms to the law of evolution, and, like organic evolution, this psychic evolution is but the adaptation of individuals to conditions of existence. The law of psychic evolution, as of evolution in general, is from structure to function, from bondage to freedom of the individual elements.

In the light of the foregoing pages, then, you are a being—body, mind, or spirit—animated by the one principle of life from which you come, in common with all human beings and all forms of life. You have a mind and a body such as you have made it for yourself, modified, of course, by the laws of heredity and environment. You physically are the obedient servant, or should be, to the controlling force or life entity within. Your face and physique have been formed, shaped, and molded by your use or abuse of this inherent life force within you.

This inherent life force, question of all questions, what is that? Who are you? In the light of modern knowledge of the cosmic process of evolution, we are constrained to answer that you are a part of the universal source of all life, which you see manifested wherever you see anything, from the dead earth upon which you



walk to the eyes of those whom you love, to flowers, trees, clouds, moon, sun, and stars, even the stars so far away that a ray of light, going at the rate of one hundred and ninety-five thousand miles per second, beginning at the time when, it was formerly believed, the world was thrown out into space by special creation, could not have yet reached this planet—infinite and limitless. It is referred to by scientists as “force;” Herbert Spencer says, “the eternal energy behind and within all things;” the idealists or religionists say, “the God in whom we live, move, and have our being.”

Think of this power of which you are a part; how it converts bread and meat, fruit and vegetables into bone and muscle, brain and blood, and how you are endowed with, or have evolved, will and reason, and other faculties of mind and character, and then dare to exercise these inherent potentialities as a coworker with infinity. Divine molecules are we, with the privilege to think, reason, will, and do for ourselves.

It is utterly impossible to hypnotize any one without getting the consent and co-operation of the self-conscious ego—unless it be accomplished by playing upon his ignorant credulity, which is never justifiable. See how we get the consent and co-operation of this, the real man, when an individual consents to relax, close his eyes, with lips slightly apart, to secure thorough relaxation, as if to say, “All right, Doctor, mind and body submit I unto you; I step aside, the door is open.”

At this juncture and while your patient is in this condition, by your better educated and better equipped personality, you pour some of your own psychic life in the form of suggestion into his. This statement, in the light of the modern teaching of physiological psychologists, is scientifically accurate. According to Princee, you substitute healthy complexes for those organized systems of associated ideas which have become conserved as residue in the unconscious and which reproduce themselves as automatism over and over again; for, when once organized, they are conserved and become a part of our personality. The nervous system faithfully conserves and reproduces its experiences. The procedure, whether suggestion is employed with or without hypnotism, means



education, or, if you please, re-education. Even where hypnotism is employed, the consciousness induced remains a part of one's self as a psychophysiological complex, however absolutely the patient may have lost realization of the suggestions given in the sub-conscious state. The aim of psychotherapeutic treatment is the formation of healthy complexes of ideas which will not stimulate the undesired complexes, but by their automatic activity will contribute to the well-being of the individual and adapt him to his environment.

It is estimated that the normal individual has from eight hundred million to thirteen hundred million cells of gray matter in his brain, and that the average individual uses but about one-tenth of this entire number. By the influence of personality upon personality, then, we convert latent energy into moving energy, potential energy into dynamic energy, and thus stimulate and encourage the functions of every cell in the human body.

Every time you come into the presence of a patient it is your privilege and duty to get the consent and co-operation of the ego, that highest element of the self-conscious individual, and appeal to this higher psychic quality—the man himself—the organized, intelligent life entity, that has simply thrown this physical cloak around him, and encourage it to vitalize and energize all life processes upon the physical plane. We thus assist the patient in making use of the normal mechanism of mind and body, of the physiological machinery already provided, to bring about restitution of the diseased organism and restore the individual to health.

We, as physicians, have studied dead eyes that do not see, dead tongues that do not talk, dead ears that do not hear. We all know that the mind, soul, spirit, or intellect, name it as you choose, is the real man, which functionates in correlation with the neuron elements, and yet this ever-present entity has been an unconsidered element in our consideration of human beings.

Most sick people need education, knowledge, and guidance to enable them to make use of the physiological machinery provided by nature for the purpose of acquiring and maintaining health, happiness, and success in life.

The great majority of mankind is practically untouched by the

progress of present-day knowledge. The tremendous task of teaching men and women to think for themselves and learn the great lesson of self-reliance has scarcely begun. All but our most intelligent people are creatures of a school of thought, or belong to some intellectual herd. Never was there a time that so demanded fearless, independent, tolerant, logical thinking.

Reason is mankind's greatest, highest, and noblest faculty, and as such should be the supreme court of the mind; all other impulses that flutter, and dance, and play in the stream of human consciousness, either intellectual or emotional in character, should be subject to its rulings.

Will, the executor of reason and judgment, should be loyal enough to follow their dictates. It is upon this condition only that sanity is maintained. Will and reason, however, are, in keeping with the law of evolution, psychic qualities that are developed by education, knowledge, and experience.

Consciousness, the most fundamental faculty of the human soul, is a stream of endless psychic states, resulting from previous experiences, incessantly changing as the restless, whitecapped tides of ocean, that can exist only by virtue of its endless, unceasing motion; and this continuous change is what makes conscious life.

Conscious life itself, then, is a stream of varying psychical states, which quickly follow one another in perpetual motion, rolling, rising and sinking, ebbing and flowing, with never an instant of rest. The elementary psychic states which lie below consciousness constitute the subconscious realm. Here is a great ocean of memories, sensations, imaginations, emotions and impulses, desires and aspirations, hopes and ambitions, fears and disappointments, successes and failures, which are past impressions or memory pictures that linger in the human brain. These rise to the realm of consciousness, and are interpreted in thoughts and feelings from which there is no escaping, and these thoughts or feelings in turn constitute mental states which exert an influence upon all involuntary physiological processes.

The power of attention fixes the mind on such ideas and sensations or memory pictures as are most worth while to the individual, and by constant assertion and iteration, reasoning and

persuasion, suggesting and impressing, we substitute such impressions as will bring the individual under their influence, both consciously and subconsciously.

By suggestion we can drive back these subconscious impressions or memory pictures, and, if we but have personality and selfhood to dare to make an appeal to the highest element of character within those of our patients who need thus arousing, we have rendered the greatest service that one human being can possibly render a fellowman. Arouse the higher intellectual faculties, the higher brain centers, and the highest moral ideal into action, and you truly put life into your patient.

In every great battle that has been fought in both ancient and modern times, brave leadership by a strong appeal made through patriotism and pride has so aroused the psychic element in soldiers in battle that men have been frequently known to stand and fight through heat and cold, day and night, with hunger and thirst, for days and days at a time, and conquer by unwavering will and determination. They have thus exhibited a degree of resistive power in many notable instances that has been beyond human conception. In all instances in battle the soldiers on the victorious side easily recover from serious wounds and mutilations, while, on the other hand, those upon the side that is defeated die of mere trivial inflictions.

In all heroic achievements of men, reserve, subconscious power has been brought into action, stimulated or evoked by the conditions of the moment, that enables individuals to accomplish that which seemed absolutely impossible in proportion to their recognized capacity.

These are facts that every observing individual has frequently recognized and that are acknowledged by us all. If human beings have within them that psychic element which can be evoked under extraordinary conditions to so increase the normal resistive powers and capabilities of both mind and body, why should we as physicians not, in a sense, be generals or leaders in our association with our patients, and in our daily relations with them evoke latent energy and heighten their normal resistive powers to the ravages of any disease, acute or chronic, organic or psychoneurotic?



What are we, as the medical profession, doing as leaders for the people? As guardians of the public health, are we doing all within our power in the way of teaching people how to keep well, and healthy, and strong, without relying upon us to administer to their physical necessities, or upon priest or clergy to control their psychic activities?

In directing an individual how to control his or her psychic activities and steer them into channels of useful thought and conduct, the entire man, physical and psychical, body and mind—or soul and spirit, if you choose—must be taken into consideration. Body, mind, and spirit must be considered as qualities of the individual, one and inseparable; their interdependence must be recognized.

At this time, when those possessing abnormal powers of imagination, with unlimited emotion and little reasoning, are being led by every absurd theory and metaphysical dogma that is presented under the pretense of an especially commissioned divine guidance, we should be prepared to rise to the occasion and acquit ourselves as men in the highest sense. The great need of the world today is education, knowledge, and guidance—other names for honest, conscientious, truthful suggestion.

The problems of health are the problems of life, problems of education and economic considerations, which involve the questions of work, food, clothing, homes, and all other essentials that make for human happiness. Manhood is only in the making. We are yet evolving, growing, and developing. The process of evolution is as active today as it was a million years ago, and it points to the evolution of the mind as well as the body, of the God in man, and not the triumphant brute. All those who in any way by ideas, provision of means, or achievement contribute to the evolution of the human race are the world's true benefactors.

The self-conscious ego can and does functionate on the physical plane, making a tyrant or a beast of man; or on the mental or intellectual plane, making him capable of reasoning and thinking for himself; or on the ethical or moral plane, making him a reasonable, useful human being, dependent on education and environment. The optimism of scientific minds consists in the belief that



upon these three planes of life mankind must be strong, capable, and free, and that we shall not dwindle into physical weaklings, intellectual nonentities, or spiritual slaves or fanatics.

The fight made by the medical profession against parasitic germs in the fields of pathology, surgery, medicine, and hygiene has been crowded with glorious achievement, but a greater work is still before us. Our battle is only half begun.

Since the days of Vesalius, Harvey, and Jenner, down to the present time, every step of advance made by medical science has been boldly contested and fought by ignorance, fanaticism, and misdirected zeal. The warfare of science must go on forever. Nature has surrendered to science her most valued treasures. We have subdued steam and electricity, harnessed the waterfalls, tunneled the mountains, rendered the bosom of the ocean amenable to the great service of mankind, and demanded from the bowels of the earth her most sacred treasures.

Those who regard humanity as a finished product, now standing at the merey of an anthropomorphic deity, are in the truest sense retarding the evolution, growth, and development of the highest psychic qualities of manhood and womanhood.

Science has no fight to make against true religion; its struggle is with ignorance and intolerant dogmatism. She demands a religion that appeals to the intellect as well as to the emotions, to reason and not to ignorance—one that will develop the entire individual to the fullness of perfect manhood and womanhood. Life is a struggle. Every idea that seeks to be embodied demands a conflict. In order to live, we must dare to be—to declare our own individuality.

Physicians have done much for the protection of the human body, but what are they doing to prevent the parasitic infection of absurd beliefs, and dogmas, and theories that at the present time infect the human mind with their blighting, weakening influence upon the development of body, mind, and character?

Science and every-day experience agree that nature cares nothing for individuals. What the people of our time need is plain living, clear thinking, and right action to develop potentialities of both mind and body.

The psychical correlation of religious emotion and the sexual instincts is such that any sect that starts with extravagant sentiments of love to all men will fascinate and take hold of an easily impressible type of unscientific and unthinking people. Yet minds that have been stored with nothing more substantial than historical fiction, and agitated so long by unreasonable dogmas of a capricious deity from which they naturally shrink, are easily captured and held in subjection by any mind-soothing theory under the guise of religion that has a romantic or mystical flavor. A lack of contact with the world and an unfamiliarity with the facts of science have left these credulous people with no more powers of reflection than a child, and they naturally have, in consequence, abnormally developed imaginations and emotions, and are easily captured by absurd and illogical metaphysical vagaries.

I have talked with many men of scientific attainments, and in the ranks of both the clergy and the medical profession they deplore the fact that theologians of the present day have been so slow to accept and utilize the message of science, and that so many have lacked the moral stamina to shake off the worn-out and useless doctrines of an ignorant and superstitious age; yet among the clergy are many who teach and preach better than their creed. They have no fight to make against science, but look upon science as the handmaiden of true religion. The majority, however, has been held in the coils of creed and fettered by dogma, and thus coerced into a beaten path at the sacrifice of reason and judgment. The more enlightened clergymen realize this, and just in proportion as they are educated and scientific men are they boldly getting away from the absurd dogmas, and shaking off useless external formalities that have fettered the aspiring spirit, progress, and growth of humanity so long.

In their slowness to interpret life and its meaning in the light of present-day knowledge, no wonder that we see an article in one of our leading periodicals headed, "Is the Pulpit a Coward's Castle?" And yet there was never in the world's history a greater need for strong, fearless, unblemished, and unfettered men willing to devote their lives to the help of their fellowmen.

Do you ask what this discussion has to do with suggestive thera-

peutics? It has at the present day a most important bearing. The present status of this subject is so related to those influences of an educational nature that furnish food stuffs to the minds of the people, that I should feel that I had dodged the issue, the most important issue, did I not boldly face these problems, which I know are agitating the minds of scientific medical men everywhere, and give them the consideration that they so pre-eminently deserve.

Religious beliefs, and health, and disease stand in precisely the same relation as do mind and body. It is simply a question of those influences that dominate and control an individual's psychic life. It is a question of the factors that are obscuring and obstructing the path of social and intellectual progress in opposition to those influences that elevate thought and action among living men and women.

No intelligent physician would think of overlooking the question of dietetics in the treatment of a case of chronic indigestion, especially when unwholesome food was largely responsible for this physical malady. It is of equal importance, if not more important, to take into consideration those elements that are harmful or healthful in the growth, and development, and stability, and maintenance of mind and character. The physician who ignores the psychic element in the consideration of sickness and disease is as one-sided as the Christian scientists who refuse to recognize the needs of the body. The consideration of the maintenance of the health of an individual involves those factors that maintain and sustain health and strength of both mind and body.

How many thousands of people have died before men found out which were poisons and which were foods? To teach by killing, that others may learn to use their faculties, has been the method of the cosmic process in the evolution and development of the human being. Even today the greater part of sickness and disease is but nature's protest against human beings for violating her laws—physical, hygienic, dietetic, psychical, etc. In the consideration of those factors that contribute to human health and happiness, all these elements must be considered.

Every step taken by the scientific men of the medical profession to abolish cholera, smallpox, and yellow fever has been opposed



by mystics and sentimentalists. Although thousands of lives have been saved by improved sanitation, hygiene, dietetics, disinfection, and asepsis in the physical realm, there is a field of no less importance in the psychological realm that needs to be fumigated, disinfected, drained, and cleared of parasites that live and thrive upon the ignorance and superstition of weakness and innocence. Modern science is turning the great searchlight of truth into every dark corner where these poisonous microbes may be found lurking.

The universal acceptance of the doctrine of evolution by all the important nonsectarian universities in our country and by the more enlightened theological schools has sounded the death knell of the old formulated creeds and dogmas based upon the ideas of special creation that has fettered the aspiring spirit of humanity so long. To say that you believe in the doctrine of evolution is but to say that you believe in nature's way of doing things, and of all classes of people who ought to be ready to accept this important truth, and give the people the benefit of the light it sheds upon human life and conduct, the men of the learned professions should be the first.

Fear, an emotion which is the result of an analysis of consequences, has been instilled in the human mind by the teachers and preachers of anthropomorphic theism until the great masses of people who are not sufficiently educated to think for themselves have been unconsciously dominated, and development of body, mind, and character suppressed.

The revelations made by scientific investigators do not take God out of the world, but render us more intimately self-conscious of his all-pervading presence. Moreover, they only add new luster to the matchless character whose simple teaching of faith, hope, and love has for two thousand years stirred the noblest impulses of the human soul, and proved to be the greatest factor in the evolution of the ethical and moral element of the human race, in spite of the war, and bloodshed, and destruction of human lives that have been perpetrated by religious sects pretending to be his followers.

The great need of the world today is men to interpret life in the light of present-day knowledge, and to tell the people the truth



as the more enlightened individuals see it, and who will not falter and be cowardly on account of the ignorance and superstition of ages past and gone that are still exercising their demoralizing influence upon our present civilization. All the modern creeds and cults, "ists" and "isms" of the present day, are but an evidence of the recoil of the people from the dogmatism and intolerance of medicine and theology.

With the present conception and theory of the origin and destiny of man, the individual has made a wonderful discovery. He has learned that he is no longer a serf, but that he, too, has creative power, and he dares to give it manifest expression in his life and conduct. With this changed mental attitude toward the universe and its process of development, he has been made self-conscious of the God in his own soul, and life has a zest and meaning which is equivalent to having put him into a new world. It has altered his conception of himself and his relation to all forms of life, and he realizes as never before his intimate relation, and responsibility, and duty to his fellowman. He no longer considers himself a stranger and an exile in a foreign country, but here and now he is at home, securely abiding in the great, living, throbbing, pulsating heart of nature. Side by side with his fellowman is he permitted to work, and in his own way to contribute his best efforts to the furtherance of human happiness.

No class of human beings has done so much for its brethren as the members of the medical profession. In dens of poverty, fields of pestilence, or amid the heat of shot and shell in war, they are ever conspicuous for their presence. Day and night, through heat and cold, sunshine or rain, they are found anywhere, from the lowest brothels to gilded palaces, in laboratories and hospitals, amid contagious diseases or with the insane, laboring to promote the comfort, health, and happiness of their fellows.

Ignorant mankind has been so long preached the worm of the dust theory, and been taught to call himself weak, humble, powerless, and worthless, until many have become so on account of their own thinking. Let them once get a glimpse of their divine origin, in the light of modern evolutionary knowledge, and dare to exercise their faculties and inherent capabilities of body and mind

on lines of useful endeavor, and seek health by conforming to the conditions of health, and dare to claim and exercise the ability to think, will, reason, and do for themselves, and many there are in this world who, like Pygmalion's statue Galatea, will be transformed into beings of life.

We are beginning to look at ourselves with new eyes. The old religions, which condemn the body as vile and sinful, and advocate a locality of everlasting punishment, are passing away. We now realize that the mind helps the body as much as the body helps the mind; that mind, body, and spirit are qualities of the one individual, and that within every human being lies the power, through intelligent living, acting, and thinking, to develop both mind and body into a high degree of perfection.

The human will, guided by reason, is the positive part of our mental equipment and the body is the negative, responsive to its rulings and dictates. Intelligent, logical thinking as the result of education and experience, effort and determination, are the great factors of growth and the most powerful forces in the universe. It is force itself in its voluntary human expression. By these all other forces of nature are controlled and utilized for the happiness of man.

We have nothing to fear from the modern unlicensed systems of healing which have arisen out of the development of a better appreciation of the psychic qualities of man within the past twenty years. The fittest will survive. As among Ruskin's lilies, the sunflowers and weeds shoot up their heads in gorgeous array, and they are only giving expression to a single phase of truth. The universe is big enough to furnish a stage of action for us all; so let them do their little stunts in peace.

The coming physician, however, must of necessity be a broad-gauged and well-educated man. His therapeutic armamentarium and mental equipment will be such as to enable him to avail himself of all methods of treatment—physical, mental, social, moral, ethical—that make for the health and happiness of his patient.

A large percentage of the people who are sick, ailing, or complaining do not need medicine or surgery. What many of them really need, though they may not be cognizant of their need, is

direction and advice, knowledge and guidance, all suggestive measures that enable them to conform to the conditions by which the wonderful recuperative powers inherent in the biological elements of the organism can have a chance to re-establish health. Human beings are so constituted that they can not, in this infantile stage of their development, stand alone. The great organism of humanity must have men strong, capable, self-reliant, and well-educated to direct and influence the functions of the great mass of the people, just as the higher centers of the brain influence all the lower bodily functions.

The hunger of the body for bread and fruit, meat and vegetables, is no more real than the hunger of the human intellect for facts and principles by which life and conduct may be guided.

The charlatanism of the past twenty years has an important message for the medical profession, as it has also for theologians. In hundreds and thousands of instances have they demonstrated to us that there are mental and physical causes of diseases, on the one hand, and that diseases of the physical organism, not too far advanced, can be benefited, ameliorated, and oftentimes cured by correcting these perverted mental conditions, on the other.

Science has pointed out and discovered the mental toxemia that has been disseminated and scattered broadcast unconsciously and unintentionally by the halting, time-worn, moth-eaten, and useless systems of education and ecclesiasticism, and there are thousands and thousands of individuals who need help in the way of aid to enable them to do rational, intelligent thinking and living.

What is disease? I believe that even Virchow would agree that it is a condition wherein the cells of the part affected do not properly perform their functions. At first it begins as a mere so-called functional disturbance, which, though the aid of the microscope be required to detect it, always implies a physical change; at least there is a lessened degree of resistive power in the cells of the organism. In this weakened condition the individual cells are more vulnerable and are unqualified to put up a strong fight against their enemies. Now an exciting cause of disease comes along in the form of a pathogenic germ or other etiological factor. In the case of the bacteriological infection a fight ensues.



Brave and altruistic little men as they are, the phagocytes throw their bodies into the combat to destroy the pathogenic enemy by intracellular digestion, or if, forsooth, they fail in this, they pile up their bodies by the thousands and millions, to build, as it were, an impenetrable breastwork for the protection of the remaining cells of the organism, each one anxious and willing to sacrifice his own life that his fellows may be protected. Thus an organic or structural change takes place, and this may then be beyond the pale of psychological methods of treatment.

But, in conjunction with surgical, medicinal, and other therapeutic measures, we can, by psychological methods, aid in the re-establishment of every other bodily function which may have been disturbed on account of this local, organic, or pathological condition; and so we not only help the individual in a general way, but we indirectly aid in the healing processes of surgical procedures, and supplement medicinal and other therapeutic devices. We quiet nervousness, relieve pain, and promote sleep. The result is better appetite, increased digestion and assimilation, improved nutrition, and a consequent conservation of energy throughout the entire physical organism.

So, then, it must appear to the logical mind that there is no class of cases, acute or chronic, surgical or otherwise, in which the psychological factor does not play an important part in conjunction with all other methods of therapeutics.



## CHAPTER VIII.

### THE PSYCHOTHERAPEUTIC VALUE OF SUGGESTION.

Observation has convinced me that comparatively few people at the present time fully realize the potency of the imagination—of an idea pure and simple—as a factor in the cause and cure of disease. Suggestion, applied either with or without hypnotism, is but the employment of man's imagining power, his perceptive faculties, as a means of stimulating the normal physiological mechanisms of the human organization for therapeutic purposes. All suggestions are composed of ideas which influence the actions, or motions, and beliefs of human beings endowed with normal mental faculties and bodily functions. Observation and experiment has clearly demonstrated that the representation of an action or movement is an action or movement begun, an action or movement in the nascent state. These representations, or suggestions, or mental images influence one's motor and voluntary actions and movements, and the involuntary physiological actions and movements of the human organization as well.

Every representation or perception is a suggestion which presupposes actions and movements to some extent, and these representations or perceptions are the remnants of some past perception, the physiological residue of some past mental concept that has been retained by the neuron elements. These physiological processes or complexes, conserved as the result of some previous experience, can be called into functional activity by mere mental representations or suggestions, and in this way employed for therapeutic purposes. I hold before you a lemon cut in half. I say to you I am going to suck the juice of this lemon in your presence, and by giving attention to the procedure your salivary glands will begin to functionate. You readily see the effect of the suggestion as a physiological stimulant.

I have before me a number of physicians. A man is brought

into our presence who was a stranger to us all. I hold before him a vial of an inert liquid, and tell him that it is my desire to demonstrate its effect upon him before the physicians present. By representation, mental image, or suggestion an effect is produced that is questioned by none present.

When a lad I took some clay pills to Sarah, the cook, who was sick in a hut in the rear of the premises. They had been made of soft clay and rolled in wheat flower, and resembled a pill composed of calomel, aloes, and rhubarb, which was employed by my father as a domestic remedy. Sarah supposed that the pills had been sent by him, as was his custom, and swallowed them without question, and on the next morning reported for duty, feeling much better because her bowel movements had been so satisfactory as the result of the inert clay.

We understand that both glandular action and visceral functions, having once been called into increased activity by the taste of a lemon, or the physiological action of a purgative pill, have been accompanied by definite brain changes as the result of the psychophysiological action that these experiences had left upon the neuron elements, and these conserved physiological complexes are stimulated by the psychic influence of the mention of a lemon, or the presence of an inert clay pill which resembled the medicine producing the original experience, and the same physiological action is reproduced, in conformance to the laws governing the normal functions of the nervous system. This is a simple demonstration of the well-accepted fact of physiological psychology, so often repeated, that the nervous system faithfully conserves and reproduces its experiences.

The principle above illustrated we see applied in a most crude and unscientific manner by all forms of present-day quackery. The nervous system responds to the physiological stimulus of spoken words; or to the various methods of treatment which make employment of tactile sensations—massage—as a means of reinforcing the sense impressions; or to oral suggestion, used consciously or unconsciously, by the treatment administered.

In a town of five thousand visited by the writer there was a physician engaged in the practice of medicine who was an unquali-

fied ignoramus, but the results obtained through the employment of psychotherapeutic principles, used in disguise, enabled him to do more work and to practice with better success than the several well-educated physicians who were his competitors.

He enjoyed the reputation of knowing exactly what his medicine would do, owing to his methods of impressing his suggestions upon the consciousness of his patients. One of his methods was to give a dose of medicine after each meal and then instruct his patient to lie down for twenty minutes, "to let his stomach take up"—giving him the positive assurance that he would digest that meal perfectly, and that by the time the bottle of medicine was taken he could eat what he pleased and never know that he possessed a stomach.

Another one of his methods was to give seven drops of medicine every seven minutes for seven doses, beginning to give the first dose at seven minutes past seven o'clock, as a sure remedy for insomnia. "When you take the seventh dose, turn out the lights and shut your eyes, and you will never know when eight o'clock comes, and you will sleep soundly all night."

He had pretended specifics for any and every condition, and in all cases charged a stiff price, paid in advance. Too ignorant to be aware of his limitations, this untrained egotist had unconsciously stumbled upon a method of dealing with his patients that evoked the psychologic factor, while he, and his patients as well, were deluded into believing that his medicines actually accomplished the therapeutic results represented. He did obtain the results that he represented as the result of his suggestions, in perfect conformity to psychophysiological law, by employing the normal mechanisms of the physiological machinery to accomplish the results, supposed to be due to his medicines. The other physicians of this town were puzzled to know what remedies he used that were proving so trustworthy.

In one of our cosmopolitan cities an ignorant Italian was treating in his office on an average sixty patients per day by laying his hands on them, and he had kept up this practice for three years at the time that he came to my notice. He stated that upon one occasion he went to see a "divine healer," who at once as-



serted, "You have too much power for me to treat you; you are a healer yourself." When he returned home he related his experience to his mother, who was suffering with a severe headache, and for three years had what her physician had diagnosed as diabetes. Her headache was dispersed as soon as he put his hands upon her, and in a short period all her diabetic symptoms had been relieved. On the strength of this result his neighbors began to call to see him for treatment, and when asked what he could do for them respectively he invariably answered, "I can only tell what I have done for others," and, with his hands placed on them, he began to relate his experiences with the wonderful cures he had made.

In one corner of his office was a pile of mechanical appliances that had been discarded by his patients as the result of his treatment. He believed that his ability to benefit people by placing his hands upon them was "a gift from God," and he could talk of nothing else, being a miserable psychoneurotic himself. His manifestations of irritability and weakness he regarded as being due to giving so much of his own strength to his patients. A well-known physician of that city, who had been impressed by the remarkable results of his work, both palliative and curative, insisted that I should interview him as a psychotherapeutic curiosity, and it was through his interest in his work that I obtained the facts that are here related.

In another place visited by the writer the monthly receipts of an old lady who employed "absent treatment" as a therapeutic means amounted to between eight and ten thousand dollars. She conversed intelligently about the value of suggestion as a therapeutic agent, and admitted frankly that her results were obtained by the combined employment of suggestion and deception. She had numerous letters from apparently intelligent people declaring their gratitude for the relief that they had received through her treatment, and she was undoubtedly bringing relief to hundreds and thousands of psychoneurotics when the United States government interfered with her game.

If people were credulous enough to pay her the price in advance, they were sufficiently amenable to her suggestions through letter



to be benefited by her. Here was one method of employing the normal potentialities of the physiological machinery of the human organization as a therapeutic resource.

In another city visited by the writer a physician was employing a small electric light to look down his patient's esophagus to diagnose stomach diseases. He ostensibly described all sorts of morbid conditions, frightened his patients into paying a good fee in advance, and then proceeded to produce a remedy that was supposed to give infallible results. A former classmate called his attention to the absurdity of his methods, and asked if he did not know that such procedures could appeal only to unintelligent people. He, in turn, asked what percentage of that city's population was intelligent people.

"About five percent," was the reply.

"Then you go on and practice for that five percent," said he, "I shall continue to work for the remaining ninety-five percent."

This physician's answer, "I shall continue to work for the remaining ninety-five percent," indicates the proportion of the human race that is highly suggestible. In fact, all people are influenced by some method of suggestion. Some are amenable to reason, and others respond through credulity.

Such procedures are not limited alone to those supposed to be flagrant charlatans. If the employment of suggestion in disguise is an indication of quackery, it causes one to seriously consider the question, Where is an honest man to be found?

Consciously or unconsciously, all physicians make employment of suggestion in conjunction with the special therapeutic, surgical, and mechanical devices employed in the treatment of disease, and very frequently the benefit that resulted from some special method of treatment or surgical operation was due to the psychotherapeutic effect of the procedure as a psychophysiological stimulant, just as were the results obtained by the physician pretending to use the electric light as a diagnostic means.

Physicians in general have had but little or no training in psychotherapeutic principles, and consequently they are unprepared to appreciate the importance of such measures as an adjunct

to the resources of the general practitioner. They do not mean to overestimate the importance of surgery, medicine, electricity, and other therapeutic devices. They are putting into application what they have been taught, for upon this branch of therapeutics they have had no training.

Here is a surgeon doing several operations upon a neurotic woman, consisting of a ventral fixation, an appendectomy, an ovariectomy, a curettage, and a perineorrhaphy. She was sufficiently amenable to suggestion to submit to his procedures just as were the patients of the physician who employed the innocent electric light.

Because psychic treatment is abused by the quack, the charlatan, and even by some physicians, many pseudo-conservative physicians are disposed to turn a cold shoulder to it, as if the neglect of a potent and legitimate therapeutic resource was more disgraceful and distasteful than its abuse. The announcement that Temple University, of Philadelphia, has completed arrangements for the establishment of a department for teaching methods of healing without drugs is significant. This department of "nonpharmaceutical therapeutics," which will include radiotherapy, electrotherapy, massage, suggestion, baths, etc., is but the employment of suggestive measures in disguise, which are already employed by physicians and surgeons in general, under the pretense of something tangible. This form of suggestion to the student of psychotherapy is everywhere in evidence in the practice of medicine and surgery, though often used unconsciously by those applying it.

That medicine, surgery, hydrotherapy, radiotherapy, massage, dietetics, gymnastics, exercise, etc., have a definite field of their own, in well-selected cases, none but a tyro would dispute, but that the results that accrue by their employment are more frequently due to the psychic influence of these measures than to their own therapeutic potency is beyond question. It is time we should face this question squarely, and appropriate all measures that are of therapeutic value, whether employed singly or combined.

When it is considered that two million Christian scientists follow their leader on account of the psychotherapeutic value of her dogma of negation and affirmation, and that this form of disguised

suggestion has been responsible for thousands of cures of real diseases, the facts are indisputable by a fair-minded observer.

That osteopaths, Weltmerites, Emanuelists, and others, who most crudely and unscientifically employ psychotherapeutic measures, obtain results by the employment of their special methods of treatment is conceded by thousands of physicians in all parts of the United States. Moreover, they bear testimony to the fact that the results have frequently been obtained in a class of cases which were not amenable to treatment by the methods generally employed by physicians. Why refuse, under the right name, the employment of the tools used by all forms of quackery, and by honest physicians and surgeons who use the same methods, in some degree, in disguise? Why continue the abuse of medicine and surgery in so many instances when intelligent people are demanding honest, rational treatment? Many methods of treatment are employed by physicians at the present time which are tolerated by the laity solely on account of their ignorance of more rational and effective measures. Is it right to impose upon innocence and ignorance simply because our medical schools have not equipped physicians in general to make employment of psychotherapeutic principles?

When we fail to employ rational psychic measures as an adjunct to all other forms of treatment, can we blame the people for seeking aid from sources where such treatment is employed, however injudiciously and unscientifically? That all but a few of the teachers of medicine occupying professorships in our medical colleges are mere babes in the art of making employment of psychotherapeutic methods, I know from actual experience in my association with those constituting the faculties of not less than thirty-five medical schools and universities. In my association with such men in the capacity of teacher of methods of employing suggestion, with and without hypnotism, they were eager to learn and were thoroughly convinced of the efficacy and practicability of such measures, but were often free to say that it was much easier to employ medicine and surgery, and they preferred to continue the old regimen.

Most certainly it is easier to remove the appendix of a neurasthenic, and collect a good fee for this simple operation, and leave



all psychotherapeutic treatment to the unconseious employment of such measures by the environing factors of his treatment during recuperation for two or more weeks in a hospital. People are driven by fear into the submission to all kinds of irrational measures that promise health in the place of disease. Surgery for the relief of gross pathological changes is indispensable, but most of the surgery done at the present time is for some minor structural change, attributed to some special organ, when the cells of the entire organism share in the degeneracy, the remedy for which is the general physical and mental reconstruction which follows a course of sane treatment by suggestion, dietetics, exercise, and gymnastics.

But suggestion is applicable also as an adjunct in the treatment of the acute, febrile, and infectious diseases found in the routine work of the general practitioner, as well as in functional nervous diseases. ✓

Gowers tells us that our therapeuties were much more successful, in certain nervous diseases, before so much of its pathology was definitely understood. It is not enough to be able to tell a patient that a certain pathological process is present in the liver, kidney, stomach, lungs, nervous system, or other bodily organ. We should be prepared to teach him to so conform to the physiological requirements of health that such processes will be arrested, their function restored, and the health of the individual secured and maintained.

Here is a man with all the clinical symptoms of gastric ulcer. His physician, in accordance with the advice of our best medical authorities, is satisfied to prescribe bismuth subnitrate or magnesium carbonate, to be taken an hour before meals, when he should have explained to him the necessity of a complete rest to his stomach in the incipiency of his trouble, being given such rest for from five to ten days by a complete fast, and advised the necessity of keeping his stomach cleansed by drinking frequent draughts of hot water, and water at a normal bodily temperature every hour, with an enema every night, to give his nervous system an opportunity to be qualified to perform the function of digesting his food; and he should afterward have outlined a rational dietetic regimen, to conform to the requirements of his individual case.



Here is another physician who strives to maintain the nitrogenous and carbon equilibrium of certain patients by an examination of the stools, as if the calculation of the nitrogen and carbon in a food signified its value to the human body unless it could at the same time be demonstrated that it is assimilable. By psychotherapeutic measures we enable the patient to digest and assimilate a quantity of normal food products in such quantities as to promote the healthy nutrition of the body—quantities far beyond the ability of the patient without the employment of such measures.

The value of this therapeutic resource in the maintenance of a heightened degree of resistive power of the organism, and of assisting nature in combating morbid processes, is beyond question, as is demonstrated in the every-day routine of those who make employment of psychotherapeutic principles.

Contemporary psychologists have firmly established the fact that suggestion used to unduly exaggerate the gravity of the symptoms of a given case proves to be a powerful psychophysiological depressant, that the representation of a movement arrested is the beginning of the stoppage of that movement, and that it may even end in the complete stoppage of that function. "Paralysis by ideas" is not infrequent in the every-day practice of the physician whose gloomy prognosis is insinuated upon the consciousness of his patient and those in attendance upon him. This condition was referred to by Charcot under the name of "psychic paralysis." The conviction on the part of the patient that he can not move a limb renders him powerless for any movement, and he recovers his motor power only when the morbid representation has disappeared.

Upon one occasion I suggested to a young man that his knee was stiff, and he could not bend it until I gave him permission. I handed him one dollar, and told him that if he could bend his knee he could keep the money. I left him, and the next day he came to me and handed me the money, saying that he was a messenger boy and could not ride his wheel with a stiff limb. As he handed me the money I asserted that he could now use his limb better than ever before in his life, and he went away happy.

This influence of suggestion is not limited to the voluntary and

motor functions, but to the involuntary physiological processes as well. All sick people are more or less the victims of their fears. The very conviction of being sick and incompetent, which impels them to seek a physician, is a vivid representation or autosuggestion, which inhibits functional activity.

Very frequently a physician describes the pathological process, makes a vivid representation of the diseased condition, and leaves his patient in a more complete state of psychic paralysis than before coming into his presence. What appears as the result of these representations or suggestions is perhaps entirely new. They may be without precedent in the life of the individual, but the phenomena are present nevertheless.

It matters not what be the diseased process, make your patient feel that you understand the nature of his disease; that you are master of the situation; leave nothing undone to strongly implant the conviction of recovery, and that it will begin from the very moment that he begins to make employment of the measures prescribed for his relief. To this end all possible available therapeutic expedients are serviceable, not only for the direct influence which their own potency may exert upon the diseased process, but as a direct psychophysiological stimulant as well.

The syphilologist, doing the largest specialty practice of any physician in the United States, is a strong advocate of the employment of suggestion as a psychophysiological stimulant in conjunction with the administration of mercury. Suggestion employed in this disease as an adjuvant to the specific medication heightens the resistive power of every cell in the human organization and wonderfully augments the patient's recovery.

In the treatment of typhoid and other fevers I have boldly asserted to a patient that a glass of buttermilk taken every three hours would enable him to make a sure and rapid recovery, and in such cases I never let the patient get away from this conviction, while at the same time making use of such other therapeutic expedients as deemed advisable.

Psychotherapy is applied by the employment of suggestion, both with and without hypnotism, and it finds its application to all forms of medical practice as an adjunct to the recognized thera-

peutic agencies, whether the condition be acute or chronic, gynecologic or otherwise.

Unquestionably the general practice of medicine is the field wherein its employment is attended with the most gratifying results. Without an intelligent conception of psychotherapy, so many of the cases of the general practitioner that are within his legitimate domain are likely to fall into the hands of the specialists, who are so rapidly crowding him out of work. His work is preventive as well as curative, and many of the more serious pathological lesions begin as functional disturbances, the neglect of which results in gross pathologic changes. It is in functional disorders that psychotherapy is pre-eminently applicable, and, if taken in their incipiency, as when discovered by the general practitioner, they could be easily relieved from the consequences which must be the inevitable result if neglected.

But psychotherapy finds a most important field of application in the treatment of the acute diseases as well. The writer attended a meeting of a medical society where the employment of morphin hypodermatically was freely advocated for the relief of the pain that accompanies acute pneumonia. It was no surprise to me that the physician advocating its employment stated that fifty percent of his cases of pneumonia terminated fatally.

Another physician present referred to the hypodermatic employment of morphin as "a sheet-anchor for the relief of pain that accompanies acute lobar pneumonia," and he also stated that at least twenty-five percent of his pneumonia cases terminated fatally.

My own convictions in regard to the dangerous consequences of the employment of morphin in the treatment of pneumonia were such that I felt impelled to preface my remarks in opposition to the treatment advised by the statement that in ten years of general practice I had treated but one single case of pneumonia that terminated fatally in a person above two years of age, and that was in the case of an elderly person, complicated with pleuritis attended with an enormous effusion. The employment of morphin in the treatment of pneumonia, I said, I regarded as criminal, as helping the disease to kill the patient, nor did I hesitate to state that patients who recovered under such treatment



did so in spite of the disease and the treatment. Quinin I used in moderate quantities, 20 to 40 grains per day, but the pain and other nervous manifestations I controlled by the alternate application of hot and cold poultices, or hot poultices only, together with the free and intelligent employment of suggestion. Of course other remedial agencies were also employed, if indicated, but I am now speaking only of general treatment.

There is no better method of gaining the confidence of some patients than by giving a drug that will produce specific results, and given with the assurance that a specified result can be expected. Here we get not only the physiological action of the drug employed, but also find the drug producing a result that can be specified a most powerful means of suggestion.

There are in the experience of every general practitioner, in certain individual cases, crises where the psychic factor has decided the recovery or nonrecovery of his patient. The author has had in his own experience several incidents where he has been called into consultation to see individuals who were seriously ill, where the entire family had confidence in his judgment, which also made the patient more amenable to his suggestions, and where the attending physician had practically read the patient's death warrant by giving an unfavorable prognosis in no uncertain terms; and, after making an examination, he has begun psychic treatment by the positive statement to the patient, "You are going to get well all right."

In one such case that happened to be turned over to me after a brief absence, where the physician in temporary charge had given a positive, unfavorable prognosis, I assured the patient in the presence of the physician at my first visit that he was going to get well, that the treatment that he was on was precisely the right one, that a decided change for the better would take place that very night. The physician, a very dear friend of mine, followed me out of the room, and in a subdued tone, addressing me by name, said, "I hate to see you fall so hard. There is no more possibility of that patient getting well than there is of your taking wings and flying."

The case in question was that of an old man seventy-eight years



of age, who had been sick for ten days with grippe, and who now had an acute lobar pneumonia. The prognosis given by the physician in this case was just such as ninety-nine physicians out of a hundred, who did not fully recognize the value of the psychic factor in therapeutics, would have given in such a case.

"Why do you say that he will not get well?" I asked.

"It is my opinion, based upon the pathological conditions, together with his age and continued illness," was his reply.

"But my opinion is that he will get well," said I.

"Yes, but you are not doing right to make him believe that he is going to get well when he is so sick," said he most kindly.

"But, Doctor, that is just what is going to make him get well; because I can make him believe it will strengthen the bridge that is to tide him over to recovery."

After that I assumed control of the situation, and allowed no one to enter that room who did not believe that the patient was going to recover on account of confidence sufficient in me to rely upon my judgment. Even the physician agreed to co-operate with my plan out of respect for my wishes in that particular case.

When he returned the next day he said to me in the consulting room, with his face lighted with a smile, "He is really better; your presence has greatly benefited him." It was eleven days before that lung cleared up; his temperature went down, and heart beats became strong and natural for his condition, but he recovered.

The point that I wished to bring out has been illustrated in this case. The physician who does not fully appreciate the psychological factor in therapeutics is far more likely to give an unfavorable prognosis, and in many instances he might as well knock his patient on the head with a sledge hammer as use psychic influences, unconsciously though it be, to retard rather than promote recovery.

It is frequently the case that the physician comes into the presence of a serious pathological condition so depressed himself by his knowledge of pathology that he forgets to put confidence in the recuperative powers of his patient, which can be encouraged and stimulated to increase all physiological processes. This unconscious suggestive influence may so plant fear in the patient, accumulating with double force on account of the depressing

environing psychologic influence which follows as a logical sequence, that it can be stated as a scientific truth that the prognosis frequently kills the patient.

People die frequently under such conditions of purely nervous shock. Shock may be defined as being a complete suspension of some and partial suspension of others of the functions of the nervous system.

Fear alone, an emotion which is the result of the analysis of consequences, exereises an inhibitory influence over all the nervous functions, both voluntary and involuntary. Every idea that originates in the conseious mind as the result of self-analysis of subjective sensations, symptoms, and conditions reproduces itself in the body. ✓

Physiologists have always endowed the nerve and brain centers with a peculiar energy of their own, indefinitely expressed under such terms as neurie energy, nerve force, vis medicatrix naturæ, etc. At any rate, these higher centers stand in a similar relation to the body as a dynamo stands to a great building full of intricate and complex machinery. When properly manipulated, the influx of energy goes to every organ, cell, and function of the body, giving stored up energy to the special functions as occasion requires.

The mental attitude of the patient to his own condition is the determining factor in the utilization of stored up reserve psychic power. The very belief on the part of the patient in the possible serious outcome of his illness—even when he is, as far as it is possible for a human being to be, apparently devoid of fear—disturbs and depresses him, and weakens all power of resistance.

An illustration of the influence of the conseious mind upon voluntary functions is well demonstrated by concentrating the mind upon the arm held at right angles to the body and constantly iterating the suggestion that "the arm is getting stronger and stronger."

It is usually supposed that a man can not hold up his arm for more than five or ten minutes at a time. I once took a class of ten young ladies between twenty-two and thirty years of age, and by suggestion each one was enabled to hold her arm at right angles to her body for one hour. During this experiment I held my own

arm at right angles, and, standing in front of a circle that had been formed, I requested that each one of the young ladies look at the bridge of my nose glasses, and positively assured them that as long as their eyes did not lose sight of this object their arms would remain strong.

"Mine is tired, and I can not hold out much longer," said one after about fifteen minutes.

"Then let me touch the point of your elbow, and it will be strong again," I quickly replied. Then going from one to the other who requested it, I kept up that sort of thing until the hour was up.

Each one of the young ladies thought that I had given them the strength to hold their arms out so long. In a sense I had done so, by suggestions to their subconscious selves, though they were wide awake and in no sense hypnotized, as the term is ordinarily employed; yet in reality there was as much hypnotism exerted as if they had been in a state of active somnambulism.

I have frequently taken a group of children, who have always been favorite associates of mine, and begun with them in what I was pleased to call "exercises." I would begin by having all hold out one arm in a prize contest, which they enjoyed immensely. For four out of six to hold out an arm at right angles to the body for an hour and a half after the third or fourth day's exercises was nothing unusual. They could also stand on one foot for more than an hour—still at times and hopping about at other times, with the other foot in hand, either in front of or behind them. At any rate, I held their attention and constantly kept up a suggestive influence by addressing my suggestion to one and then another, expressing my confidence in his or her ability to hold up an arm or stand on one foot all day long.

In my demonstrations and lectures given to physicians I always have had one or more physicians present take a suggestion, without the slightest attempt to induce sleep, by agreeing to co-operate with me, so that I could show him how he could convey a suggestion to his own subconscious mind and get results that would surprise him. In over five hundred instances have I placed physicians submitting to this experiment across two chairs and jumped



upon their bodies with my entire weight of two hundred pounds, and in nine-tenths of the instances they would say that I had apparently placed no more than three or four pounds upon them. They were astonished and frequently incredulous when I informed them that they had sustained my weight.

Any one who believes that he can do so, can easily lie with head in one chair and heels in another, and hold up one hundred and fifty or two hundred pounds. On the other hand, I have frequently witnessed a physician attempt this where he did not believe it possible for a man to sustain even his own weight, and he always proved that what he believed about it was correct. It is simply a question of **mental attitude**.

For a suggestion to be assimilated as a self-suggestion, there must be confidence that amounts to a conviction before it will reach and influence the subconscious realm. The great realm of subconsciousness, which corresponds to the functioning of at least nine-tenths of an individual's psychic powers, is amenable to the suggestion of the conscious beliefs of the individual. His mental attitude, if it amounts to a conviction, evokes or calls forth latent powers or inherent psychic activities, and renders the reserve energy available or useless as he has confidence or lack of confidence.

But suggestion without hypnotism is effective in its influence not only upon the voluntary nervous functions, but the involuntary functions as well. Through the influence of suggestion upon the physiological processes of the body, even gross structural changes can result.

I walked up to a physician upon one occasion who was holding the hand of a little boy in both of his own, gently manipulating his hand. He was assuring the little fellow that those warts would go away, that they would go away when he did not know anything about it, and in two months would be gone, etc.

The physician had attended my lecture and demonstration the previous evening, and when I discovered what he was doing I exclaimed, "Using suggestion so early, Doctor?"

"Oh, this is my own method of curing warts," he replied. "I enjoy the enviable reputation here among the little boys as being the wart cure doctor, and I have in numerous cases dispersed them by suggestion."



A well-known physician related to me an experience of his in the case of a uterine fibroid—yes, a fibroid tumor of the uterus. Upon his last examination before an intended surgical operation he found that there was much adhesion, and, rather than jeopardize the life of his patient, he decided upon a plan which he executed as follows:

“Mrs. Blank,” he said, “if you will co-operate with me for one year, I feel quite certain that you can get well without the operation I intended. It will all depend upon your intelligent, persistent co-operation and effort. I wish to see you once a week to apply a medicine to the inside of your womb for the influence that it will exert upon lessening the circulation in that tumor, and also to apply a tampon to hold up the heavy organ so that you will suffer no more pain. Now, what I want you to do, in dead earnest, is this: whenever you think of your condition at all, say to yourself, ‘The blood vessels that go to this tumor are drying up, shrinking up, getting smaller and smaller, my womb is getting lighter and lighter, and this tumor is going away. Every day and night it is going away.’”

“Doctor Blank,” exclaimed she, “are you a Christian scientist? Do you mean to tell me that any such mental attitude on my part could exert an influence upon a large, hard substance like the things you showed me in those jars?”

“No, madam, I am not a Christian scientist,” said he, “but I do know that persistent, intelligent use of the higher brain centers exerts a wonderful influence over the vasomotor neuro regulation of the blood supply to any part of the body upon which attention is centered, and I tell you frankly that if you will do as I advise you, I expect to avoid the necessity of this operation.”

“Doctor Blank,” replied his patient, earnestly, “I will persistently and constantly do some of the finest thinking that any person ever did, all the time while I am awake and when I retire at night. I will affirm and iterate that this tumor is drying up and shrinking up, that the blood vessels are getting smaller and smaller, and that the tumor is getting lighter and lighter, and is rapidly going away—day and night it is going away.”

This physician saw that patient once a week and made a simple

application to her womb, but each time assured her that the congestion was being relieved, that the blood vessels were getting smaller, that her womb was getting lighter, and that she was progressing nicely in every way.

He said that at the end of one year that woman's tumor was less than one-fourth of the original size. His patient at that time said, "Oh, Doctor, it is such a responsibility to have to keep forcing that suggestion upon the involuntary physiological processes all the time."

"Then dismiss it, madam, just as I am going to dismiss you. I am positive that you will experience no more trouble and you may think of yourself as being a well woman."

It was two years since he dismissed that patient and she had experienced no more trouble.

While upon this phase of the subject, let me state here that the **sexual instinct and its development** is a far more potent factor in the production of neurotic symptoms than is commonly supposed. Nothing so disturbs the tranquillity of the average mind as the belief in his or her own sexual weakness, though it is purely imaginary.

That one individual, however, has a nose that is conspicuous for its enormous convexity and another for its concavity does not prevent this organ from performing its function. So, in the case of the female uterus—which is probably the organ that varies more than any other in position and size—the fact that in one case the fundus points to an angle of forty-five degrees forward when the individual is in the erect position, or forty-five degrees backward in another individual, is no ground to give rise to a diagnosis of abnormality or disease.

This organ is also, from its very nature, subject to a great variety of vascular changes, and when a patient is morbid in the belief that she has some serious uterine affection, with all the perverted mental states that accompany such a self-consciousness, there is no other field of work in which suggestion, in conjunction with some simple application or device, brings such fruitful results.

**Get the confidence of your patient;** let her know that you are considering her case from every point of view; find out what she

believes about her case, obtaining the information tactfully, and then give her a scientific analysis of her case in your own language that will harmonize with her own convictions and her symptoms; and, in making a mental picture to her as to what will be the outcome of the treatment, be sure to cover every symptom.

In other words, in conjunction with your local treatment be sure to give a suggestion to meet every indication, letting your patient feel that the treatment will bring such results. While using suggestion in conjunction with your treatment, do all you can to secure the intelligent co-operation of your patient.

In all gynecological cases there is more or less functional and neuropathic disturbance—such as insomnia, nervousness, indigestion, constipation, despondency, etc.—which can be successfully combated by simple suggestion given at the time the local treatment is applied. Above all, send your patients away less self-conscious of the seriousness of their illness and more confident of a complete recovery.

A casual remark, while holding the attention of your patient, that she will be easy after this, will sleep soundly at night, have a better appetite and feel better in every way, is food stuff for the subconscious mind that furnishes memory pictures or ideas that will be reproduced in the body.

A patient of mine upon one occasion had worked very hard taking stock in a dry goods store and became fatigued. He had not slept the two nights previous, though he had taken fifteen or twenty grains of sulphonal. He said when he came into my presence that he just must have a good night's sleep or he could not undertake the heavy task before him the next day. After patiently going into his case, asking him in regard to appetite, elimination, digestion, amount of water taken during the twenty-four hours, etc., I remarked, "Well, you will sleep if you take a dose of this prescription at bedtime and follow other directions."

I advised him to at once drink two glasses of water, and repeat this in two hours and again at bedtime, and also insisted that he take a long walk before going to his home, all of which I explained was necessary both to encourage elimination and to drive the blood away from an overworked brain.



I then gave the following directions: "Now, take notice, Mr. Blank, if you are not willing to go to sleep tonight, don't take this medicine, for if you take it you are going to sleep. Be sure to explain to your wife that you are taking something to give you a good night's rest and that your bedroom must be kept as quiet as possible.

"After preparing for bed, shake the bottle thoroughly and take a tablespoonful of the medicine. Then put out your light, get in bed, and turn yourself loose" (showing him how to relax). "By slightly breathing through your mouth you will take into your lungs more oxygen, which greatly facilitates the action of this medicine. In less than a minute after you relax and breathe deeply you will feel your arms and lower limbs getting heavy, and experience a sensation as if you are sinking down in your bed. This is the effect of the medicine—don't resist it; and in less than three more minutes you will be sound asleep, and sleep soundly all night and awake in the morning feeling much refreshed."

I then arose and turned to the door in a way that suggested to him to depart.

"See here, Doctor," said he, "there is no danger in this medicine?"

"It will put you to sleep, Mr. Blank; but if you had a weak heart, it would strengthen it and all bodily functions will be encouraged, and you will have the best night's rest you ever had in your life. Be sure to remember to relax when you get in bed and breathe slightly through your mouth. Come tomorrow and tell me how well you slept."

I had prescribed 15 grains of trional in thirty-two doses of carbonated water, less than  $\frac{1}{2}$  grain of the medicine to the dose, when he had taken 15 or 20 grains of sulphonal at each dose the two nights previous and had but little sleep.

The next day he returned and asked if there was any danger of getting in the habit of taking that medicine, reporting that he had slept soundly all night long, and stating that his wife had said he had not slept so soundly before in thirty years.

"Some people are very susceptible to that dose, Mr. Blank, and



I see you are one of them. Don't you notice what a sedative effect it has had upon you?"

"Yes," he replied, "I feel a little lazy."

"That is simply the result of a good night's sleep and the relief that the medicine has given to the nervous element in your case. You will not need another dose of that prescription oftener than once a week. You will be thirsty and drink plenty of water after this, and that encourages all functional activity. You will eat more, digest your food, and improve in health in every way, but you must relax at night when you retire and breathe through your mouth, for the increased amount of oxygen taken into your lungs which is secured in that way is very essential to the success of this treatment."

The fact that he did relax and breathe slightly through his mouth, with the idea having been strongly put to him that he would go to sleep, virtually amounted to getting him to hypnotize himself, or take a suggestion both consciously and subconsciously. In five weeks he reported that he had taken five doses of the placebo prescription, had slept well all the while, and had gained six pounds in weight.

Two years later he reminded me of the marked benefit of that prescription. "You know how I had for several years suffered with indigestion," said he; "now I can eat boiled ham, hard boiled eggs, and cheese for supper, and sleep well all night. I have gained thirty pounds, and am in better health than I have been in over thirty years."

I am personally acquainted with two physicians who have for some time been engaged in sanatorium work. One of these physicians secures a good night's rest for his patient by directing the nurse very seriously in the presence of his patient to give a "sleeping capsule" (a placebo) at nine o'clock, and, if his patient is not sleeping soundly by ten, to give another. "But in no event to give more than two; she will sleep soundly all night."

"In fifteen years," said he, "I do not remember that this has failed to secure a good night's rest in more than a half dozen instances."

The other physician instructs his nurse to prepare his patients

for sleep by looking after all possible requirements, making the patient conscious that he is being prepared to get a dose of medicine that will make him sleep soundly all night, and then directs her to administer one drop of a solution of potassium bromide, instructing the patient that he will be asleep in five minutes and will sleep soundly all night.

Said he, "That is the last I ever hear from them. They sleep all night."

Hundreds and hundreds of physicians have reported to me that they secured a good night's sleep for their patients by giving a hypodermic injection of pure water.

A few days ago I came into the presence of a gentleman suffering with an acute pleuritis, with a rising temperature and a severe pain. He was walking the floor, holding a hot water bag to his painful side, and stated that he had been unable to lie down on account of the severe pain. I advised that he lie down, relax every muscle, breathe slightly through his lips, and stated that he would at once get ease and go to sleep.

He was left alone and conformed to the conditions, and did get ease and went to sleep promptly. I assured him before trying the method that the thorough relaxation would allow the blood to circulate evenly throughout his entire body, thus relieving the congestion in and about the inflamed area, and that he would get ease and go to sleep. He intelligently and consciously acted upon the suggestion and got good results.

Upon one occasion I was called hurriedly to see a patient after several attempts had been made to secure my services. She was a neurotic woman who was reported seriously ill. I had seen that patient before, however, and picked up a bottle of *avena sativa*, a sample that had been left in my office, and carried it along with me. My patient was extremely hysterical, almost opisthotonic, and shaking convulsively; hands cold, feet cold, pulse rapid, and around her was a badly frightened family and friends. As I came into her presence I expressed a regret that I had been so long delayed, and, taking her hand sympathetically, expressed the hope that she had not suffered on account of my delay, whereupon she displayed all of her symptoms with exaggerated emphasis.

Her husband and the chief attendant had their say in describing the severity of the attack, and related the special incidents that had transpired during the past hour or so, and at the proper psychological moment I said to her strongly, "Now, be patient, and let me find out just what is the trouble."

I had seen that patient before, and my familiarity with her case did not require any further light to correctly interpret her symptoms. However, a physician must sometimes pursue the course that will best secure the accord of the patient in order to get best results. I took her temperature, counted her pulse, percussed her chest, listened to her respiration, examined her lips and the lobes of her ears, etc. I then said to her, at a moment when I had her attention, "Be patient, madam, I have just what I need to relieve you in a few minutes," holding the sample of *avena sativa* in my hand before her.

Turning to her husband, I requested him to bring me a glass of water, an empty glass, and a spoon. While waiting for this I said to her kindly, "Be patient, you will soon feel all right after you take a dose of medicine." I poured one spoonful of the medicine into the glass, followed by six spoonfuls of water, and stirred it briskly for at least nine seconds. Then taking a spoonful of the mixture, I put it to her lips and told her to swallow it.

Handing her husband the glass, I placed one hand over her eyes, closing them gently, and requested her to breathe through her mouth. "Now, breathe deeply; once again; now again, away down deep;" thus getting three full respirations. "There, now, you are relaxed perfectly all over. Now lie still and let the medicine have its effect, and in ten minutes you will feel all right, and be quiet and easy from head to foot."

She lay perfectly still, and her husband, with eyes as wide open as full moons, exclaimed, "See here, Doctor, that seems to be a very powerful medicine you are using. Is there no danger in that dose?"

"Just what she needs," I replied. "If her heart were weak, that medicine would strengthen it; her nerves will become steady, and quiet, and strong. Her muscles will completely relax, her



hands and feet get warm and her head get easy, and her nervous equilibrium will be completely re-established."

I walked out of the room, and requested that he follow me and leave her quiet for ten minutes, stating that she would be completely relieved at the end of that time, and that then we would give her another dose and she would go to sleep and sleep soundly all night.

At the end of ten minutes we returned to her bedside. She lay as passive and still as a lake without a ripple. Taking her wrist, I found her pulse about seventy instead of one hundred and twenty, as it was upon my arrival. "Open your eyes, Mrs. Blank; you feel good, don't you?"

"Oh, Doctor, I could feel the effects of that medicine coming over me just as you said it would. I never had anything make me feel so pleasant in all my life."

"It has had a delightful effect, but I never gave you a dose of medicine that did not have a good effect on you. You are one patient in whose case I know that every dose will produce the desired result."

"Because you understand my case so well, Doctor," was her suave reply.

That was all right. Throw bouquets at your patients, and they will throw them back at you. Blame them and find fault with them, and they will blame you and find fault with you.

In the case of the patient just described I advised that another dose of the medicine be administered, and for everything to be arranged to let her go to sleep, casually remarking that she would sleep soundly all night and be feeling all right in the morning. My patient remarked that she came near going to sleep anyway from that one dose, and that if she had not been afraid that I would have left her, she would have gone sound to sleep. I left instructions that she come to my office the next day, and gave her a prescription with several names that amounted to nothing on account of the smallness of the dose of each, instructing her to take a spoonful in water before meals and at bedtime, suggesting to her that this would keep her nervous system functioning prop-



erly; that it would make her sleep soundly at night and prevent another one of those attacks.

At least three-fourths of the adult population of the world are relying upon some therapeutic system or method. They are followers of some herd, school, or system that offers health in the place of disease. The self-conscious intellectual ego has not been sufficiently evolved within them to enable them to rely upon themselves. What these people really need is education, knowledge, and guidance—other names for suggestion—to give them the will to dare to do as well as they know how.

A large percentage of these functional and neuropathic conditions would get well of their own accord if the people were only level-headed enough to do as the dog does, who lies down and gives nature a chance to recuperate an outraged physical constitution.

Rest in a comfortable bed, deep inspiration of pure air, light, wholesome diet, copious draughts of water to encourage elimination, with unyielding faith in the powers inherent within the biological elements, would result in a cure of a large proportion of the usual ills of human beings without a drop of medicine.

Yet, suggestion begets faith, confidence, and belief, and is at the bottom of Christian science, osteopathy, patent medicine cures, electrotherapeutic quackery, magnetic healing, divine healing, mental science, metaphysical healing, faith cures, and such like. These people are here, and their methods are applicable to a large class of functional and neuropathic conditions. They are alert and active, and here to stay as long as time lasts, under some name or guise, to make use of this psychological method of treatment.

We, as a profession, should not lay aside one single therapeutic measure or device, but, in addition to our ordinary therapeutic measures in all classes of diseases and conditions, we have an opportunity to give our patients the benefit of this most powerful therapeutic adjunct. Honestly and earnestly convince thinking people of the utility of any good thing, and they will indorse it and give you their hearty co-operation, it matters not how strong their prejudices may have been.

Physicians frequently make a serious mistake by discouraging

their patients with an unfavorable prognosis instead of relying with more confidence upon the psychic element, which would furnish them a rational basis for a more hopeful result.

There are many fatalities occurring daily all over our country for the lack of men with faith in this psychological law, and with courage and moral stamina to stand out against the popular prejudice to it, and apply it as a therapeutic aid.

A number of times in my life has it been my unpleasant duty, yet high privilege, to have an opportunity to stand by a patient, in the face of a positively unfavorable prognosis made by those who did not appreciate the great power of suggestion upon the subconscious, and tell him, "You are going to get well." I have had such patients squeeze my hand as I held theirs and say, "If you stand by me, Doctor, I will get well."

All classes of illness, sickness, or disease, in conjunction with other methods of treatment, need moral or psychological support. They need leadership. We need men in the profession to do as Napoleon did when his men were dying by hundreds each day on his march in the East. He visited the camp, and took each one by the hand and assured him strongly and positively that, if he would be brave, he would get well. Just as this one visit of his to the sick and discouraged soldiers put an end to an epidemic where several hundred men were dying each day, so would many human lives be saved by this simple suggestion, given with confidence and with conviction in conjunction with other therapeutic measures.

The medical profession has been looking too long at the surface of things. We have dealt too much with externals, with effects, and have neglected causes.

There are three-fourths of the human race who need arousing and being shocked into a self-consciousness of strength and ability, confidence and determination; not only in facing the questions of health and disease, but in all other problems of life. The man who gives such patients some of his own optimistic personality is giving them strength and life itself. They convert countless millions and millions of brain centers, lying dormant and unused, into action to encourage every bodily cell to increased function.

The trouble is that the majority of people have not sufficient confidence within themselves. They do not recognize their power, and have no confidence in the latent potentialities dormant and unused within them, that can be called into action only through faith and confidence. A new self-consciousness needs to be awakened within them. The great majority of people are incapable of thinking and reasoning for themselves. Their minds, through education and experience, have not had the foodstuffs to enable them to exercise reason. They are governed by fear and ruled by emotion. Others go through life in a listless, dreamlike mental condition, referred to by Jastrow as mental loafing.

The will is capable of reproducing those impressions made upon the brain only through experience and education. Whatever idea is uppermost in their minds, whatever impression is the strongest, is the one that most influences them.

The physician who is so engrossed in the pathology of the case that at each visit he recites it over and over again to his patient, assists in encouraging not the patient, but the disease. He fastens the morbid psychoneurotic element of the patient stronger upon him, and thus intensifies his disease by lessening his resisting powers.

People are hypnotized by their beliefs. Belief in an idea or a theory, or a creed or a drug, or a man or a woman, is the place where the individual relinquishes self-responsibility, takes mental refuge, and agrees to act upon the idea or series of ideas that are presented to him either consciously or subconsciously. It is all a matter of getting the confidence of people and making suggestions.

"Keep off the grass, keep off the grass," is a sign that one sees everywhere in the study and application of this subject. It is before the door of the prevailing educational systems. Political and economic problems, religious and therapeutic creeds, orthodox and heterodox alike, all mold and shape the actions of men by the use of suggestion in disguised form. How sensitive people are when we tell them the truth.

Three years ago, in one of our northern cities, a gentleman invited me to attend what he called a remarkable hypnotic exhibition. It was the last service of a ten-day religious revival meeting



in a tent with a capacity for fully five thousand people. The last song had been sung and the last prayer offered before the speaker appeared upon the platform. He walked up and down before his audience as if heaven and hell, life and death, time and eternity were all on his shoulders. He then struck a pose, by the side of his little stand, that itself filled his audience, who were already under the influence of his suggestions, with expectant awe and fear. With all the intensity of a tragedian he then began: "There are people under the sound of my voice here tonight that before this hour is over will have made a record for hell or heaven! There are people under the sound of my voice that before another year has rolled around will have approached the judgment bar of God!" One strong expression after another of this kind followed, and in less than three minutes a little woman with an unstable, nervous organization near me dropped upon her knees with the cry, "Lord, help; O Lord, save the people!" etc.

On and on went the suggester, the pulpit orator, the speaker, the hypnotist, and one after another followed the example of the little woman until within twenty minutes pandemonium reigned. The whole tent reverberated the echoes of crying, shouting, and praying.

I walked up close to the leader and noted that he went from one to another and suggested what the Lord would do and what the penitent must do. To one he suggested, "Just get up and say, 'Glory, hallelujah; it's all right.'" For at least forty times the poor fellow jumped up, and elapped his hands and exclaimed, "Glory, hallelujah; it's all right!" Dozens of others were playing their stunts in different ways.

This was in one of the most enlightened and cultured states in our great union, and this was a tame affair compared with some experiences of the writer in his own former southern state, both among whites and negroes.

Any method of getting an individual to act upon an idea or a series of ideas, be they true or false, either consciously or subconsciously, is hypnotism or suggestion. Suggestion, then, is a basis of all religions, ereeds, dogmas, nonmedical and nonsurgical therapeutic systems, and all methods of education.



Suggestion is used both for the good and for the harm of human beings. It is used by everybody, and the really dangerous man or woman is the individual who is unconsciously of its potency as a factor in both sanity and insanity, happiness or unhappiness, education or ignorance, truth or falsehood, health or disease, character building or moral perversion.

We frequently see fanatics upon various lines swaying and leading men and women into all kinds of incongruous paths and actions by their fanatical zeal, enthusiasm, and absurd devotion to some false theory or concept. The only protection for the individual is knowledge and experience, education and light, and the ability to think for and protect himself.

No special tact is required by a physician to use suggestion to fix the attention of his patient on such ideas as are desirable to influence his life and conduct for therapeutic purposes. The great thing to be desired is to have more regard for the welfare of your patient than for the remuneration for your services.

We find everywhere pseudo-conscientious men in the medical profession who "have too high a regard for the truth" to use suggestion in a legitimate therapeutic manner for the helpfulness of their patients. Such men usually fasten a trivial functional disorder by the injudicious use of suggestion upon the consciousness of a patient, and make it a serious psychoneurotic condition by giving his disease a name and pointing out its serious pathology and consequences, simply giving a prescription to relieve a condition which he has made in reality ten times worse.

A North Carolina physician had a patient who was morbidly self-conscious of some functional disturbance, and, after going to leading men in several of the larger southern cities, he finally landed in Baltimore, where he secured an audience with one of the most widely known physicians in the history of the medical profession. The patient related his difficulty in getting relief, and told how he had gone from place to place, and how the physicians did not agree, and how some called his disease one thing and some another. The physician stripped him, gave him a careful examination for two or three minutes, and said, "All right, sir; put on your clothes."

He seated himself to write a letter, and by the time his patient was dressed he said, "Give me twenty dollars, please," which was promptly handed over to him. Then, with one hand on his doorknob and the other on the patient's shoulder, he looked him squarely in the face and said to him, "My friend, go home and read only the book of St. James, call yourself a — fool, and let doctors alone."

The door was opened, and the man was out of the physician's office before he realized it, another patient having gone into the consulting room. The gentleman reminded the office attendant that the doctor had forgotten to give him a prescription, and he was informed that he must now wait until all present had gone in before he could have another audience.

Over and over did he revolve that advice, "My friend, go home and read only the book of St. James, call yourself a — fool, and let doctors alone." The gentleman grew too nervous to sit still, and decided to take a walk and return an hour later, but, while walking alone on the streets of Baltimore, blind and deaf to everything that he saw and heard, the meaning of that advice at last dawned upon his consciousness and he began to laugh.

He then decided it would not be necessary to return to the physician's office, and he took the next train for his home, all the while remembering that his family physician had told him that his disease was more "in his head" than otherwise. The meaning of the advice given by his family physician was now clear to him, and he realized for the first time that he did not have a brain disease, and that what the eminent physician really meant was that his condition was the result of an unbridled imagination, or, to speak in modern psychological phraseology, due to a morbid self-consciousness.

He reached his home with his head up, wearing a smile like a headlight on a steam engine, and, though three years had elapsed, the gentleman yet laughed at how easily he had been cured by finding a man with courage and honesty sufficient to tell him that he had been acting a — fool and should let doctors alone. No doubt he was also instructed to quit reading patent medicine advertisements and modern mind cure theories.

Now, that is just the point. People so often need advice, assurance, ideas, persuasion, or shocking—other names for suggestion—and not medicine or instruction in the pathology of their disease. The fact that a patient comes to you is ordinarily an acknowledgment that he is willing to take your advice, that he has confidence in you, and is willing to rely on your judgment.

Here I would add a word of caution. It is a great mistake to tell a patient that you can find nothing the matter with him—almost as bad as to exaggerate the seriousness of his symptoms. An individual with a functional disorder may not necessarily be suffering with insomnia, or have sustained a loss in weight, and yet be in the incipency of a disease which, if not properly treated, may result in serious disorders of metabolism. He comes to you with subjective sensations, feelings, and impressions which annoy and depress him. He feels incapacitated for his work. Every problem of life is colored by the hue of his morbid subjective state, and when you tell him that you can find no cause for his trouble you only add to his morbidness and aggravate what may be the incipency of a grave disorder. A good proportion of the more serious nervous and mental diseases begins in functional disturbances. The disorders of metabolism resulting in metabolic toxemia may begin in this way. These patients should be made to feel that they have your confidence and sympathy, as well as the benefit of your knowledge and skill as a physician. Then you are in position to tactfully govern their habits of thought and conduct, and to help them to execute a plan of treatment that will bring about recovery.

Elimination is usually deficient, and the treatment needed in such cases tests the complete resources of the physician and embodies all therapeutic measures—medicinal, dietetic, physiological, and mechanical—as well as psychotherapeutic.

Frequently, work under the proper conditions is the only means of cure, and the far-reaching influence of the physician to secure the conditions necessary for the recovery of his patient is not out of place.

The proper treatment of disease is as varied in its application as are the wants and necessities of mankind.



**Illustration.**—A physician of my acquaintance was called to see a frail little woman who was the only support of her two fatherless children. Day and night she labored with needle and thread, vainly striving to buy food and clothing, pay rent, and provide for other life essentials. Deprived of fresh air and sunshine, and under constant mental and physical strain, she finally succumbed, with all bodily functions disturbed, and discouraged and depressed in the extreme.

The representative of a local church organization stated to the physician that they had provided a nurse, arranged for her medicine, and would send her nicely prepared meals and visit her often.

“All that will only add to the severity of her psychoneurotic condition,” said he; “go and get her twenty-five dollars to pay her house rent, fill her pantry with substantial food to meet present demands, but, above all, secure her a position where she can work and get exercise, and sunshine and fresh air, and have time to sleep at night, and she will need no medicine, no nursing, or visitors.”

The representative of the charitable organization left, saying that she would have the society consider the matter at their next meeting a week hence.

There was present at that interview between the physician and the representative of the local organization a stenographer who was the widow of a poor young physician who had died, leaving her with no means of support, but before her marriage she had learned to “do things with her hands,” and she was independent and happy. She requested the physician to meet her on the outside of the sick lady’s room at seven o’clock that evening, at which time she delivered to him the amount of cash requested, and had unloaded the substantials for a well-filled pantry, and announced that she had secured a position for the sick lady in question, all of which she had done quietly and unostentatiously during the day, requesting that the part which she had played in the matter never be disclosed to the patient.

Within a few days that frail little woman was at her post of duty, and up to four years afterward she was at work, much improved in health and strength, contented and happy.

## CHAPTER IX.

### HYPNOTISM THERAPEUTICALLY APPLIED.

In the consideration of any therapeutic measure, the first thought that comes to the mind of the wide-awake physician is, what is its advantage over any other method of treatment?

The answer to that question is easy: its addition to other therapeutic measures enables the physician to get results in a very large proportion of cases that come under our observation that can not be secured through any other agency. The value of any therapeutic adjunct is in direct ratio to the successful results that accrue from its administration. Yet, it must be remembered that what are possibilities with any method or kind of treatment—medicinal, surgical, suggestive, or otherwise—are not always actualities in the hands of all men alike, and it depends upon the individual, and upon him alone rests the responsibility for what he is not able to accomplish when he is really put to the test at the bedside, and this often seriously disturbs our conscience and humbles our pride.

Any physician who expects to use suggestive therapeutics successfully must by practice acquire that confidence in his own ability to succeed with it by familiarizing himself with all the facts, and theories, and details of his subject. Yet, I have often noticed an individual who possessed that inexplicable quality of personality to get others to do anything he wanted them to do, who had never read a line in psychology or suggestion, and was absolutely unfamiliar with the principles of medical science.

Hypnotism is a self-induced psychological condition. You do not hypnotize an individual—you simply get him to do it himself; but to get any one to act upon an idea or a series of ideas, either consciously or subconsciously, one must be in dead earnest, exercise a little enthusiasm about the undertaking, and go at it with the will to succeed.

The greatest essential to the application of suggestive therapeutics is a conviction on the part of the operator of the value of the treatment as applied to the case at hand and a desire to bring about the recovery of the patient. In fact, this is the important essential which is the *sine qua non* to the success of any kind of treatment. Yet, if suggestion be of value at all, it is of use just in proportion that the individual accepts and carries out the suggestion, both consciously and subconsciously. Hypnotism is but the art, or technic, or method of instructing an individual to act upon a suggestion or a series of suggestions. There must always be a conscious acquiescence, consent, or co-operation on the part of the individual, not necessarily to be hypnotized, but to take the suggestion, which is the same thing. Then, by suggestion there is induced in the patient a new consciousness whereby he is led to do that which he had previously been unable to do for himself both consciously and subconsciously.

In a preceding chapter I spoke of using suggestion to inhibit the conscious mind, as was hypothetically supposed to be accomplished in the hypnotic state. It would have been more correct to state that we simply get the patient to be passive and allow the operator to induce a new consciousness, and then to direct the stream of consciousness which produces mental states that react upon every bodily function.

We get our patient to let us direct and control his psychic activities, and teach and illustrate for him how he can direct and control them for himself. We put our patient better in control of himself, all dependent upon the suggestions or sense impressions that are transmitted to his brain cells through the senses while in this passive or suggestible condition.

Sense impression is the starting point for every psychic action. Every sense impression that is produced by suggestion or otherwise has a determined localization in the brain cortex.

It is assumed by psychologists that every sense impression, according to its degree of strength, produces a molecular change in the nerve cells influenced, which gives rise to the possibility of a reproduction of these ideas or sense impressions by an internal process.



Memory is the result of sense impressions that previous experiences in life have left upon the brain cells. The very ideas or products of thought which are impressed upon the brain cells by suggestion in the hypnotic state, as well as by suggestion without hypnotism, have the power of being reproduced in mental states, which gives rise to a new consciousness in the individual.

By suggestion in the hypnotic state we are better enabled to plant sense impressions, ideas, thoughts, and feelings, which reproduce themselves in the consciousness of the individual and furnish a foundation for his intellectual activities.

In this suggestible condition we are enabled to drive back certain sense impressions that create unpleasant mental states, obliterate them and wipe them out, and, by holding the subject's attention to certain ideas presented to him, we create a new consciousness or alter his frame of mind. We render the individual more self-conscious of potentialities, dormant and unused within him, which he can call into operation through the combined effort of memory and will, in contrast to previous conceptions of his own personality. This new conception of himself and his relation to the outer world contributes to strengthen and develop the self-conscious ego. It is in reality the development of the ego.

By suggestion in the hypnotic state we give impulse to reproduce previous sense impressions. Call it strengthening memory, or will, or character, or ego, as you choose, and the mental process which brings about the logical connection of sense perceptions or ideas reproduced in this way is what is called thinking.

So, then, by suggestion in the hypnotic state we create new thought habits, mental states, or streams of consciousness, which react upon every bodily function. We alter the individual's thinking.

The following cases will illustrate the position taken by the author as to the value of suggestion in that condition of induced passivity or receptivity to suggestion commonly referred to as the hypnotic state. Whether the individual is asleep or not does not concern us here. It suffices if we have the confidence and co-operation of the patient.

The results obtained by hypnotic suggestion in the following

cases speak for themselves. I shall cite only enough cases to illustrate the position taken by the author in the preceding pages.

### INSOMNIA.

**Loss of Sleep.**—This is a condition that leads to general physical disease. It has innumerable causes, all of which should be considered and treated according to indications, which calls into exercise the complete resources of the physician. It more or less accompanies all diseased conditions, acute or chronic, functional or organic, surgical and otherwise.

It is useless to attempt to break up the habits of a nervous, wakeful person by suggestion when the individual lives in open violation of all the known laws of health, or where the system is overloaded with toxic products due to indigestion, caused by over-eating, with fermentation, deficient elimination, etc.

Meet every indication in the individual case at hand, and, in conjunction with other sane, sensible, rational advice or suggestion, hypnotic suggestion will prove indispensable in many cases.

Make it a rule to regulate your patient's diet, his drinking, and his habits as well as his thinking. The question of food and drink habits, etc., will be briefly considered in a separate chapter.

There are, however, numerous individuals among all classes upon whom the cares of life have borne heavily, who, try as they will, with their imperfect knowledge of self-control and lack of self-reliance, can not keep back subjective impressions which crowd themselves upon their consciousness when they retire for sleep, and the darkness renders them more conscious of their trials.

Many there are who are still waiting for special divine intervention to satisfy them that their souls are saved. Doubt hovers over them and disturbs their peace of mind. Others have not learned the beauty, and glory, and salutary effects of work and useful employment as a means of strengthening and developing both mind and body.

An unoccupied, idle brain is the reflector of a morbid imagination, upon which flit and dance all kinds of annoying mental

pictures, to the discomfort of the individual who fain would find relief in sleep.

In rare instances an overexpenditure of nerve energy, through work, or worry, or dissipation, prevents the individual from possessing that inherent quality of nerve force sufficient to exercise self-control. Uncontrolled emotions, in the form of sentiments both selfish and altruistic, also contribute their influence to keep awake the restless neurotic.

An irritable nervous system, either hereditary or acquired, is transmitting constantly afferent and efferent impulses to and from the brain, and throughout the entire human frame subjective sense perceptions are interpreted by the individual as nervousness, sickness, pain, disease, etc.

Nutrition is disturbed, and toxins of metabolism—or, more properly, catabolism—are being manufactured to interfere with all bodily functions and render the sufferer miserable.

### TREATMENT.

In conjunction with dietetic, medicinal, and hygienic treatment, suggestion in the hypnotic state should be used if necessary.

Get your patient to relax every muscle, and breathe deeply and rhythmically for several times in succession, and then with one or two drops of chloroform or any other placebo—or without them, as you choose—tell him that you are “going to put him to sleep; that, as you apply this remedy, he will get quiet all over, get drowsy and sleepy, and go to sleep, and awake feeling better.”

Then, to hypnotize him, make suggestions as advised in the chapter on the technic of inducing the hypnotic state. After he is hypnotized, while you sit beside the unfortunate whose nervous system you have soothed into quietude and passivity, talk to him, using suggestions somewhat like these:

“You are resting quietly, sleeping soundly, breathing deeply, perfectly relaxed and passive all over. Now, as you lie in this passive state, with all tension relieved, while I am talking to you, you feel your nerves getting steady, and quiet, and strong. All nervousness is going away, and by the time I count ten your nerves



will be quiet, and steady, and strong all over; your nervous equilibrium will be completely re-established from head to foot. One, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten; your nerves are steady, and quiet, and strong all over.

“Now, after this treatment, whenever you think of yourself, you will find that your nerves are steady, and quiet, and strong.

“At bedtime you will relax, close your eyes, and think only of sleep. You will go to sleep, and sleep soundly all night long. You will awake in the morning feeling refreshed and rested.

“After this you will be thirsty, and drink more water than ever before in your life. Every two hours from morning until you retire at night you will drink a glass of water. The increased amount of fluid will cause an increased action of all your bodily functions. Your skin and kidneys, liver and bowels, will eliminate more freely.

“You will be easy and comfortable all over. You will enjoy eating, and work, and exercise, and gain in weight, and be happier, feel stronger, and be glad that you are living.”

I then awake the patient, and give him conscious advice how to eat, how to drink, how to exercise, and how to relax so that he can go to sleep. I give him a reason for all the advice that I have given, as well as a reason for the suggestion given him in that induced condition of passivity.

I am often asked, “Do you mean to say that the suggestions will be effective just because they are made to the patient who is hypnotized?” I say we make sense impressions on the brain cortex while the patient is in the hypnotic condition, that are reproduced in the individual's thought habits. The reproductions of these ideas are autosuggestions. When you substitute helpful autosuggestions for adverse and harmful autosuggestions, you have been of the greatest help that one human being can be to another. You have put your patient in control of himself. You have changed his habits of thinking, and by this means new habits of thought and action in every-day life are formed. You have put your patient better in possession of himself, and better enabled him to meet the exigencies of every-day life.

**ILLUSTRATION 1.**

**Syphiliphobia, Insomnia, Neurasthenia, Etc.**—Mr. Blank, a farmer, who had led an honorable, upright life, had by his indiscretion contracted a gonorrhœa and a chaneroid. The chaneroid readily healed, but the gonorrhœa persisted for several weeks. He believed that he had syphilis, was tortured by a hypersensitive conscience, and for several months had been confined to his room. His physician had reassured him, reasoned with him, and done all in his power to argue out of his consciousness the delusion that he had syphilis.

He had recovered from both these diseases, but there was a psychoneurotic element in his case which was day by day growing more serious. He did not sleep at night, and was frequently heard crying and praying when everything was quiet and all were supposed to be asleep. Anorexia, indigestion, malnutrition, and a loss in weight of thirty-five pounds in five months had caused his physician to feel apprehensive of his soon being a fit subject for the insane asylum. In fact, he was so already.

Here were insomnia, hysteria, syphiliphobia, neurasthenia, delusions, etc., all in one case. I explained to him the value of a new and powerful sleep-producing remedy (a placebo) that I was "introducing to the profession," and impressed upon him consciously that there was a nervous element in his case that this remedy would relieve.

I let him know that it was expected to put him to sleep, and that the result of this sleep would be to relieve the nervous element in his case. He readily consented for the treatment to be used, and went into a profound state of suggestibility.

In the hypnotic state I addressed him about as follows: "Now, Mr. Blank, you are sound and dead asleep, perfectly relaxed and passive from head to foot, breathing deeply; your nerves steady, and quiet, and strong. As you lie here, while I apply this remedy, your nerves are growing steadier, and quieter, and stronger, and by the time I count ten your nerves will be steady, and quiet, and strong all over. One, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten, and your nerves are steady, quiet, and strong all over. Now,

you will not be nervous any more. After this, whenever you think of yourself, you will find that your nerves are steady, and quiet, and strong, and you will realize that you have not had syphilis; that Doctor Blank was right, that he knew his business, and that you are now well and all right.

“You will drink water every two hours, enjoy your meals, sleep soundly at night, and attend to your duties just as you did months ago when you were well.

“When you go to bed at night, you will relax just as you are here now, close your eyes and think only of sleep; then you will go sound asleep, and sleep soundly all night long. If you awake at all in the night, it will be to think of yourself as resting and sleeping quietly, feeling contented, satisfied, and happy. You will enjoy your meals, and take the old-time interest in your farm work, your stock, and business generally. You will go to town as you once did, and every day feel thankful for the improved condition of your health.”

I allowed him to sleep for thirty minutes longer and then awakened him. I told him that this treatment had done him good, that he was going to feel better after this, that he would enjoy his meals, would sleep well at night, and would attend to his business as in former times. I assured him that he was in sound health, had been well all the time, and after this would feel differently in regard to his own condition.

He came to see his physician five days after that, and, while lank and lean as a pine fence rail, he was his old self, his rational normal self, as he once was before his misfortunes. Five weeks afterward he had gained twelve pounds in weight and was rapidly on the road to recovery.

By suggestion in the hypnotic state, new ideas, new sense impressions had been substituted, new thoughts planted in the place of the old ones that were torturing his conscience, preventing his sleep and damning his life. A new consciousness now possessed him and he was practically a healthy man.



**ILLUSTRATION 2.**

**Psycholepsy, Chlorosis, Anemia, Etc.**—This patient, a girl aged 16, had been treated by five leading physicians of her city for several years without benefit. Her case had been diagnosed as true epilepsy, but I had reason to believe that this was a mistake.

She had seizures resembling those of epilepsy from once to several times a week, was anemic and chlorotic, her menses were scanty and irregular, she had poor appetite and was badly nourished; slept soundly at night, but her sleep was not refreshing. Awoke in the morning tired, and she took but little interest in anything.

Hypnosis was induced, and suggestions were given her while in the hypnotic state, to get her to breathe deeper, and it was also suggested that she would always breathe deeper, day and night, asleep or awake; that she would always breathe deeper.

It was also suggested that she would be thirsty after this and enjoy drinking water, that she would always drink more water, that she would take a glass of water every two hours from morning to night. It was further suggested that she would take exercise freely every day, that her bowels would move regularly every morning, that she would go to the toilet at least twice a day, and that her bowels would functionate properly, move freely every morning, etc.

In a case like this, suggestion must be given to influence the individual's conscious and unconscious psychic or mental activities. Waking conduct must be guided as well as subjective impressions made to influence the involuntary functions.

My lecture to this girl would probably be about as follows, with my hand upon her forehead or gently stroking her forehead from side to side, made in a monotone, positive, earnest manner, presented in a way that would transmit words into feeling: "Now, my dear little girl, you are sound asleep, and while you lie here your nerves are getting quiet, and steady, and strong; quiet, and steady, and strong; and by the time I count ten your nerves will be quiet, and steady, and strong all over. One, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten—your nerves are quiet, and steady, and strong from head to foot.

“Now, as I talk to you and place my hand upon your chest, you feel your ability to breathe deeper, getting stronger and stronger, and by the time I count five I want you to breathe deeply, filling your lungs as deep and full as is possible. One, two, three, four, five—now breathe deeply, deeper yet (she took the suggestion well). There, now, rest and breathe naturally.

“Now, after this you will always breathe deeper, the blood will circulate more freely in your stomach and will better nourish your gastric mucous membrane, so that you will have a better appetite and a better digestion. Under my hand here, now, you feel the blood circulating more freely in your stomach, and by the time I count five the blood will be coming freely to your stomach. One, two, three, four, five.

“After this you will be thirsty and drink water every two hours, and you will be hungry and enjoy your meals. You will chew your food well, and especially enjoy eating fruit and vegetables. You will sleep well at night. When you go to bed you will go sound asleep and sleep soundly all night. You will never again be nervous or have another one of those nervous attacks. You will enjoy breathing, drinking water, and eating, working, exercising, and sleeping—you will enjoy life.

“As you eat more and digest your food better, you will be better nourished, get stronger, gain in weight, and have perfect health.”

About six weeks after this treatment by suggestion, which was followed by three others given by her physician, I learned that she had experienced no more trouble and was a great deal better.

Five years after that her physician, who assisted in the treatment, informed me that she had never had any further trouble, that she at once began to sleep, eat, drink, exercise, gain in weight, etc. “She went from one hundred and ten to one hundred and forty-five pounds in weight,” said he, “and is now married and the happy mother of a fine baby.”

In the therapeutic application of suggestion in hysteria, neurasthenia, melancholia, indigestion, morbid fears, nervousness, etc., we make use of the same principles as were employed in the above mentioned cases. Your suggestions must be made to meet the individual needs of the patient at hand. Burn into his consciousness

or subconsciousness the ideas that you wish to influence both his voluntary waking consciousness and all his or her involuntary physiological processes.

As a rule, suggest away whatever subjective impressions, sensations, feelings, thought habits, and bodily symptoms are objectionable, and in their place suggest what you desire to influence your patient or become a part of his life.

### ILLUSTRATION 3.

**Acute Migraine, Neurasthenia, Etc.**—Telephone girl with acute migraine, but was of neurasthenic and highly nervous temperament at best. Her physician usually began with a hypodermic of morphin sulphate  $\frac{1}{4}$  grain and atropin sulphate  $\frac{1}{150}$  grain, and, in addition to this, prescribed a brisk purgative of calomel, aloes, podophyllin, cascara, etc.; also hot foot baths and hot fomentations. If constipated, he directed an enema to be given at once.

The girl reached her home at six o'clock in the evening in one of her most severe attacks. At least two days were usually required for her to get over one of these severe headaches, usually associated with indigestion, and during this time from two to three hypodermics of morphin were required in addition to a dozen doses of coal tar preparations, bromids, etc.

She was a young woman twenty years of age, with an unstable, nervous system, and the cares of life were bearing heavily upon her. Her responsibilities were heavy and her work arduous. Her headaches and general collapse were nature's rebellion against the outrage being daily committed against her weak physical organization. But her suffering was great and she needed help.

Her physician had already recognized the harmful effect of the narcotics, sedatives, purgatives, etc., which were being demanded more frequently, and were used each time with less efficacy.

At half-past six o'clock I went with her physician to see the girl, suffering with an intense headache, nervous, etc. I told her I could rub her head with a medicine that I had and relieve her headache, and that she would go to sleep.



She readily went under the influence of my suggestions, was easily hypnotized, and I suggested that her head was getting easy and her nerves getting steady, and quiet, and strong, and repeated this suggestion a half dozen or more times, ending by saying that by the time I counted ten she would be perfectly easy from head to foot—that her nervous equilibrium would be completely re-established.

We allowed her to sleep until after my lecture, and returned at half-past ten o'clock to find her asleep. She awoke at my suggestion perfectly easy, thoroughly relaxed, in a copious perspiration. I directed that she be rubbed off gently with a dry towel, drink a glass of malted milk with two eggs in it, and drink all the water she wanted. She drank two large glassfuls, and then I directed that she shut her eyes and go to sleep, and sleep soundly all night. No, I did not hypnotize her again, for I had suggested in the hypnotic state that she could go to sleep after I awakened her, and every night after that whenever she decided to do so.

Her physician telephoned me that he called on her at seven o'clock the next morning to inquire about her condition, but she had gone to her post at the telephone office. I answered him that was cruelty to animals, for she should have rested that day. What she really needed was shorter working hours, better pay, and more time to devote to outdoor exercise, reading, recreation, etc. But she was in the "mill," to have her life ground out of her to enlarge the dividends of an enormous corporation—to be used like corn that is ground to be made into bread.

If the medical profession expects to be held in the esteem of the public which it so eminently deserves, the physician as an individual should speak out upon these questions that concern the welfare of our fellowman, not alone in hygiene, dietetics, sanitation, etc., but upon any and all problems that influence the health and happiness of the individual.

#### ILLUSTRATION 4.

**Psychoneurotic Paralysis.**—Mr. F. E. H., by occupation cotton buyer, aged 58. His history was that ten years before he was

taken with an apoplectic seizure and was supposed to have a thrombus, as he was unconscious for several weeks, and his arm and leg on the affected side were more or less completely paralyzed.

He was sustained by rectal alimentation for several weeks, but could swallow liquid food after six weeks or two months; after six months gradually began to regain the use of his arm on the affected side, and after one year began to hobble with crutches, dragging the affected leg.

He was then taken with acute sciatica and confined to his bed for one year longer. At the time I saw him he had been dragging his foot on the affected side for eight and a half years, but was able to get about with the aid of crutches.

During this time he had tried every available method of treatment offered in hospitals, sanitariums, health resorts, etc., as well as some of the modern cults that use suggestion without hypnotism in disguised forms.

Hypnosis was induced and suggestions made with a view to implanting sense impressions, impulses, or to inducing a self-consciousness of ability to use his leg. When I held the leg up while he was hypnotized and suggested that he would allow it to remain, he held it up without trouble. He then acted upon a suggestion to lift it up, to bend it, and finally I had him walk around in the room while yet in the hypnotic state. It was then suggested that he would wake up and would find that he could walk as well as he ever did in his life. It was really amusing to see him find himself using the leg which for ten years he had been unable to lift from the ground.

I have treated over a dozen similar cases in patients who have put aside their crutches and walked with perfect ease. The suggestion given is that the limb is getting stronger and stronger, that the normal control and use of it is returning, etc. Repetition and iteration, iteration and repetition, are very necessary in some cases to make a suggestion or suggestions effective.

#### ILLUSTRATION 5.

**Persistent Vomiting.**—A gentleman, aged 58 or 60, had typhoid fever for three weeks. He had vomited all food taken for forty-

eight hours, and was nervous and weak, and his physician had used every available means to relieve his uncontrollable emesis. In the hypnotic state I suggested that his nerves were getting quiet, and steady, and strong, and repeated this suggestion several times; that all nervousness or weakness was going away; that his stomach was getting stronger and stronger, easier and easier, and that by the time I counted ten all sickness, or nausea, or irritability, or weakness about his stomach would be gone, and he could retain milk, liquid nourishment, and water, and would enjoy them.

I also gave him suggestions to give him a good night's sleep, etc. We allowed him to sleep about twenty minutes, and upon awakening him allowed him to drink a glass of fresh buttermilk, which he retained and seemed to enjoy, remarking that seemed to be the only thing that had tasted right to him since he had been sick. He continued to take milk or some form of liquid nourishment, and was not troubled further with sick stomach. He slept well at night and made a safe recovery.<sup>1</sup>

I recall several cases in which well-known physicians have relieved persistent, uncontrollable vomiting by hypnotic suggestion. There is more or less neurotic, or hysterical, or neurasthenic element in all acute diseases, which can and should be controlled by suggestion, with or without hypnotism, whichever seems indicated. In pneumonia, typhoid, and malarial fevers, the acute infectious diseases, etc.—in fact, in any case that comes into the hands of the physician or surgeon—the psychic factor should never be overlooked.

### ILLUSTRATION 6.

**Psychoneurotic Indigestion.**—Indigestion is always accompanied by a neurotic element, with insomnia, nervousness, etc. In numerous instances I have relieved these cases of all distressing symptoms by a single treatment. In general, suggestions should be given to quiet off the nervous element in the case, to give more plentiful and refreshing sleep, to get the individual to eat, drink, breathe, and exercise properly, as well as to encourage function.

<sup>1</sup> This book is written with a handsome fountain pen presented by that gentleman's son, a prominent jeweler of his city, who said, "When you use it, remember we feel grateful and consider that you saved father's life."



As seeing some one sucking a juicy lemon will increase the salivary secretion, so will sense impressions increase the functions of the stomach or any other involuntary function.

A young man, aged 24, had a "stricture of the esophagus" for over two years. He had lived all the while on milk, soup, etc., taking no solid food during this time. He had an enormously dilated stomach, due to the large quantities of milk he had ingested. He had been treated as an invalid during the entire two years or more, and this itself was a constant suggestive influence to keep up his peculiar psychic condition.

The day I treated this young man his physician, a most capable and excellent gentleman, had invited two consultants with the view of deciding the advisability of making an exploratory incision to find out the cause of the supposed esophageal stricture. I happened to be honored by an invitation to express an opinion in the case, and in a few minutes after I had the liberty of dealing with the young man I had him eating bananas and drinking water as rapidly as any one. A few minutes devoted to hypnotic suggestion was all that was necessary. After awakening him I advised a diet of eggs, bread and butter, and vegetables, with meat once a day, and suggested that the young man be put to work. When heard from two weeks later he was hard at work and eating anything, except milk and soup, upon which he had been nourished for the past two years.

#### ILLUSTRATION 7.

**Another Psychoneurotic Condition.**—A lady, aged about 42, had been in the Johns Hopkins Hospital for several months, and had also been treated in southern sanitariums. Several operations, mostly of a gynecological character, had been performed. The nervous element in her case, for which she had been operated upon, was only aggravated after her return home, and for over two years she had occasional paroxysms of headache, indigestion, hysteria, insomnia, etc. Her physician explained that it usually took about two days for him to get her relieved, and then two days longer to get her over the effects of the therapeutic remedies he had used to relieve her terrible seizures.

She was hypnotized and allowed to sleep two hours, and suggestions were given to relieve the nervous element in her case, to give her more plentiful and refreshing sleep, to relieve her headaches, to get her to breathe deeper, drink water freely, and aid her digestion. It was also suggested that her nerves would always be quiet, and steady, and strong, and that she would never have another attack. She awoke from the two hours' sleep completely relieved. Five years later she had experienced no more trouble.

### ILLUSTRATION 8.

**Obstetric Anesthesia.**—N. E., aged 22, primipara. Called at nine o'clock in the morning and found patient with light pains and os open the size of a twenty-five-cent piece. Hypnotic state induced, and suggestion given that when I came to see her again when labor was well established that she would close her eyes and go to sleep, and feel no pain. At ten o'clock in the evening I was called, and when I told her to close her eyes and go to sleep, and made other suggestions to get her into a deep state of suggestibility, she easily went into the hypnotic state and was completely amenable to suggestion.

She would extend her hands to receive help from an assistant and bore down with every contraction, but her expression showed no evidence of pain. She did not get nervous, and did not know when the child emerged until I told her to wake up and look at her baby.

### ILLUSTRATION 9.

**Nocturnal Enuresis.**—A little factory girl, aged 16, arose at five o'clock in the morning and returned home at seven o'clock in the evening. She was about the size of an average child of 11, had been to school but two or three months in her life, and the enuresis had been constant for over two years, but she found no trouble in holding her urine in daytime when awake.

I had a talk face to face with her father and mother, in which I made every effort to burn into their consciousness the enormity of the crime that they were committing in selling their child's

brain, and blood, and muscles for a price. Then I explained kindly to them the importance of air, and sunshine, and outdoor exercise, and wholesome food. I should like to have had the owners of that factory take their part of the medicine, and the state authorities also, for permitting such a crime to be inflicted upon children. After this private lecture to the child's parents I induced hypnosis in the child, and suggested that she would take exercise night and morning, and breathe deeply; that she could never urinate lying down again, that the urine just would not come, and that her bladder would not let it pass until she got up to use the vessel. I also gave suggestion to relieve the nervous element in her case.

Quite frequently I have had one single treatment relieve a case of bedwetting by suggestion in the hypnotic state. This little girl was heard from several days afterward, and had had no further trouble.

In a number of instances I have instructed the parents to rock their children from two to six years old to sleep, and to suggest to them, while going into a natural sleep, that they would wake up and call them when they desired to urinate, that they positively could not wet the bed any more, that without thinking about it they would call their parents or get out of bed on their own accord and use a vessel. In a number of cases the result of this treatment has been highly satisfactory.

### ILLUSTRATION 10.

**A Retroverted Uterus and its Accompanying Neuroses.**—"Good morning; what seems to be the trouble," said I to a negro girl, aged about 30.

"Got de fallin' of the womb, Doctor."

"How do you know that is your trouble?"

"Doctor Blank said that was what was the matter with me."

"I see; how long has Doctor Blank been treating you?"

"Off and on for five months, Doctor."

"And what has he done to relieve your womb trouble?"

"Put some medicine in my womb on an instrument with some

<sup>1</sup> I was at the time living in the South.



cotton on it, and put some cotton rolls to hold my womb up, and gave me medicine to take every three hours."

"Do you ever use a hot douche—use hot water with a syringe?"

"Yes, sir; I use that layin' on my back for fifteen minutes twice a week."

On examination I found a decidedly retroflexed and retroverted uterus, bound down by adhesions, with heat, pain, and tenderness, and her general temperature was 100.5° F.

"Have you been able to work any at all for the past several months?"

"Powerful little, Doctor. I tries to do the cookin' for a small family and only cooks two meals a day, but I gets awful tremily and weak, and I don't sleep at night."

This woman was neurasthenic, suffering with insomnia, but little appetite and poor digestion, anemic and improperly nourished.

She needed her time to make a living; to give her scientific gynecological and surgical treatment was out of the question, for the facilities were not at hand in that locality to care for such patients. I attempted to lift the uterus from out of its impacted position, having put the patient in the knee-chest position, and applied a Hodge-Smith pessary to hold it. Yes, I displayed bad judgment by attempting to use a pessary in that case, but the woman needed help, and this was a step toward giving her a little more permanent relief than the continued use of the tampon. My effort to correct the displacement and introduce a pessary gave her much pain, and caused her to be extremely nervous, whereupon I hypnotized her and she went into a profound state of suggestibility.

Here was an ignorant colored woman, and my suggestions to her were about as follows:

"Now, Mary, you are sound asleep. Sleep on quietly and get the benefit of this treatment. As you lie here (stroking her forehead) your nerves are getting steady, and quiet, and strong all over. All nervousness and weakness is going away, and your nerves are getting steady, and quiet, and strong all over. By the time I count ten your nerves will be steady, and quiet, and strong from your head clear down to your feet. One, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten, and your nerves are steady,

and quiet, and strong. You are perfectly easy and comfortable all over.

“Now, as you lie here and as I stroke your abdomen you feel all pain, or soreness, or tenderness, or congestion about your womb and ovaries going away. The blood vessels that carry blood to your womb are shrinking and drying up, getting smaller and smaller. After this, every minute, and every hour, and every day you will become stronger and stronger, the blood will circulate freely in your stomach, and you will be hungry and enjoy eating, and your food will be digested, and you will get stronger and stronger every day. You will drink water freely, a glassful at least every two hours. Your kidneys, and liver, and bowels will act freely. Your bowels will move every morning after breakfast. Whether you feel like it or not, you will go to the toilet after breakfast and your bowels will move freely.

“You will have no more pain; be easy, sleep well, enjoy eating, and improve in health every day. Whenever you think of yourself, you will find that you are getting better, growing stronger, that you are perfectly easy, and you will not be troubled any more.”

Do you ask me if I had confidence in those suggestions to believe that they would be effective? I answer that question by saying that I had sufficient desire to benefit that poverty-stricken unfortunate outcast for me to exercise the will to give the suggestions that I wanted to be effective. The confidence was all on her part. She had had faith enough in me to save the whole of the previous week's hard-earned money and send it to me, with a request that I come to see her, “please.”

I easily awakened her from the treatment, with the parting suggestion, “you will get better every day now, Mary.”

I fully intended calling to see her again after two or three days, but the pressure of my professional engagements for the following week caused me to forget her until about ten days afterward. Then I thought to myself that I had treated her kindly, and, if she wanted me, I should have been notified.

Eleven and a half months after that visit I received a call to another house in another portion of my town, and found a colored

girl suffering with malarial fever. As I removed the thermometer from her mouth I remarked, "I have seen you before. Where did I see you and what was your trouble then?"

"You done 'forgot me, Doctor? Nobody ever did do as much good for any one as you did for me with that one visit you made me most a year ago."

Further questioning recalled to my memory that this was the girl whom I had hypnotized nearly a year before. I had often reproached myself for the unscientific procedure in attempting to use a pessary under such conditions and of my neglect of the case afterward. I had supposed that she or some physician had removed the hard rubber pessary and that was the end of it so far as I was concerned.

"Why, girl, have you worn that instrument all the while and did not consult me about it? Don't you know that is liable to do you great injury?"

"Fo' God, Doctor, I ain't had a speek of pain since you walked out of that house, and I been d'in' my work regular up to yesterday."

On examination I found that the pessary was transversely across the vagina, with the uterus sharply retroflexed over it, acting only as a foreign body, but that all congestion, soreness, tenderness, hyperplastic condition, etc., were gone. A very careful examination proved that there was no erosion or ulceration caused to the parts by the instrument, which had served to keep up a most unsanitary condition. Sexual intercourse, she informed me, had not been painful in the least, but, on the other hand, was attended with normal gratification, whereas the act had been intolerable prior to my first visit.

I removed the pessary and gave her another treatment by hypnotic suggestion, suggesting to her that she would never have the slightest pain or inconvenience from her womb after that, since the instrument was removed. Her malarial fever rapidly yielded to treatment by calomel and quinin, and when this woman was last seen, about two months afterward, she had experienced no more inconvenience.

After that experience, ten or twelve years ago, it fell to my lot



to treat a great many gynecological cases, the majority of which, on account of poverty and lack of necessary facilities for radical surgical intervention, were treated conservatively.

I recall a number of cases among both whites and colored where I have relieved by hypnotic suggestions all the painful and nervous symptoms accompanying a retrodisplaced uterus.

These poor unfortunate women, who did not have money to afford radical, scientific surgical and gynecological assistance, were enabled to meet all the exigencies of life and be comfortable and happy, carrying a dislocated organ whose reproductive function was not a necessity to their happiness.

As showing the far-reaching effect of hypnotic suggestion in a class of cases usually not considered amenable to benefit by psychological methods of treatment, I report the following three cases:

#### ILLUSTRATION 11.

##### **Urethritis with Bloody Micturition, Insomnia, and Pain.—**

Lillie H., aged 19, married four months, last menstruation six weeks ago. Suffered with painful urethritis, causing her to cry out when she voided her urine; passed blood from urethra or bladder when she urinated, which appeared in small clots and shreds in the vessel; suffered constant pain, for which she had had a daily hypodermic of morphin for a period of one month. During this month she had taken the usual sedative diuretic remedies, and the pain had constantly grown worse, and the blood in the urine had gradually increased in amount. The patient wore a distressed countenance, had but little sleep, and when seen was seated on the bed crying and writhing her body from one side to the other, and was a picture of perfect misery and distress. Examination of the womb found it in normal position—a little enlarged, as would have been expected. Diagnosis—congestive urethritis due to reflex disturbance caused by impregnated uterus.

The hypnotic state was induced, and proper suggestions were made for relief of pain and cure of all congestion in or about genito-urinary organs. (Note that this was my first visit after this condition had lasted one month, and she had constantly had

the hypodermic of morphin all the while, thus complicating her case by making her a morphin habitue.)

Second visit, eight hours later on the same day, found patient easy, but still discharging blood. Would not permit treatment by suggestion, as she begged for morphin. Did not sleep that night, as she had no suggestion to that effect and morphin had suddenly been withdrawn.

Next day she was placed in a deep hypnotic state, appropriate suggestions were given, and she was allowed to sleep four hours; awoke free from pain, and nerves quiet. Treatment by suggestion on same afternoon. Slept well that night, and after that she suffered no more inconvenience from either nervousness or pain. At the end of one more day all pain and bloody discharges were gone, the patient was happy, strong, and with good appetite. Two days later the same, and four weeks later the same.

### ILLUSTRATION 12.

**Menorrhagia and Anemia Accompanying Large Fibroid Tumor of Uterus.**<sup>1</sup>—Woman, aged 48; has large fibroid, profuse menorrhagia for fifteen weeks, greatly emaciated, anemic, constipated and weak; pulse, 140; respiration, 60; temperature, 102° F. Passing clots as large as a hen's egg, and when seen was the picture of distress, with no appetite, very nervous, and unable to sleep; suffering also with a remittent malarial fever.

Her case seemed to me to be one in which, at best, life could not be expected to last longer than a few days. Treatment—calomel, followed by salines, and 15 grains of quinin sulphate daily for the malarial element in her case. Deep hypnosis was induced at my first visit, and proper suggestions were made to restore sleep and relieve nervousness, regulate her bowels, to stop hemorrhage, to aid digestion, to give appetite, and to build up hope, and to change her intuition or belief that she was going to die into belief that she would get well.

From the first treatment by suggestion her nerves were quiet, her sleep was refreshing and plentiful, her appetite was good, and

<sup>1</sup>The facts in this case can be substantiated by a prominent southern attorney, upon whose farm this colored woman resided.

her heart beats slower and stronger, and breathing easier. After four treatments by suggestion the menorrhagia had entirely stopped. She was then put on a tonic. Two years later she was in good health, with her fibroid growing smaller.

### ILLUSTRATION 13.

**A Unique Case.**—A patient, aged 15, with acute gonorrhœa and badly swollen prepuce, had not urinated in thirty-six hours. His bladder in lower part of abdomen felt like a large cocoon. His pain and suffering were intense. The meatus had in it a large drop of characteristic yellow pus. He had used a hot water hip bath for the relief of his trouble, but without success. To use a catheter would mean to push the disease back into his bladder, giving him gonorrhœal cystitis. Hypnosis was induced, and suggestion made that when he awoke he could urinate freely.

On awakening he expressed the desire to urinate, "oh, so bad," and in one more minute a forcible, but small, stream began, lasting five minutes. I then gave him a prescription for his gonorrhœa, and he went home happy and free from pain. Ten days later he was seen and the case was progressing nicely.

### ILLUSTRATION 14.

**Another Unique Case.**—A physician said to me on one occasion, "Can you hypnotize this boy so that I can catheterize him." He had acute gonorrhœa, and was having a catheter used twice a day in order to relieve his full bladder, which he was not able to relieve in the usual way. Hypnosis was induced, and suggestion given to relieve the psychoneurotic element, and when he awoke he urinated without catheterization and continued to do so thereafter.

### ILLUSTRATION 15.

**Morphin Habit.**—This was a patient of one of the best known physicians in the South. Her ovaries had been removed, cervix and perineum repaired, but the operative procedures had only



aggravated the neurotic symptoms that they were intended to relieve. In addition to the aggravated nervous symptoms, she had a pain in one side, which had appeared as a result of adhesions, and to relieve this the administration of morphin had been instituted and continued for several months or more. The pain had subsided, but the demand for the continued use of morphin was imperative—at least from this lady's point of view. Five or six months had elapsed since the beginning of the habit, which was now well fixed.

The patient lived forty miles distant, and was ordered to come into the city. Her physician explained to her that I had a treatment which would relieve her of the morphin habit without inconvenience, and both she and her husband consented to co-operate with our plans. She was given the following dose as the first of four doses:

℞ Calomel .....	1 grain
Resinous podophyllin .....	$\frac{1}{2}$ grain
Extract of nux vomica.....	$\frac{1}{2}$ grain
Powdered extract of cascara sagrada.....	1 grain
Alolin .....	$\frac{1}{2}$ grain
Misce et fiat capsula No. I.	

This dose was given in a capsule every two hours for four doses, beginning at two o'clock in the afternoon, and the patient was allowed to have her usual hypodermic of 1 grain of morphin that evening.

The following morning she was given two drams of rochelle salts every hour until copious watery evacuations were produced, and this was directed to be given without regard to the action of the purgative dose administered the previous day.

Thorough elimination of the by-products of morphin must be secured as well as the getting rid of all retained excreta due to the continued use of morphin. At 11 o'clock the next day a warm bath was ordered, warm enough to secure thorough relaxation, and the drinking of copious draughts of water was also insisted upon for eliminative purposes.

No more morphin was allowed after the dose the day previous. When thorough elimination is secured in this way, morphin can be abruptly withdrawn without any inconvenience to the heart's

action; in fact, the patient is less apt to die without the morphin than with it, provided the nervous element in the case is cared for, and this can be controlled by suggestion.

At noon on the second day, after copious actions of the purgative given the day previous and a saline had been given, and a warm bath had been administered, the patient was hypnotized and allowed to sleep for three hours. It was suggested that her nerves were steady, and quiet, and strong, and that her heart would beat strongly and regularly; that every minute and hour after that her nerves would get steadier, and quieter, and stronger; that she would enjoy her meals, feel hopeful, optimistic, and cheerful, and after that would have an antipathy for morphin or any form of opium; that she would breathe deeply, drink water freely, and take an interest in the affairs of life as she had not done in many months. It was suggested that at bedtime she would take three drops of a placebo prescription and go sound asleep, and sleep soundly all night, and awaken every morning feeling refreshed and well rested.

After three hours' sleep she was awakened and ate a luncheon of milk, bread, and butter, and at once took the train for home, forty miles away. Five days afterward I went to this lady's home town, where her husband had gotten the physicians interested in my class work, and instructed a class of physicians at that place, allowing the husband of the patient to be present. She was then sleeping, eating, and doing well in every way.

Twenty-seven days after the withdrawal of the morphin, in response to a letter of inquiry, I learned that the patient had experienced no more inconvenience, had slept well, enjoyed eating, gained in weight, and was happier and better in every way. "But," said he, "yesterday my wife overexerted herself and I used a hypodermic of  $\frac{1}{4}$  grain of morphin last night, the first that she had taken in twenty-seven days." The only thing left for me to do was to write to him and express my regret that he had acted so unwisely, and urged him to use reason, castor oil, epsom salts, hot poultices, bromids, or do anything else except to deliberately start her on morphin with an already acquired predisposition for the drug.

To educate an individual in the principles of psychotherapy is

one thing, but to get him to exercise the force of character sufficient to apply these principles is something else.

### ILLUSTRATION 16.

**Chronic Indigestion.**—A country editor, aged 34, had for several years suffered from indigestion, and in two years he had not eaten meat for supper without spending a restless night and having little sleep, followed by no appetite and a bad headache the next day.

He was hypnotized, and suggestions were given to encourage a freer flow of blood in his stomach, to stimulate the cerebral centers that influence this important organ and also to quiet the nervous element in his case, get him to breathe deeper, and drink more water. Upon awakening him I advised that he eat some of everything upon the table at his boarding place that evening. "But suppose it makes me sick," asked he. "Then I will pay your doctor's bill," was my reply. "Suppose it kills me?" "I'll buy your coffin and pay your burial expenses," was my answer.

Then addressing him, I said, "Mr. Blank, go and eat as much of everything you have on your table as you desire and especially eat meat, and come tomorrow and tell me how you are feeling." The next day he returned and said he had eaten a hearty supper of pork sausage and broiled beefsteak, and never had a better night's sleep or felt better in his life. I laughed and in a friendly way advised him to eat as much of everything as he wished in the future, except printing presses and newspaper editors. Several days afterward he was cheerful and happy, and had experienced no more difficulty.

It is interesting to me to see the skilled laboratory chemical analysis of the gastric contents, made by some of our physicians, and the diet and medication prescribed according to indications in the light of the teachings of modern physiology. It is beautiful work, requires great skill, and proceeds upon exact scientific basis, and I hope some day to be equipped to do such work myself in order to more scientifically report the results of psychological methods of treatment, but my confidence in the brain plasma and its



influence over the physiological processes is such that these methods, in the large majority of cases, seem to me to be quite unnecessary.

In gross pathological changes, however, due to destructive processes, malignant stomach affections, etc., there is presented quite another aspect of the subject, and these methods throw a wonderful light upon the case at hand. We must, however, be careful not to fasten upon our patient by the unconscious use of suggestion a psychopathological condition instead of relieving him of a psychoneurotic disturbance.

### ILLUSTRATION 17.

**Subacute Sciatica.**—A man, aged 45, was confined to his bed with acute sciatica for several weeks, and for five or six months following had used crutches, unable to bear his weight on the affected side. His physician had invited some of his professional friends to witness the treatment of this case.

The history of the case, the time that had elapsed, the rational therapeutic measures, etc., that had been employed, together with the symptoms at hand, convinced me that the severe pain, insomnia, and functional disturbances were unduly aggravated by the prolonged attention that had been given to them by the patient, which had created sense impressions that reproduced themselves in the peculiar mental state exhibited by him.

There is always a tendency for the nervous system to retain an impression after the cause which gave it birth has passed away. This proved to be true in this case of sciatica. The patient was hypnotized, and suggestions were given to relieve his pain, to quiet nervousness, restore sleep, and re-establish the function of the disabled limb. The man, while in the hypnotic state, was persuaded to use the limb, and, when awakened, stamped his foot on the floor, walked, jumped, hopped on the affected limb, and then turned in all seriousness to the physician and said he was easy for the first time in five months. After seeing him three more times on each of the following days successively, he went to his work. This

man was a carpenter and appeared in no sense to belong to the hysterical type, yet this was a psychoneurotic condition.

### ILLUSTRATION 18.

**Bronchitis, Asthma, Pneumonia, Etc.**—A man, aged 50, had had chronic bronchitis for fifteen years, with occasional paroxysms of asthma. He now had acute pneumonia, affecting only the lower lobe of the right lung, but had a temperature of 104.5° F.; pulse, 135; and rapid respiration also. On the fifth day of his acute illness he had slept but little the previous three nights, and was extremely nervous and oversolicitous about his condition. There was a large element of fear about his case, which gave rise to very bad autosuggestions. These were encouraged by an overanxious family and friends. I had done all within my power to reassure him by suggestion without hypnotism, but to no avail.

Seeing his anxiety so pronounced, and the psychic element in his case so adverse to his recovery, I decided that one more day without a change would mean the death of my patient. Taking in my hand a bottle of some placebo, I said to him earnestly, "Mr. Blank, there is a nervous element in your case that I am going to relieve before I leave you. This medicine, used as I am going to use it presently, will put you to sleep, quiet your nerves, strengthen your heart, and help you to get well. Now, it can't hurt you, but will make you stronger. I will stay with you until you awaken, and you will be feeling better and stronger, and take quite a different view of your condition when you awaken."

A patient in that condition is always easy to hypnotize. This man readily consented to the treatment, and while in the hypnotic state I suggested to him that all nervousness was going away, and that his nerves were getting steady, and quiet, and strong. Then I also suggested that his heart was beating stronger and stronger, and that his hands and feet were getting warm, that the blood was circulating freely all over his body, that all congestion and pain about his lungs were going away, and that his fever was cooling, temperature getting more normal, and nerves, and muscles, and heart getting quiet, and steady, and strong. I suggested that every

dose of the medicine he was taking would quiet his nerves, strengthen his heart, lessen his fever, aid his digestion, and that whenever he thought of himself he would feel that he was getting better, feeling stronger, and going rapidly on to recovery. I allowed him to sleep for twenty minutes or half an hour. When I awakened him I gave him the answer to my question, which was more an affirmation than a question. "You are feeling better, Mr. Blank? This has done you a great deal of good." "Yes, Doctor," said he, "I feel that I am going to get well and have not felt that way before." I then took his temperature and found it two degrees lower than it was thirty minutes previously, and his pulse beats twenty a minute fewer than before he went to sleep.

He slept well that night, as I suggested he would, and his pulse and temperature were better the next day. His temperature never went any higher than 102.5° F. after that or his pulse above 120 a minute. His lungs cleared up on the ninth day.

Two years afterward that man had not had another attack of asthma, as I had suggested on two or three occasions following the first treatment by hypnotic suggestion that he would never have asthma again, that he would always drink plenty of water, the bowels would move regularly every day, and he would sleep soundly, have a good digestion, and always feel better.

It may be pointed out that in asthma there are always functional disturbances due to deficient elimination, causing a general neurotic condition, of which the asthmatic paroxysm is the predominant manifestation, and attracts the greatest attention.

In regard to the use of hypnotism in very sick people suffering with pneumonia and enteric fever, the acute infectious diseases, etc., I have always felt that if I could get the patient to exercise enough self-control to go into the hypnotic state he would be certain to recover. No possible harm can come from giving a patient suggestions to quiet nervousness, relieve pain, re-establish function, and encourage the action of all the brain centers, turning this energy represented by the cells that compose the cerebral cortex to the strengthening of every cell and every function in the body.

Hypnotism is only an intensified, and therefore more efficacious, form of applying suggestion, and it seems to relieve a very sick



patient of a heavy responsibility when you use his psychic powers for him, direct them, and regulate their control over his body rather than keep him on the alert to do this for himself.

There are yet some physicians who believe that suggestion is of value only in hysterical subjects, and that only hysterical people can be benefited. If that be true, then all sick people are hysterical, for there is no acute febrile illness in which the psychic factor does not play an important role in helping or hindering the recovery of the patient.

Remember that there is such a thing as nervous shock, due to sense impressions which give rise to fear thoughts that hold the attention of a very sick patient. The physician who can change these psychic states changes the mental attitude of his patient, encourages all involuntary physiological processes, and helps his patient to recovery.

It is hard to hypnotize an hysterical patient, while, on the other hand, a normal nervous organization always best responds to suggestion and makes the best hypnotic subject. This I have demonstrated and proved to the satisfaction of several thousand American physicians, notwithstanding the opinion of a few prejudiced neurologists, who are self-hypnotized by their preconceived convictions, to the contrary.

### ILLUSTRATION 19.

**Dressing a Painful Wound.**—A man, aged 32, had his foot infected with a gas-producing germ, which caused the leg to swell enormously. To give him the only chance to recover, the surgeon amputated the limb at a point about seven inches below the hip joint and dressed the amputation wide open, not allowing the flaps to close, in order to secure thorough drainage. Large quantities of gauze came away at each dressing literally soaked in purulent discharge, as the infection had extended above the amputation.

The patient's reserve forces were being drawn upon heavily, and his toxic condition left him unable to withstand pain. He did not appear hysterical, but at each dressing of the wound he could be heard crying all over the hospital on account of the severe pain.

He was placed in a suggestible condition, using a placebo medicine as an aid; suggestions were given to produce anesthesia, and the wound was dressed without the slightest complaint on the part of patient.

### ILLUSTRATION 20.

#### **Hysteria, Neurasthenia with Delusions, Hallucinations, Etc.—**

A delicate, high-strung, nervous young woman, with ambition while in college three times in excess of her physical strength. A decidedly neurotic tendency, always oversensitive and morbidly conscientious. This condition had been encouraged by overstrain in education and by one incident after another, which proved to be a shock too great for a nervous system so unstable; yet not more than a normal individual could easily withstand. Finally came an attack of typhoid fever, and when the patient was seen several months later she had for five months been confined to her room with hands and arms fastened, with delusions of persecution, and impersonating one character after another sent down to earth by Prometheus, etc.

She drank but little water, and took only a small quantity of milk for nourishment; her bowels moved only under influence of purgatives; there was constant enuresis, sleep was secured only by hypnotics, bromids, etc. She had a furred tongue, fetid breath, rapid pulse, was extremely nervous, with an excitable, overactive brain, and finally would become exhausted and lie with head hot and bathed all over in perspiration. At my first visit I released her arms, and acted as if I had perfect confidence in her; had her exercise every muscle, breathe deeply, drink one glass of water, and after an hour another glass. I then put her into a light state of hypnosis, and gave suggestions to quiet nervousness, to relieve an overexcitable brain, secure sleep, cure enuresis, correct delusions, create appetite and thirst, to regulate bowels, etc.

Besides releasing her from the fastenings on her arms, all medicine was withdrawn at once, save  $\frac{1}{8}$ -grain dose of protoiodid of mercury, which was ordered to be given at bed time for its general tonic effect. From the first treatment by hypnotic suggestion she became quiet, slept well at night, ate three wholesome meals a day,

had but few delusions, enuresis was stopped, pulse quiet and normal, talk rational, and the whole picture of the case was changed.

After one week she was eating, sleeping, drinking water freely, exercising and resting alternately, practicing deep breathing, and presented every indication of great improvement, while previously she had been gradually growing worse for several months and probably several years. After two weeks' treatment she made up her own bed, swept her own room, took walks in the park, and assisted in the housework, busying herself with fancy work, etc.

The outcome of this case is for only time to decide. The permanency of the results obtained by suggestive therapeuties depends altogether upon the stability of the nervous system. A favorable outcome in a case like this will depend upon our ability to bring about those conditions necessary to physical development—sleep, food, drink, exercise, mental quietude,—as well as directing her habits of thought and action into healthful, normal channels. Yet, the results so far show the possibilities for help even in this unfortunate class of cases.

Sanity or insanity is not to be ascertained by any definite standard. They are terms that can not be defined, for one merely denotes the absence of the other. They are both only relative terms. It is absolutely impossible to find a person of so healthy a mind and body that some form of degeneracy can not be observed. As a well-known psychologist remarked, "No one can be accused of being hopelessly sane." Yet, if an individual is unable to look after his affairs and is dangerous to himself and others, and interferes with society, he may undoubtedly be said to be of unsound mind. At any rate, insanity is not revealed by any one symptom. The change is displayed by everything, both physical and mental. The degeneration affects the body as a whole.

Not every person who is sick, then, should be counted as insane, for all disease affects both mind and body in a degree. There are many people who are insane, however, who, had timely treatment been instituted, could have been completely restored to a normal condition of health in both mind and body. "Treatment," in the sense used in the above remark, involves education,



environment, dietetics, exercise, and employment, and all that contributes to the evolution of the individual.

Suggestions, both with and without hypnotism, in the hands of a thoughtful physician can do much toward bringing about those conditions under which recovery may be rendered possible.<sup>1</sup>

### ILLUSTRATION 21.

**Suprapubic Cystotomy.**—The operation was decided on, the patient being a man aged about 40, who had an infection produced by a catheter being thrust through the urethra behind the bladder into the peritoneal cavity, an abscess being formed, extending above and in front of the bladder. It was the "other fellow's patient," and I had been invited to go with the consulting surgeon to see what could be done for the unfortunate. The surgeon said to the sick man, already in a suggestible condition, due to his anxiety over his serious case, "This is a physician friend of mine, and he will give you chloroform and put you to sleep, and we will do the right thing for you. Do just as he tells you, and he will take good care of you."

With a piece of gauze on the bottom of my hand and with ten drops of chloroform on it, I said to the patient, "Close your eyes, breathe through your mouth, and think of going to sleep. As you inhale this chloroform you will get drowsy and sleepy, and go on to sleep without any trouble." I then exercised suggestion on him, using the formula described in Chapter V (Hypnotism Demonstrated) to induce hypnosis.

With a piece of cotton saturated with water, after the patient was hypnotized, I gently touched the area to be operated on, saying to him, "All feeling is going away; this part is becoming perfectly dead, no feeling in it at all, and by the time I count ten it will be perfectly dead and without feeling."

In the midst of the operation the surgeon asked, "How much of this is suggestion and how much is chloroform?" I answered him by holding the man's arm up and suggesting that he allow

<sup>1</sup>Three years have elapsed since this case was reported. She has entirely recovered, and now presents a normal mind and healthy body, has gained twenty-five pounds in weight, and is a healthy, happy young woman.

it to remain until the operation was completed. We afterward awakened the patient, with nerves steady, and quiet, and strong, as suggested to him, and he stated that he had experienced no pain and felt much better. In this case we used not over twenty drops of chloroform by actual measurement.

Always tell your patient how he will feel before awakening him. That will determine his feeling after he is hypnotized. It is not only what you do and what you say that brings success, but the way you do and how you say it. This is true of the use of suggestion both with and without hypnotism.

In reducing dislocations, setting fractures, opening abscesses, sewing up incised wounds, and numerous other conditions, hypnotic suggestion is applicable. Yet, so much depends upon the environment, for an adverse environment produces a counter influence by unconscious suggestion that is often impossible to overcome. In private practice, however, we have an ideal condition for the application of suggestive therapeutics. It is here that the best results are always obtained, for there is a closer personal relation between the physician and his patient.

#### ILLUSTRATION 22.

**Operation for Adenoids.**—This patient was a little girl aged 10, with adenoids to be removed. She was hypnotized, and the suggestion given that when the doctor examined in her mouth and back of her throat and nose, it would only tickle her a little, that the parts back there were dead, had no feeling in them, and that when I said, "Wake," she would awaken laughing and see some blood come out of her nose and mouth. The operation was done by a well-known specialist, and with perfect success. The little girl did not shed a tear.

#### ILLUSTRATION 23.

**Suggestion in Dental Surgery.**—A young man, aged 24, by occupation a drug clerk, had serious valvular lesions, and cocaine, or chloroform, or ether was positively forbidden by his physician.

At his request I hypnotized him in the presence of three well-known physicians and surgeons, and two large molar teeth were extracted without pain, and he was less nervous after the operation than before he took his seat in the chair. Two of the physicians examined the heart before and after the operation, and remarked upon the improved nervous condition. After inducing hypnosis I suggested that he open his mouth, and, applying a small quantity of an antiseptic solution upon some cotton around his tooth, suggested that all feeling was going away, that his gum, and tooth, and jaw were becoming perfectly dead, that by the time I counted five that entire side of his face would have no feeling in it, and that the dentist could extract the tooth without the patient feeling any pain.

To use hypnotism or suggestion with success in surgery or dentistry, you must have the confidence of your patient. In fact, the best results from suggestive therapeutics in all classes of practice can be obtained only where a perfect confidential relation exists between the patient and the attending physician. For that reason suggestive therapeutics will never be particularly applicable to general hospital work, but in private practice, where the physician is brought into close relation to his patient, an ideal condition is presented.

#### ILLUSTRATION 24.

**Psychical Impotency.**—A young man had been accused by a jealous wife of worshipping a foreign goddess. This he strenuously denied. He, however, on one occasion walked past his home with the lady in question and was observed by his suspecting wife. Though he assured her that his being with her on the occasion was only a coincidence, his assurances did not allay his wife's suspicions, and she then and there demanded that he prove his fidelity by his ability to perform the sexual act. Though the young man was innocent, the psychic effect of being put to so crucial a test so suddenly was sufficient to completely inhibit his ability to meet the demands. Then the exacting wife turned with double vehemence upon the unfortunate husband, and the sense impressions



or suggestions produced by her declarations that she had proof positive of the correctness of her suspicions rendered the poor fellow impotent, in her presence, for a month.

The stability of his home was in jeopardy, and threats of abandonment were made by the wife, who felt that she had been wronged. His physician sent for me, and my treatment for the young man was by instruction and education as to how he should steer himself out of his dilemma. He was also hypnotized, and special suggestions were given to combat the psychic effect of the suggestions that had so completely subdued him. This was on Saturday, and on Monday he reported that the psychic atmosphere of his home had been completely changed and that the treatment was a decided success.

#### ILLUSTRATION 25.

**Insomnia Treated in a Unique Manner.**—"Doctor, I wish you would give me something to make me sleep better at night," said the wife of a hard-working man upon whom the cares of life were pressing heavily.

"Why can't you sleep, Mrs. Blank?" said I.

"Oh, I just toss and roll about for hours and hours, and last night I didn't close my eyes until after one o'clock."

This lady was a great religious character, and I knew this was her most vulnerable point from a psychological standpoint. So I asked her if she believed that if two people agreed regarding any one thing, it could be done for them. "You know I do, Doctor," she answered.

"All right," said I. "Let's agree that you are going to go to sleep right now." I was standing at the foot of her bed, and, looking into her face for a moment, I said in a calm monotone voice, "Just look at me and think of sleep. As you do, your eyes will become heavy, and you will get drowsy and sleepy, and go to sleep. Now, close your eyes lightly and go to sleep, sleep, sleep, sleep. By the time I count ten you will be fast asleep—one, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten, and now you are asleep, fast asleep."

Then, coming up to her, I gently soothed her forehead with a

few strokes on either side with my fingers. "You are sleeping nicely; having a calm, refreshing sleep. Sleep soundly for two hours and then awaken. Your sleep will be restful and refreshing. After this you will be able to go to sleep at any time you desire to do so. Just close your eyes and relax every muscle, and think of sleep, and you will go to sleep and sleep soundly all night, and awake feeling refreshed and rested every morning. You will drink water freely every two hours from morning until you retire at night. You will enjoy your meals, have a good appetite, find pleasure in your work, rest when you get tired, enjoy the companionship of your husband, and children, and friends, and always feel happier on account of the improved condition of your health."

Two years afterward this woman's husband reminded me of this experience. He said his wife had slept well and enjoyed her meals, had no more headaches, and was greatly improved in every way. "Nothing ever did her so much good, Doctor, as that one visit of yours, but we lost our baby with cholera infantum two months ago and my wife is 'just all in,' and I want you to see her again." This was on a passing visit to my home, and I could not see his wife as requested, but I have always felt that I missed a great pleasure in not having the opportunity to infuse into her sad life some of my own strength and optimism by another suggestive treatment.

#### ILLUSTRATION 26.

**A Psychoneurotic Condition.**—A young lady, aged 22, the beautiful daughter of a prominent physician, had not been able to eat any meat, without its causing gastric disturbance, since the death of her mother two years before, and since that time she had been nervous, suffered with insomnia, and lost considerable in weight. I gave her two suggestive treatments, having first secured a suggestible condition. Two weeks later she reported her ease, and had gained in weight, slept well at night, ate all the meat she desired without the slightest inconvenience, and felt better and happier in every way.

## ILLUSTRATION 27.

**Nausea and Vomiting of Pregnancy.**—A physician once stated to me frankly that he had no confidence in anything pertaining to these methods, and could not possibly become interested in a subject that he had so disregarded. He was an excellent gentleman, but, like so many physicians in our profession, had not troubled himself to look into the subject of psychotherapy.

A day or two later he said to a patient of his, the wife of a leading banker in his city, who had suffered with gravid nausea persistently for several days, "If you don't get better, I will bring a physician here who will treat you by hypnotic suggestion."

Her mother, who was present, urged that he do so, and referred to a physician who had relieved her brother, the Reverend Blank, D.D., a prominent educator, of a most distressing supraorbital neuralgia after no benefit had been obtained from other methods of treatment for over two weeks. His patient also urged that I be called in to see her. In his conveyance, while on our way to see this patient, I asked why he desired to use a method in which he "had absolutely no confidence," and had so expressed himself only two days before, when he related to me the circumstance just referred to.

"For this visit she is my patient as well as she is yours, Doctor," said I, "and I expect to get a fine result."

The preconceived mental attitude of your patient is of great psychic significance in determining the results of any kind of therapeutic measures. I had this lady's confidence before I ever saw her, and this was an ideal relation.

After talking with her for a few minutes I turned to her and said I was glad to have the opportunity of demonstrating to Doctor Blank the efficacy of the method of treatment which I was introducing to physicians, and in this particular case it would be a genuine pleasure for her sake, as well as for my own and Doctor Blank's.

I had that lady hypnotized or in a suggestive condition before I suggested that she go to sleep, yet I placed her in a deep subconscious or hypnotic condition and made appropriate suggestions.



She was allowed to sleep twenty minutes, and awoke comfortable; ate some bread and buttermilk, as I suggested, and, as she drank it down, stopped to ask her mother if she remembered that she went to the refrigerator upon her return from her graduating exercises four years before, and remarked that no milk had ever tasted so nice before or since until she got this glass, and she proceeded to drain its contents. Her comments upon that glass of buttermilk reminded me of how I relished nice buttermilk when a boy on the farm, and I asked for a glass and drank to her health, and it was fine, too. I hypnotized my patient, but got hypnotized myself into drinking a glass of milk before I left the room.

That lady ate her evening meal, slept well that night, enjoyed her breakfast, and was out driving the next day. A year later her mother reported to me that she went for several weeks without inconvenience, but after that the destruction of some choice flowers by a stupid gardener brought on the return of her trouble, but "it was never so bad."

### ILLUSTRATION 28.

**Supraorbital Neuralgia.**—The case of the prominent educator mentioned in illustration 27, who had supraorbital neuralgia, was an interesting one, and is worth relating here, as it brings out some important features in connection with the application of suggestive therapeutics, and at the same time clears up some misapprehensions in regard to hypnotism and its application to the higher grades of intelligence. The gentleman in question was the president of a well-known college in his state. When I met him he apologized for his "stupidity," and explained that his case had resisted all treatment for two weeks and was getting the best of him. He said that 25 grains of quinin daily and  $2\frac{1}{4}$ -grain doses of morphin sulphate had been his dose for the past several days, besides using static electricity, hot applications, different standard neuralgic remedies, and all the modern "antis."

"Let me relieve you by suggestion, Doctor," said I.

"What, do you mean to hypnotize me?" he replied, somewhat astonished.

"Yes, get you to take a suggestion."

"But I never thought I could be hypnotized," said he.

"Only weak-minded persons can not be hypnotized, can not be induced to execute an idea or series of ideas, for the lack of ability to exercise self-control, and certainly one can not hypnotize a strong-minded person who does not care to be hypnotized. Of course, you belong to the latter class, but, if you will consent, I will show you what can be done for you."

"My dear sir," replied he, "I will consent to anything that even holds out a hope of relief." We very promptly arranged to give him the treatment, and I left him in a condition supposed to be sleep, having made appropriate suggestions.

Ten days later I saw him again, and he was quick to thank me for the very prompt and efficacious relief given him by the treatment, and said he had not suffered one iota from that condition since I left him. "But, Doctor," said he, "I don't think I was asleep. I wanted to tell you that I was easy before you left, but promised to lie still in the condition as you requested!"

That was just where he consented to act intelligently upon and execute an idea, or take my suggestion. All that is necessary is the intelligent co-operation of the patient. So I repeat again, for I desire to drive this point home, that hypnotism is nothing more or less than getting an individual to act upon an idea or series of ideas, either consciously or subconsciously.

Get out of your mind anything you ever saw on the stage in exhibition of the amusement features of hypnotism. Even there, however, you see an illustration of the subject under discussion. Boys like fun; it is in their line—in accordance with their thought and conduct—and they go on the stage having perhaps unconsciously decided to act upon or execute any idea or series of ideas given by the hypnotist. Your patient does the same thing when he co-operates with you in any ordinary method of treatment.

#### ILLUSTRATION 29.

**Alcoholism and its Accompanying Neuroses.**—Once, in one of our great American cities, a well-known physician telephoned me

to learn what I could do with a case of acute alcoholism. I replied that I had good results in my private practice in such cases, but that it all depended upon the character of the individual.

He wanted me to come at once to treat a patient of his who had been drinking too freely for a week or more, had taken not less than fifteen drinks that day, but was anxious to quit. His patient was a fine man, who proved afterward to be one of the most delightful men I ever met, but he had his vulnerable point and his friends had led him too far.

If I can talk to an individual for a few minutes, I feel the personality of the man sufficiently to approach him with a degree of certainty or with uncertainty regarding results. I suppose this is acquired by experience. Anyway, I was not in this gentleman's presence five minutes before I said to his physician, "Doctor, we are going to get along all right. I am ready to proceed with the treatment." The patient, a business man and capitalist, aged about 48, was nervous, emotional, irritable, miserable, and had suffered with insomnia, anorexia, etc., and just felt that something had to be done for him. Even in the condition described the man was a gentleman, showed that he had a great soul in him, and I could feel that I had in him the elements of a man to use in his own behalf, which he, from inability to express the supreme function of consciousness—the will—had failed to use for himself.

I induced the suggestive state, and allowed him to sleep for three hours, giving him a glass of water at intervals of an hour apart without arousing him from the existing state of suggestibility.

He was then awakened and advised to take a walk for half an hour or more with his wife, a bowl of chicken broth being ordered in the meantime. In the suggestive state I had made such suggestions as would quiet nervousness, relieve soreness in the epigastric region, restore self-confidence, produce an antipathy or hatred for whisky, and arouse the highest element of selfhood into action.

It was also suggested that after his walk he would eat a bowl of chicken broth, and then go to bed and at once go sound asleep; that he would sleep soundly all night, and that, if he became rest-



less during the night, his wife would give him a glass of water and he would go sound asleep again. I impressed on him that he would not wake until nine o'clock the next day, at which time his wife would awaken him. Then, as has been my custom, I told him he would feel rested, refreshed, self-sufficient, and not want whisky any more.

At eleven o'clock the next day his wife telephoned me, in response to an inquiry about his condition, using these words: "Oh, Doctor, he is doing beautifully. He slept all night long, taking water twice, and looks so calm and self-poised this morning. He says he does not want any more whisky, and I never saw him look and talk like this after a spree before."

I saw him only twice more, and talked to him face to face as friend with friend. Several weeks later, when I was ready to leave that city, he came to my room at the hotel, again expressing his thanks, and, like the real man that he was, said, "Doctor, you have helped me more than any one ever did in my whole life. You have given me a new conception of myself, and made me feel in regard to myself as I never felt before."

I had awakened in him a higher self-consciousness or an appreciation of a higher selfhood, and the memory that I have of hundreds and hundreds of such experiences is to me one of life's greatest rewards.

Conversion is suggestion just disguised,  
The new man is the old man hypnotized.

It is a great thing to have confidence in human beings; faith in humanity is faith in God; it is to recognize the divine in human life.

The individual or individuals who have helped me the most in life have been those who were able to discover the germination of a higher selfhood as an actuating impulse in my own life and conduct.

### ILLUSTRATION 31.

**Pulmonary Tuberculosis.**—In a southern town a few years ago the thermometer suddenly dropped and the weather was uncom-

fortably cold. At the hotel a lady from a different state, in a well-advanced stage of pulmonary tuberculosis, was visiting. Cough, cough, cough was all that she could do. Her weakness aroused my sympathy, and I said to her: "Mrs. Blank, I can help you a great deal by suggestion, and would be glad to do so while I am here for the pleasure I should get out of seeing you benefited."

"Why, Doctor Munro, I have consumption. Pray, how could hypnotism help me? This is no imaginary disease."

"Mrs. Blank, you are evidently very nervous. I heard you say you did not sleep two hours in all last night, and I noticed that you ate practically no breakfast this morning."

"Yes," she replied, "I am so weak and nervous I can scarcely walk. This bandage on my hand is the result of an injury received from a fall yesterday. No, I can not eat or sleep, and this miserable weather is terrible on me."

She had a forlorn, downcast look, but I honestly believed that I could benefit her.

"Mrs. Blank," said I, "by suggestion in the hypnotic state I can quiet that irritability of your nervous system, give you a good, refreshing night's sleep, and yet you can relieve yourself by expectorating when necessary in your sleep. Getting a good night's rest, you will conserve your energies and will awaken with a good appetite and strong, quiet nerves. Then, as you eat more, sleep better, and get stronger, I will get you to breathe deeper and take in more oxygen. The increased amount of air will mean much to your general health, for oxygen is a food that many people do not take in sufficient quantities. Along with the influence of more oxygen upon all bodily functions will be an increase in elimination, both of carbon dioxide from your lungs and from a freer activity of all bodily functions."

"In your particular case I have confidence in the benefit to be derived from deep breathing in other ways. Increased function means increased blood supply, and by breathing deeper your lung substance will be better nourished and its resistive powers increased, and your chances to recover strengthened ten to one as compared with the present. There are other ways that sug-

gestion would prove of benefit, but, though you could not understand if I attempted to explain them to you, I feel warranted in saying that I know you will be benefited to a remarkable degree."

"Doctor Munro, I am ready whenever you are, and as often as you see fit to give this treatment," she replied.

Calling her friend, Miss Blank, into a room to be present at the time of the administration of this treatment, I proceeded to put her into a condition of suggestibility and gave suggestions to quiet her nervousness, restore more plentiful and refreshing sleep, inflate the lungs, and, above all, to stir all latent psychic activities into action, to increase her resistive powers, etc.

This young lady present told me that when she was a school-girl Mrs. Blank was a fine singer and had a lovely voice. So at another time, while she was hypnotized, I gave her a suggestion that she was again a schoolgirl, and was going to sing while her friend furnished the music. The song was "The Angel's Serenade," and she sang, too. She reached the highest note in "Hosannah in the highest, Hosannah to his name."

I then appreciated, as I had never done before with any patient, what I had done for her. All that I did was out of kindness and sympathy, but with optimism and faith. There was no money in this case. There was no selfish motive in it.

After four days she had been sleeping, eating, drinking, exercising, and singing as she had not before in years. Six weeks later I learned indirectly from her husband in another town in that state that she had gained six pounds, and was rapidly improving every day.

When I left the town where I treated this lady she thanked me sincerely, and gave me a note which she had prepared to send to me at the train by the porter. In this she expressed her gratitude that she had received through me the ability to eat and sleep, for the relief from pain, nervousness, etc., and ended by saying, "You have put into my life a bit of blue where all before was smoke and eloud."

Four years later this lady was enjoying life and much improved in health.



I shall hope that every reader of these pages may do as much for many individuals who do not need medicine, but do need to have aroused in them a self-conseiousness of dormant potentialities awaiting utilization.

## CHAPTER X.

### RATIONAL THERAPEUTICS IN EVERY-DAY PRACTICE.

**The Rationale of Psychotherapy.**—The foundation of rational therapeutics is in **pathology, etiology, and diagnosis.** We must get at the cause of a malady before we can give the patient intelligent treatment. After we have detected and eliminated the cause, we have made such rapid progress in the treatment of the patient that we are rapidly accomplishing a cure. It is already in sight. The true mission of the physician is to lead the patient to the goal where he can be independent of him. The modern treatment of tuberculosis has illustrated what can be done for the patient by instruction in the art of living, so as to maintain the highest degree of resistive power in the cells of his organism, enabling them to overcome the ravages of the tubercle bacillus, and, as the result of the application of rational, hygienic, dietetic, and educational measures, this disease is lessening every year. The true physician holds no secrets of his profession from his patients. He gives them the benefit of all his knowledge. He strives to make his patient, who is his pupil, perfect in health, even as himself.

This attitude on the part of the physician toward his patient marks the most important step in the evolutionary progress of medicine. Most of the human ills which we are called upon to treat are due to violations of right living. The restoration of the patient to habits of normal living constitutes the highest scientific treatment—it offers cure for the present and prevention for the future. The profession of medicine is outgrowing the mere function of prescribing drugs, and is rapidly taking its place as the science of sanitation, dietetics, education, and hygiene. The profession of medicine began in its infancy by efforts to make the sick well, but to that has been added the effort to secure and maintain the

health of the patient. Such is the function of rational psychotherapy.

Good health—a sane mind and a strong body—is an acquirement. It must be earned by the individual by his own personal efforts, but the average individual has not evolved sufficient intelligence to be willing to pay the price for detailed instruction in the way to acquire and maintain a condition of perfect health. He prefers to pay a man who is willing to dope him on drugs, carve his body, and allow him to live in open violation to the known laws of health. Some are unwilling to pay the price in personal effort to achieve the coveted goal. They prefer to remain victims of irrational living, even positively refusing to conform their lives to the regimen outlined for their restoration and preservation.

Nature's laws are infallible. They reap as they sow, and the harvest is measured by the increase in new-dug graves, by the constantly increasing number of inmates in our insane asylums, and by the weak bodies and imperfect nervous organizations everywhere in evidence. These cases are amenable to treatment by rational therapeutics, as is being illustrated by the every-day practice of the physician who dares exercise the intelligence and courage to make employment of such measures as secure for the patient conformity to the physiological conditions whereby health may be acquired and maintained. But much depends upon the intelligent co-operation of the patient. Some there are who are too stupid to exercise their potentialities in normal lines of thought and action whereby results can be obtained, even after detailed instruction in hygiene, dietetics, exercise, and normal living has been given them. These constitute the incompetents, which will ever be a burden upon society, but they are being reduced just in proportion as the physician can induce them to follow sane, rational, normal methods of thought and action.

Here is a physician occupying the chair of Principles and Practice of Medicine in one of our medical universities. He says to me: "Munro, you are on the right track. You are teaching what we all must recognize as the truth—as sane, sound, rational, common sense, practical knowledge. You are not playing to the galleries—you are making an appeal to the intelligence and brains of the



profession, but the question is, are all its members endowed with that unselfish, broad, altruistic spirit sufficient to utilize and appropriate the measures you are advocating?"

The cases here cited will illustrate the value of the measures outlined as applied to a class of cases where the methods in general use had proven inadequate. The strongest argument in favor of any method of treatment is the practical results that accrue from its administration.

### ILLUSTRATION 1.

This patient was referred to me by a physician of this city. No less than seven college professors, east and west, figured in the treatment of this case. No less than twenty-one physicians, among them surgeons, gynecologists, neurologists, etc., had exhausted their resources in vain endeavor to benefit this patient. She was a young woman who gave birth to a child, and excessive hemorrhage left her very much exsanguinated and weakened. By the time she was getting to a normal condition again she had an acute attack of salpingitis and a year later was operated on. A large pus tube was removed, together with a badly diseased ovary. She then began to have attacks of migraine, which steadily increased in frequency and severity for four or five years after this operation. Then her uterus was anchored, her appendix removed, and the remaining ovary resected.

When I saw her she had been ill for ten years, during seven of which she had been a migraine sufferer, and for relief of the attacks morphin had been employed. At the time I saw her she had been taking morphin two or three times a day for five months, with no let-up in her headache. She was a despondent, miserable, pessimistic, blue human being, with the loss possibly of every hope in life. Her physician induced me to try psychotherapeutic measures in her case, and I want to tell you that I took hold of that patient with a strong impression that I could not benefit her. I made no promises, except to do my best. She had had such marked pathological alterations in her neuron elements that I did not believe that their function could be restored.

After employing psychotherapeutic measures for two months, she

entirely and completely gave up the morphin, and at the end of two more months she had gained fifteen pounds in weight; and now that woman is well, comfortable, optimistic, and happy, and no longer the miserable, despondent being that she was before the employment of psychotherapeutic measures.

The measures employed in the treatment of this case consisted of physical education, prophylactic education, suggestion with and without hypnosis, instruction in diet, hydrotherapy, and gymnastics. Among the methods included in treatment by "suggestion" was the psychoanalytic method devised by Freud, of Vienna, which is but the employment of suggestion pure and simple.

### ILLUSTRATION 2.

Female, aged 33; by occupation a stenographer. Was suffering from insomnia, headaches, constipation, and obsessions, besides a functional disturbance of the stomach. For a long while she had vomited most of her meals as soon as she finished eating them. Appendix had been removed, stomach had been washed out for a long while, and electrotherapeutics, hydrotherapy, massage, and drugs had been employed *ad nauseam*. The diagnoses given her complication were legion.

I told this patient that I would admit that she had all the diseases that she had been taught to believe she had, provided she would co-operate with me in a rational regimen to become a well, strong, healthful individual. She was greatly emaciated, discouraged, and despondent, but co-operated intelligently. After treatment for two months she had gained twenty-three pounds in weight, and had been sleeping soundly for six weeks; had a good appetite, retained her food from the first treatment by hypnotic suggestion, was no longer annoyed by obsessions, and for more than a year has been at her work, with no return of her symptoms.

The treatment followed was the daily employment of hypnotic suggestion for a month and twice a week for the second month, and instruction in diet, exercise, gymnastics, hygiene, and sanitation. She left for her home in a distant state well equipped with a sound philosophy of life, as well as with a well, normal body.

**ILLUSTRATION 3.**

Male, aged 54; by occupation a farmer; mother had committed suicide. He was psychasthenic, suffering from insomnia, obsessions, constipation, and indigestion; was emaciated physically, and had apparently lost interest in everything pertaining to life, except the study of his own symptoms. This man was so weak physically that he could hardly stand a walk of five blocks without appearing exhausted.

After two months' treatment by hypnotic suggestion, and by instruction on almost every line or phase of life, as well as by the enforcement of exercise, gymnastics, and instruction in a sound mental and physical hygiene and dietetic regimen, this patient went home comparatively self-reliant, physically strong, capacitated to take a brisk walk of eight miles, run a foot race, play ball, or do anything incident to the life of the ordinary farmer.

Previous to treatment by me he had been treated by neurologists, stomach specialists, electrotherapeutists, and had also had his appendix removed, having been informed that the disease of this organ was responsible for all of his symptoms. Up to one year after treatment, when he was last heard from, he had attended to his usual duties, and was comfortable and happy.

**ILLUSTRATION 4.**

Female, aged 41; single. Had suffered more or less from utero-ovarian disease for many years, and two years previous to falling under my care had undergone operation, having had her uterus, ovaries, and large fibroids removed, since which she had suffered with headaches, constipation, insomnia, and indigestion. She was psychasthenic and extremely emaciated. After one month's treatment by the method employed in the foregoing cases she was eating, exercising, and sleeping, and had gained several pounds in weight. She went away contrary to my advice, as she could not conveniently remain longer under my care, but continued to improve for two months, after which she experienced a return of some of her former symptoms, and my advice was sought



in the selection of a medical adviser in a neighboring city. Three or four months' continuous treatment of this patient would undoubtedly have prepared her for meeting the exigencies of life and to maintain a condition of reasonably good health.

#### ILLUSTRATION 5.

Male, aged 48; by occupation a farmer; had a sister who died of epilepsy and an aunt who committed suicide. For two years he had labored under the delusion that he was being watched by detectives, and suffered from insomnia, constipation, anorexia, and headaches. He was psychasthenic and weak. He had sought treatment from various sources, and was sent to me by a well-known western surgeon. Most of the physicians whom he consulted told him that there was nothing the matter with him, and this only added to his depression, which was extreme. I informed him that he was a sick man and needed treatment, but that the employment of medicine, or electricity, or massage, which had been employed by other physicians, was not applicable in his case.

After two months had elapsed, during which time he had visited my office daily for treatment, advice, instruction, and education, he went home a sane, happy, self-reliant man, free from all his symptoms. Fourteen months later he dropped in to see me—hale, hearty, and happy—and informed me that had I “condemned him, as had the others, he would be in his grave.” He had gained more than thirty pounds in weight, and was the picture of strength and optimism.

#### ILLUSTRATION 6.

Female, aged 42; married; no children; height, 5 feet 6½ inches; weight 87½ pounds. Menstruation had ceased ten years ago. Was neurasthenic, psychasthenic, and extremely despondent. Had frequently threatened self-destruction. Her other symptoms were those of anorexia, insomnia, constipation, and general psychic and physical weakness. I made no promise to the husband of this patient, who accompanied her from a distant state, but stated that I would do my best for her.

She returned home after a month, having gained five pounds in weight, had good appetite, and was sleeping fairly well; one month later wrote me that she had gained four more pounds in weight, and was finding a comfort and pleasure in life which she had not experienced in many years.

### ILLUSTRATION 7.

Female, aged 34; single. This patient had all the classic symptoms of grand mal and had been the patient of several of the most distinguished neurologists that adorn the list of the American profession. The diagnosis given by them was that of grand mal, and by them all the bromids were employed.

The history of the malady dated back twenty-five years. She had all the characteristics of an overindulged child and a very much underdeveloped personality. Was at first almost unmanageable, refusing positively to co-operate in the measures advised. Suggestions given in the hypnotic state were carried out, and in this way she was induced to conform to the dietetic and hygienic measures outlined. At first her seizures occurred as often as every ten days or twice per month, and two or three hard seizures were followed by lighter attacks. After treatment for nine months she had gone three months entirely free from attacks, exhibited a markedly changed personality, was comparatively pleasant and agreeable, and had acquired habits that were little short of the normal individual.

The value of functional exercises, education, purposeful endeavor on the part of the patient, and a sane dietetic and hygienic regimen in this class of patients, to qualify them for using the normal mechanisms of the nervous system as a means of controlling the function of dissociated complexes, causing the convulsive seizures, are beyond question. Hypnotic suggestion, as a means of securing the co-operation of this patient, was of unmistakable value.

Spiller and Oppenheim have called attention to the fact that many cases exist that have heretofore been diagnosed epilepsy or hysteria which bear not the stigma of either. Just in proportion as rational psychotherapeutic measures are employed in the treat-

ment of this class of cases are we finding out that psychasthenic attacks resembling epilepsy are amenable to treatment, and the number of "epileptics" will decrease just in proportion as correct treatment is employed. The value of psychotherapeutic measures in the treatment of true epilepsy has not as yet been definitely determined. There can be no question of the value of such measures in the development of the normal potentialities or nervous mechanisms of such cases, which have for so long a time been considered hopeless. Time, persistence, and patience are necessary in the treatment of such cases, but the beneficial results to the patient are highly satisfactory.

### ILLUSTRATION 8.

Male, aged 40; highly neuropathic constitution. After a siege of domestic quarrels, resulting in mental and nervous derangements—insomnia, constipation, and hysterical manifestations—was, by order of his physician, fastened with restraint apparatus and taken to a hospital, where he was kept in a room with iron bars and dosed upon hypnotics for four days, but with practically no improvement in his symptoms, when he was brought to my office for the purpose of examination, with the expressed wish that I treat him, under the care of a nurse, at a local hospital.

After spending an hour with my patient, in which time I had succeeded in gaining his absolute confidence, I informed those in care of him that he needed the assistance of a friend as well as a physician, and assured the patient that I would take his part and give him all the necessary assistance without confinement in a hospital. He agreed to acquiesce in my regimen for the amelioration and cure of his condition, and, after a confidential talk to him alone for twenty minutes, I instructed him to go home and return to my office daily for treatment. After treatment for ten days he returned to his work, and up to six months afterward, when he last reported, had experienced no return of his symptoms.

For six weeks prior to the first treatment by hypnotic suggestion this man had slept not more than two hours per day. From the first treatment by hypnotic suggestion he had plentiful and re-



freshing sleep, good appetite and digestion, bowel movements were regular every day, and he was agreeable with all with whom he associated. The treatment of this case consisted of the employment of suggestion with and without hypnosis, and instruction in dietetics, hygiene, exercise, gymnastics, and education along the practical problems of life and the art of true living.

### ILLUSTRATION 9.

Male, aged 42; by occupation a real estate and bond dealer. Had been for two years seeking relief for a severe pain, which annoyed him at frequent intervals, in one side of his head. Besides this annoying symptom, he had for many years suffered from chronic constipation, insomnia, and was, on account of his failure to obtain relief by the various methods of treatment which physicians had employed, very much alarmed over his condition. One physician had had a skiagraph taken in an effort to determine if he had a brain tumor, and this experience had added to his anxiety. He was incapacitated entirely for attending to business, and was altogether quite miserable.

After six weeks' treatment by suggestion, hypnotic suggestion, instruction in diet, exercise, and gymnastics, he was enabled to return to his business entirely free from the symptoms which had annoyed him, and has now, after sixty days, had no return of them.

### ILLUSTRATION 10.

Male, aged 50; height, 5 feet 5½ inches; weight, 140 pounds; by occupation a physician. This person was a brother of the patient described in case 9, who came from a distant state to visit the patient just as he came under my care. This physician was impressed by the "oddity" of the regimen outlined for his brother, and made no hesitancy in expressing his doubt as to the practical outcome of such measures. After watching with interest the satisfactory results which were obtained in a very short time by the employment of psychotherapeutic measures in the case just described, this physician put himself under my care. He had a

history that clearly showed that he had undergone an overstrain in his education before and during his career as a student of medicine, from which he had never entirely reacted. Eight years ago he underwent an operation for a tubercular disease of the epididymis, and had also a cystitis supposed to be of tubercular origin. After the operation mentioned, in the course of several years, he recovered from the tubercular disease, but was left with a contracted bladder, holding not more than an ounce of urine, and, as a consequence, he was compelled to empty his bladder at frequent intervals both day and night. Notwithstanding this impediment, he resumed his professional work.

Eight months previous to coming under my care he had a paralytic stroke, having fallen during the administration of an anesthetic and three days elapsed before consciousness returned. When he came under my care the arm and leg on the affected side were partially impaired, and his memory for names and places almost nil.

His knowledge of the pathology of his condition, and his failure to recover after so long a period, left him psychasthenic and physically incompetent.

After treatment for one month by suggestion, hypnotic suggestion, and by instituting a dietetic, hygienic, gymnastic, and exercise regimen, in which the patient gave intelligent, faithful cooperation, he has made more improvement than in all the previous eight months combined, and, instead of feeling compelled to resign his life to "vegetating" for the balance of his days, he feels qualified to meet the exigencies and responsibilities incident to his struggle for existence as a competent, self-reliant, capable, and normal man, and has for several months followed his practice.

#### ILLUSTRATION 11.

Female, aged 42; married. Had been a sufferer from subacute gastritis for many years, for which medicine, rest, travel, mineral waters, electricity, massage, and hydrotherapy had been employed, together with numerous dietetic regimens, with no benefit. Constipation, insomnia, and other neurasthenic symptoms were in evidence. The temperature of this patient was  $101\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ , specific grav-

ity of urine 1,000, and she was nervous and irritable. She had recently declined a surgical operation for the relief of her stomach disorder, which she was assured would bring the only permanent relief from her symptoms. She was greatly reduced in weight, pale, and anemic, having a sallow complexion, furred and red tongue, an irritable throat and nagging cough, as the result of an excessively acid stomach secretion.

After one month's treatment by psychotherapeutic procedures, in which the measures employed in the foregoing cases were instituted, she has gained ten and a half pounds, sleeps well, is free from cough and throat symptoms; specific gravity of urine is normal, bowel movements are regular every day, skin has lost the sallow, waxy hue, and she is strong, optimistic, and happy.

### ILLUSTRATION 12.

Female, aged 65. Highly cultured—in fact, a victim of overindulgence in the pleasures derived from reading, study, travel, and other modes of a particular type of luxurious living—and in many respects a sensible, practical woman. Since ten years ago she had reduced in weight from 125 to 93 pounds, suffered from nervousness, insomnia, and obsessions, as well as other neurasthenic and psychasthenic manifestations. She had availed herself of the treatment of the leading physicians of her home city, as well as having received treatment by one of the best known neurologists of New York city and a famous physician of Berlin, but she had continued to lose in weight, and to suffer from her various psychoneurotic manifestations, in spite of all that had been done for her.

She came to me as the result of reading a former edition of this book, and was quite willing to intelligently co-operate with my mode of treatment, which consisted of hypnotic suggestion, re-education, instruction in dietetics, exercise, and gymnastics.

After seeing her at intervals of from once per day to once per week for three months, she had gained eighteen pounds, enjoyed a general feeling of well-being, slept comparatively well, and felt stronger and happier in every way. The employment of Jung's association method pointed to many abnormal complexes, all of



which revealed her scholarly character and strong ambition to learn, which no doubt was the cause of her symptomatic manifestations.

No effort was made to go into an analysis of the psychogenetic origin of her symptoms more than to point out to her the necessity of living the simple life, and I also taught her how, as a means of conserving and maintaining the highest possible degree of nervous and mental stability, she could meet the exigencies incident to a normal wholesome life.

I could report many more cases where the employment of psychotherapeutic treatment, embracing the measures employed in the cases here reported, have been attended with gratifying results where other measures in general use had been inadequate.

As to the correctness of the diagnoses in the cases mentioned, they were in accord with the opinions of physicians, most of whom are occupying professorships in medical universities throughout various sections of the United States.

As stated in the beginning of this chapter, **the foundation of rational therapeutics is in pathology, etiology, and diagnosis**, but the trouble in most of these cases was that there had been too much pathology and diagnosis impressed on the patient, and too little regard for practical methods of training him away from the pathology of his condition by the employment of the normal mechanism of his nervous system, whereby his general condition, as well as relief from his special pathology, might be obtained. It is the function of psychotherapeutic measures to so utilize the normal machinery of the physiological organism that the destructive metamorphosis may be arrested, and, as far as possible, repaired. By the employment of these methods for the maintenance of the functions of the entire organism, restitution of the special pathological processes will, in many instances, undoubtedly be the result. Consequently, the method of treatment is not to be limited to the treatment of merely so-called functional diseases, and, when it is skillfully and judiciously employed, it is unquestionably one of the most important therapeutic resources at our command, the value of which we are appreciating more and more as our experience with its employment becomes broader.

In all of the cases reported in this chapter, hypnotic suggestion was freely employed as well as simple suggestion, and instruction in dietetics, hygiene, exercise, and gymnastics. Every phase of the life of the individual patient was freely discussed, and he was re-educated upon every practical problem of life as a means of helping him to readapt himself to his environment. In this process of "re-education" the patient received the benefit of all that could be gained by the psychoanalytic form of psychotherapy, which has been so extensively elaborated by Freud, whose methods are nothing more or less than his way of employing suggestion.

Just a word in regard to the employment of hypnotic suggestion. In no instance do I attempt to deceive the patient. I explain to him what hypnotism is, giving him a lucid explanation of its theoretical basis, as a therapeutic agent, as applicable to his individual case. I frankly and truthfully explain to him that he is not going to sleep, but that by his assistance and co-operation I am enabled to train him into placing himself into a condition of increased receptivity to suggestion whereby his neuron elements are better enabled to conserve the ideas, feelings, and emotions produced as the result of the suggestions employed by me. As all motor actions arise in the emotions, the patient is enabled to accomplish by his own voluntary efforts that which he could not accomplish without such assistance. Hypnotic suggestion has enabled me to dispense with hypnotics in the treatment of insomnia. By the use of hypnotic suggestion, intelligently and judiciously applied, we are enabled to promote sleep, quiet nervousness, relieve pain, encourage secretion, aid excretion, stimulate functional activity, control sensation, aid digestion, strengthen the will, develop latent talents, strengthen the muscles, correct morbid fears, cure despondency, hallucinations, obsessions, and, in conjunction with other psychotherapeutic measures, to prevent certain forms of insanity.

Here I would again repeat that psychotherapeutic measures are not a complete system of medicine, but should be used in conjunction with other therapeutic resources, though often they give relief where other remedies have failed, and often, when used alone, other measures are unnecessary. The measures embraced in the application of the principles of psychotherapy are applicable to

every patient who is able and willing to give intelligent co-operation. In its employment we do nothing more or less than help the patient to make use of the normal potentialities of the psychophysiological organism, and equip him or her to be better enabled to use these mechanisms or nervous potentialities for oneself.



## CHAPTER XI.

### SOME OTHER PRACTICAL POINTS.

Unquestionably the fine art in applying suggestive therapeutics lies in the employment of suggestion without an effort to induce a sleeplike condition. Yet, if the individual can be induced to act upon and execute your suggestion, either consciously or subconsciously, it is by the use of the same method—call it reasoning, persuasion, advice, preaching, education, suggestion, or hypnotism.

Upon one occasion, when I was standing by a cigar stand with two physicians, and holding in my hand a small vial of water, a third physician, a stranger to me, walked up and asked, "What is that in your hand?"

"Liquid electricity," was my reply.

"Liquid electricity; why, what is that and what is it for?"

"It is used locally as an anesthetic to relieve pain, cure headache, extract teeth, and do minor surgery," said I. "Hold out your arm and I will demonstrate its efficacy."

The physician extended his arm, and, rubbing some of the water on the back of it for half a minute, I drew from my pocket a small steel pin, and, holding it between my eyes and his, said to him, "You see this pin. I am going to stick it through a fold of skin on your arm, but you will not feel it. Your arm is perfectly dead, and, if that hurts you in the least, let the physicians present know it. Look at it; here it goes," thrusting the pin through a large fold of his skin.

"Did that hurt you?" asked one of the physicians.

"Not the least bit," was his reply.

Taking me by the arm, the first physician said, "Come back this way, Dr. Munro; come back with us, Dr. Blank." In his office he turned to me and said, Dr. Munro, shake hands with Dr. Blank."

"I want some of that preparation of yours," said he.

When I explained that the medicine was only water, and that I had been talking to the other physicians present about the efficacy of suggestion, he laughed heartily and seemed to appreciate the experience.

Such experiences have been mine in hundreds and hundreds of instances, not only experimental and demonstrative, but also with a direct therapeutic aim. I state this experience in detail to bring out this point—the unconscious use of suggestive methods is the most effective.

In three-fourths of the cases where an individual requests that he be placed in the hypnotic state, we fail to get him into a state of suggestibility sufficiently effective to induce anesthesia by suggestion, but by suggestion in disguise we frequently succeed in a hundred cases consecutively without a failure. A physician in a western city questioned the above statement, as have many other physicians who had to be shown.

On an occasion of my lecture and demonstrations, one physician, after inducing hypnosis, proceeded as usual and induced anesthesia and made other tests. Then another did the same, upon an entirely new subject, to the extent that a large pin was thrust through the fold of the man's face without his evincing the slightest evidence of pain, and he was also made to sustain a weight of two hundred pounds on his body with his head on one chair and his heels on another, to demonstrate the efficacy of suggestion.

At this juncture the physician who had questioned my ability to successfully hypnotize such a large percentage of individuals, asked if I called that hypnotism. "Why," exclaimed he, "you are getting those men to do that through autosuggestion."

"Certainly, Doctor," was my reply.

"Well, why don't you call your work by the right name, and say you are demonstrating and teaching suggestion and autosuggestion?"

Other physicians present, who were men of the highest professional attainments, assured the physician in question that they had never witnessed more successful demonstrations of the efficacy of suggestion, having seen work both in America and Europe by competent men.

The extreme ignorance manifested by some men in regard to the practical and theoretical phases of psychotherapy is pitiful. They expect to find in hypnotism some uncanny influence by which they can dominate and control people without regard to their wishes or knowledge, as has been claimed by every kind of outlandish faker advertising to teach all sorts of absurdities.

The only class of people that we can dominate, as distinguished from simply aiding them to execute an idea or series of ideas, is those of an unstable nervous organization, in whom a consciousness of self-control has never been evolved. Such people are so suggestible that they readily take suggestions put in the form of positive affirmations in the waking state, but for therapeutic purposes they are the least satisfactory patients, although the very ones that most need our help, and the class of cases for whom suggestion is more useful than any other measure.

I have experimented with hypnotism and suggestion in every possible manner, both for amusement, demonstration, and therapeutic application. The more normal, reliable, and strongest nervous organizations have always produced the most satisfactory results, because they could best exercise self-control, and were better able to act upon and execute a suggestion, both consciously and subconsciously. We can treat by suggestion any individual who seeks our services as a physician.

**Never, under any consideration, let a patient suggest to you the kind of treatment you must adopt.**

In the case of unstable and degenerative nervous organizations, the problem is to bring about those conditions that increase their protoplasmic energies, as well as to direct those energies into normal, useful, healthful channels. I have often prescribed a placebo to satisfy the patient, while I only too well realized that his benefit and recovery depended altogether upon my influence upon his habits of thought and conduct.

A neurotic lady, for whom I prescribed a teaspoonful of compound rhubarb and soda mixture at bedtime for sleep, and advised to relax, and breathe deeply and rhythmically for ten minutes when she retired, so the medicine could have full effect, complained that she slept so soundly that she felt "dead all over" the next morning.



I accepted that as evidence of a splendid result of the treatment, but advised her to reduce the dose one-half, drink more water, and take more exercise in open air and sunshine, assuring her that the "dead feeling" was only her "nervousness dying out."

**Never use hypnotism or suggestion for amusement upon any occasion.**

The physicians in the United States who have felt that their practices were injured by their use of suggestion and hypnotism have been those who have given parlor entertainments, etc. I have yet to find a single man who employs suggestive measures in a dignified, conscientious manner but whose success has been augmented both therapeutically and financially.

I can cite some men who have stated to me five years after taking my instruction in suggestive therapeutics that the knowledge derived from the one lesson had benefited them more than a three-months' course of post-graduate instruction. They were men who had not before realized their own worth, and by the lesson in suggestive therapeutics they awoke to a higher appreciation of their personality as a therapeutic recourse.

It has been asserted that a patient who has been frequently hypnotized has been robbed of self-reliance and become so helpless that he must lean upon his hypnotizer for support. On the contrary, I have frequently planted suggestions into the minds of patients that have rendered them so independent, and capable, and self-reliant that they have refused to have further suggestions from me, taking their lives into their own hands, being guided by their own reason, while we remained the best of friends.

A man had been so crazed by a long drunken spree that he became delirious, and rushed out of his house in the dark, ran into a fence, and landed in a neighbor's house, begging him to protect him, his face bleeding from the obstacles he had encountered. Beside his bed was found an iron poker, and on either side of him were respectively a pistol and a large knife. His stomach had at last become his best friend, and given him a chance to end his siege of alcoholic poisoning by rejecting all whisky he attempted to put into it, as well as all medicine given for the relief of his miserable nervous and mental condition. He felt, however, crazed

as he was, that I was his friend, and I did my best to prove worthy of his confidence.

I placed a cold towel upon his forehead, and began my suggestions to hypnotize him by telling him that the cold application would quiet him all over and make him drowsy and sleepy, and that he would go to sleep and sleep soundly all night, and awaken in the morning feeling all right. Though I had secured thorough relaxation, with his eyes closed and with him breathing through his mouth, when I suggested that "this cold towel will put you to sleep and you will sleep soundly all night," he took a deep inspiration and said, "Lord grant it," showing how he acquiesced in the treatment. He was hypnotized, and suggestions were given to quiet all nervousness, to relieve his irritable stomach, to get him to sleep soundly all night, to excite a disgust or antipathy and hatred for whisky, and, above all, to awaken within him a consciousness of manhood and duty to his family.

He slept soundly all night from half-past five in the afternoon until half-past seven the following morning, and, as I approached the front door on my return visit, his wife, whose nervous system had been shattered by such experiences for several years, met me with the exclamation, "Oh, Dr. Munro, do you reckon Mr. Blank will ever wake up?"

"Why, certainly, Mrs. Blank; he is breathing, is he not?"

"Yes, he has been resting nicely, and I was able to retire last night and get some sleep for the first time in three weeks."

Upon awakening the patient in question, who was a large, strong, well-educated, successful business man, I congratulated him upon having a good night's sleep and assured him that he would not care for more whisky, and was going to be a man after that.

That evening I said to him, "Mr. Blank, I desire to put you to sleep again," and, extending his hand, he said, "Dr. Munro, you e-a-n-t do it. I thank you very much for the treatment last night and shall always appreciate it, but I do not expect to touch any more whisky, and I shall get along all right."

I assured him that I was very glad indeed to hear him talk that way, and that for his wife's and daughter's sake, as well as his own, I knew he would feel happier. I turned, however, to an at-

tendant and directed that a placebo capsule (of powdered licorice root) be given at eight o'clock, and, in case he did not sleep soundly by nine, to give a second capsule, suggesting to the patient that he would sleep soundly all night. He refused hypnotic suggestion, but took the placebo capsules and slept soundly.

It is very easy to get an individual to accept a suggestion that is in accordance with his natural desires. Some people do not want to get well. They enjoy the sympathy and attention of an over-anxious family *ad nauseam*. In such cases a suggestion given to set up a reaction may become necessary.

A physician had a pneumonia patient who had insisted that he was going to die on a certain night. The family had asked that another doctor be called in, and that each of them stay on watch during the night.

The attending physician had kindly assured the family that there were no alarming symptoms, and also did all he could to reason with and reassure the patient. Nevertheless, at the appointed time the young man sent for his family and began bidding them good-by, when at that juncture the attending physician walked into the room, where the new recruit had for two hours been on watch.

He was a man who did things in his own way; so he insisted that all the family go out of the room and demanded of the patient, as if he were mad enough to fight, what all this commotion meant? When the young man assured him that he was going to die and could not get well, etc., the wise old physician answered, "Well, die, — you, die and be in a hurry about it; make haste and let me see you." Then placing his hand on his forehead, he called the boy by name and said to him kindly, "I am tired of all this foolishness. You are going to get well. You can't die, it matters not how hard you try. Now, close your eyes and go to sleep, and let me hear no more from you." The patient was relieved of his morbid psychoneurotic condition and made a nice recovery.

A hypodermic of  $\frac{1}{10}$  grain of apomorphin has served the author as a most valuable means of suggestion.

In some psychoneurotic cases a Paquelin cautery, heated to a cherry-red heat before the patient's eyes and brushed with quick light strokes down the spine, proves a most valuable expedient as



a means of suggestion. Hundreds and hundreds of physicians are using the static machine at so much per treatment. Says one, who is honest enough to admit that it is only a suggestive means of treatment: "It matters not what be the trouble, I give them all the same dose."

A man who will exercise the courage to do so, can use suggestion and get results when all such subterfuges are worthless. He can take his equipment with him wherever he goes, and the general practice of medicine is unquestionably the field for its most valuable and effective employment.

In my work among the physicians it has been a matter of observation that psychotherapy is being appreciated just in proportion as culture and education are most in evidence. Its successful employment, as with all other branches of medicine, depends largely upon the personality of the physician. There is no disease or condition where its use is contraindicated, provided the right suggestions are given to help the patient.

If used to benefit the patient, its employment will make friends for the physician. No selfish, cold-blooded physician who is in the practice of medicine solely for the money, and who has his patients' interest not more at heart than the desire to secure a fee, can ever be a successful psychotherapist. It is best employed by the man who is most willing to stand up for his weaker brother—who is most anxious to help his patients to help themselves. Character, which is educated thinking, desiring, willing, and acting, is a valuable asset in the make-up of a physician's therapeutic armamentarium. With such an asset his conduct toward his patients will be governed accordingly.

## CHAPTER XII.

### SUGGESTION AS AN ADJUNCT IN THE ADMINISTRATION OF ANESTHETICS.

In my association with the physicians in the capacity before mentioned I have been interested in all phases of surgical work, and have witnessed operations in many leading hospitals by some of the foremost surgeons of our country, as well as by those of lesser note, and have had the importance of the subject of suggestion to the general welfare of surgery impressed on me by many illustrations in both hospital and private work.

I invite the reader's attention to (a) the efficacy of suggestion to induce anesthesia; (b) the danger to the patient attending the administration of anesthetics; (c) the possibility of better results in surgical work where the minimum amount of anesthetic is used; (d) the efficacy of suggestion as an adjunct in the administration of anesthetics, and the safety of the method to the patient.

(a) As to the efficacy of suggestion to induce anesthesia, I have instructed physicians to follow a simple method of using suggestion to the extent that anesthesia was induced so that a pin was thrust through the fold of the skin in an individual's arm or face, or through his lip or neck, without the slightest evidence of pain. These tests were made under conditions of absolute fairness, the subject for each demonstration being taken at random from the streets, and had not the slightest idea that the results were other than the effect of a placebo (a bottle of medicine) which was used as a means of suggestion.

Among the first group of physicians to give me audience was a dentist, who, within less than an hour after our engagement, extracted teeth for two patients without pain or even the knowledge that the teeth had been removed, having used suggestion for the operation.

Since that time I have had occasion to demonstrate the efficacy

of suggestion to induce anesthesia in dentistry many times, and would occasionally anesthetize a patient, where a favorable psychological situation presented itself, in the presence of one or more physicians in the removal of tumors, sewing up incised wounds, opening abscesses, setting a fracture, amputating a finger, resecting a rib, in operation for empyemia, where the use of ether or chloroform were not justifiable, in operation for adenoids, the removal of tonsils, and in obstetrics.

One physician, to my knowledge, had within five months used suggestion in minor surgery in not less than five or six hundred instances, and hundreds of physicians, who made effort to do so, had success in the application of this phase of psychotherapy far beyond what they had ever expected possible to obtain. Among these were some who had availed themselves of opportunities to witness the practical employment of suggestion in all parts of the world, and had implanted within them the conviction that suggestion was not of efficacy when employed by them.

Of the subjects used for demonstrations by the physicians 99 percent were amenable to suggestions, made by physicians with no previous experience, sufficient for anesthesia to be induced.

(b) Regarding the danger to the patient attending the administration of anesthetics, no satisfactory statistics are today obtainable in reference to the mortality from chloroform or ether anesthesia. Nitrous oxid is not yet practicable for general surgical work, however meritorious and free from danger this agent may be; so my remarks will be restricted to the use of suggestion as an adjunct to the employment of ether and chloroform in the production of anesthesia.

Statistics collected by Julliard show a mortality from chloroform in 524,507 administrations of 161 deaths—rate, 1 in 3,258; and from ether in 314,738 administrations of 21 deaths—rate, 1 in 14,987. Those collected by Gurlt in Germany from 1891 to 1897 show a death rate of 1 in 2,039 from chloroform, and 1 in 5,000 from ether.

My opinion is that the mortality is very much greater than is shown by statistics. Many deaths, no doubt, occur from the excessive administration of ether and chloroform that are ascribed in per-



fect candor to the inadequate physical condition of the patient and not to the anesthetic, and my reason for this conclusion will be fully set forth.

In a city of my knowledge two deaths occurred on the operating table, a week apart, which were reported at the local medical society, and the cause ascribed was the administration of ether (not the **excessive administration of ether**).

In another city two deaths occurred, one each from chloroform and ether, in a period of less than sixty days apart. These four deaths occurred upon the operating table and were directly the effect of the excessive administration of the anesthetic upon the centers presiding over the circulation and respiration.

In another instance of my knowledge an eastern expert was giving a lecture on the administration of ether, and at the same time demonstrating the technic of the method employed by him, before a body of medical men. He was urging the importance of profound anesthesia for the safety of the patient, and was pushing the anesthetic to its full physiological effect to secure the condition desired, when the surgeon in waiting modestly touched him, calling his attention to the condition of his patient—he was dead. This case went on the hospital records as “heart failure,” and the magnanimous spirit of the physicians present did all they could to console their crestfallen visitor.

I have more than once asked in confidence the resident physician in a large hospital, “Do you ever have a death on the operating table from the anesthetic?” and received this or a similar reply, “Oh, yes, I am sorry to say that we do, more frequently than we feel is justified.”

**The immediate untoward effects** of the anesthetic have been most strongly impressed upon me, and this leaves out of consideration the secondary effects or conditions likely to follow as a sequel to the administration of an anesthetic, more especially where used in excess, such as bronchitis, broncho-pneumonia, lobar pneumonia, renal congestion, nephritis and urinary suppression, jaundice, glycosuria, and insanity. These and other results are known to follow the administration of anesthetics.

Whatever else might be said in regard to the physiological ac-

tion of chloroform and ether, they undoubtedly act by arresting the activity of the nervous centers concerned in sensation. Given in excess, they destroy life by paralyzing the nervous mechanism concerned in the circulation or respiration, or possibly in both.

Any drug that is capable of depriving an individual of consciousness and rendering him insensible to pain is a poison, and should at all times be regarded as such. The use of chloroform and ether in the production of anesthesia, administered by inhalation, influences the nerve centers presiding over all bodily functions, and causes degenerative cellular changes in every organ and cell in the body. The toxemia produced in consequence of the administration of these anesthetics varies in severity in different patients, dependent on the amount of the anesthetic administered at a given time, the strength of the drug used, the length of time employed in anesthesia, and the quality of neuron structure in the complex mechanism of the entire physiological organism.

In by far the greater number of surgical patients there exists a general condition of physiological insufficiency or a marked degree of physiological incompetency. Aside from the gross pathologic changes in the local area to be relieved by surgical procedures, the cells of the entire organism do not properly perform their functions.

The predisposing factors which contribute toward fatal results are such conditions as sepsis, anemia, loss of blood, chronic wasting diseases, and any similar condition that lowers the resistive powers of the cells of the organism.

In all such cases less of the drug employed is required to produce anesthesia, due to the existing vulnerable condition of the protoplasmic elements of the organism.

Cells that are already engaged in mortal combat with pathogenic germs, or weakened from loss of blood, or struggling to eliminate toxic material from some of the various morbid conditions which give rise to surgical intervention, in the administration of anesthetics (especially when used in excess of the minimum amount required for anesthesia) are deprived of their fighting qualities, their function is inhibited, activity is arrested—stunned, benumbed, exhausted—poisoned to a degree that renders them unresponsive

to internal or external stimuli; so no wonder the tendency to collapse, surgical shock, or death.

(c) Let us briefly consider the possibility of better results in surgical work where the minimum amount of the anesthetic is used.

The American text book of surgery, on page 1116, says: "Anesthetics act by producing paralysis of the cerebrospinal nerve centers. There is first a stage of cerebral excitement, followed by a stage of cerebral insensibility, then a loss of voluntary movement, followed by a loss of reflex action. Consciousness is lost before the paralysis of the muscles supervenes, and a patient is said to be fully anesthetized when the nerve centers are paralyzed, with the exception of those presiding over respiration and circulation."

It is conceded by the writers of the text books on surgery that the dangers from chloroform are chiefly in connection with the circulation, and are manifested by various degrees of circulatory depression; and that the dangers from ether are chiefly in connection with the respiration, and are manifested by various degrees of asphyxia.

The point that I desire to emphasize by these references is that ether and chloroform are dangerous poisons, and that they are regarded as such by all writers on surgery. The only logical conclusion, then, is that **the least amount of the anesthetic administered to secure complete insensibility is most conducive to the safety of the patient.**

But since it happens that death occurs with comparative frequency in trivial operations with incomplete anesthesia, it is supposed by most surgeons that the giving of too little of the anesthetic is attended with quite as much danger as, if not more than, the free use of the drug employed for the production of anesthesia.

The deaths that occur in the administration of anesthetics when given for trivial operations are due to the morbid psychic factor in those cases, which at the present time is not sufficiently appreciated by anesthetists and surgeons. Fear, an emotion which arises as a result of the analysis of consequences, has a most depressing effect upon the circulatory and respiratory centers, and this, in conjunction with the physiological action of chloroform and ether, given to a patient who becomes alarmed at the bare idea of taking an anes-



thetic, without the proper precautions to secure a favorable psychological attitude on the part of the patient, is likely to produce death in some instances, and in such cases the reason is ascribed to too little anesthetic.

It is possible that death may occur from purely nervous shock. Shock may be defined as a complete suspension of some and partial of others of the functions of the nervous system. The anesthetist who understands the technic of using suggestion in conjunction with the administration of anesthetics will not only avoid the danger from their use in trivial operations, but will minimize the danger from their use in excessive doses in all surgical work, and greatly increase the possibility of good results to the patient from the operation as well.

Success in surgery is determined by the benefit to the patient in consequence of the operation. In my opinion no anesthetist is justified in pouring a large quantity of ether into a closed inhaler every two to five minutes during the administration and placing this over the patient's face so as to exclude all air, as is so commonly done.

Since the anesthetic produces actual, organic, structural changes in the cells of the entire organism, and, in proportion to the amount used, exhausts the patient's reserved energy, the best results from surgery are impossible where the anesthetic is used in excess of what is actually necessary by its most skillful administration.

Observation has convinced me that the amount of the anesthetic employed in a given operation by different anesthetists varies considerably, and that the time required to anesthetize a patient varies even more.

From thirty to forty-five minutes in the administration of ether, the anesthetic most commonly employed at the present time, before complete anesthesia is produced is quite a common occurrence, if not the rule, in the majority of administrations; and when we take into consideration the fact that enormous quantities of ether are used in these prolonged administrations, administered in a closed cone or inhaler that unduly excludes the admixture of air, the wonder is that the mortality from the administration of anesthetics is not even greater than it is, to say nothing of the lasting injuri-

ous effects to a nervous organization, notwithstanding the benefit derived from surgery in the relief of a gross pathologic condition. But what is more important to be considered is the outcome of surgical work in cases of excessive employment of agents so powerful in their effects as to produce catabolism or destructive metamorphosis, with the consequent toxemia which follows, with its disastrous effect upon an already outraged nervous system, as occurs with the present method commonly employed in the administration of chloroform and ether.

However skilled a surgeon may be, or perfect in his operative technic, the results of his work are seriously handicapped where the functions of every cerebral and spinal center is seriously and permanently injured and the resistive power of every cell of the organism is weakened, as is done where an undue amount of chloroform or ether is employed.

Nor are the various compounds of morphin tablets administered hypodermatically to inhibit all functional processes, and, in a degree, to prevent the normal reaction of the patient from the anesthetic administered by inhalation, in my opinion justifiable, except in so far as the procedure is coupled with a suggestive influence that conveys to the patient the idea of safety, and in a measure secures a favorable psychological situation for the use of chloroform or ether. Administered in homeopathic doses, such combinations, while not essential, would be of unquestioned value as a means of suggestion.

(d) Let us now look into the facts bearing evidence of the value of the employment of suggestion as an adjunct in the administration of anesthetics and the safety of the method to the patient.

Alice Magaw, Dr. W. J. Mayo's anesthetist at Rochester, Minnesota, who has, with possibly one exception, anesthetized more patients than any other person in the world, has an unbroken record of approximately seventeen thousand surgical anesthetics without a single death directly from the anesthetic.

No other surgical clinic in the world has been so constantly witnessed by surgeons during the last several years and no other clinic presents a greater number of difficult cases to be operated upon,

or those that are more unfit for favorable results from the administration of anesthetics.

At St. Mary's Hospital, in the personalities of Alice Magaw and Miss Henderson, the anesthetists of W. J. and C. H. Mayo, at Rochester, Minnesota, we see the results from the outcome of surgical work done with the minimum amount of the drug employed for anesthesia, **and the free and intelligent use of suggestion as an adjunct to its administration.**

It was with no small degree of pleasure that, upon a visit to Rochester during the month of November, 1907, I found these women actually putting into practice one particular phase of psychotherapy that I had so strongly urged upon surgeons during the eight years previous.

Both Alice Magaw and Miss Henderson were highly appreciative of that particular part of my lecture to the Physicians' Club of Rochester wherein I urged the importance of the employment of suggestion as an adjunct in the administration of anesthetics, and cited their every-day work as an illustration of complete surgical anesthesia with the use of but little ether, and the employment of suggestion to meet the requirements of the individual patient as an adjunct. Moreover, these women were free to say that they knew from every-day experience that what I had to say in reference to the use of suggestion as an adjunct in the administration of anesthetics was true.

In the *Journal of Surgery, Gynecology, and Obstetrics* of December, 1906, Alice Magaw says: "Suggestion is a great aid in producing a comfortable narcosis. The anesthetist must be able to inspire confidence in the patient, and a great deal depends on the manner of approach. . . . The secondary or subconscious self is particularly susceptible to suggestive influence; therefore, during the administration, the anesthetist should make those suggestions that will be most pleasing to this particular subject. Patients should be prepared for each stage of the anesthesia with an explanation of just how the anesthetic is expected to affect him—'talk him to sleep,' with the addition of as little ether as possible."

By the employment of suggestion scientifically and earnestly,



very little ether is required to produce surgical anesthesia, and even less chloroform, to keep a patient surgically anesthetized.

I do not exaggerate in the least when I assert that it is quite the common occurrence for an anesthetist who does not understand the use of suggestion to use from ten to twenty times the amount of ether in anesthetizing a patient that is used by Alice Magaw and Miss Henderson, who make use of suggestion in every possible way in a given operation.

Nor is the anesthesia where such enormous quantities of ether are employed one iota more satisfactory from the surgeon's point of view than is secured for the Mayos. On the contrary, there is no period of excitement, no struggling of the patient that demands restraint, comparatively little stertorous breathing, no feeling of the pulse, and no hypodermics administered in the course of the operation, and, more yet, an unbroken record of approximately seventeen thousand cases of anesthesia without a single death from the anesthetic.

But the significance of the employment of suggestion as an adjunct to the administration of anesthetics goes far beyond the danger to the patient directly and immediately during the course of the operation. The surgeon who does not have his patient's reserved energies so weakened and exhausted, and the patient's brain and nerve centers presiding over all physiological processes so seriously and permanently injured, as is the case with the Mayos, on account of the employment of suggestion to obviate the necessity of such enormous quantities of the anesthetic, simply has more recuperative power left in the cells of the organism upon which the hope for a favorable outcome from a major operation is based, and surgical operations upon patients with the minimum amount of poison from the anesthetic to combat are unquestionably attended with better results than where larger quantities of the drug are used.

Inherent within the protoplasmic mechanism of the human organism is an untapped reservoir of available energy, which is either utilized by the judicious employment of suggestion for the welfare of the patient, or it is exhausted, perverted, or wasted by the indiscreet use of the anesthetic.

By suggestion intelligently employed as an adjunct to surgery during the administration of the anesthetic, all involuntary physiological processes can be influenced, the normal resistive powers of the patient conserved and utilized, and the amount of shock from a given operation reduced to comparative insignificance.

Instead of the excitement, muscular resistance, respiratory and circulatory disturbance that are occasioned by the usual method of administering anesthetics without the employment of suggestion, where suggestion is properly employed, all these manifestations are absent. Instead of increased neuron activity, which must be paralyzed by large quantities of the anesthetic, the dendritic processes of the neurons are persuaded to retract; both motor and sensory functions suspend, and with the addition of a small amount of the anesthetic "**a comfortable narcosis**" is induced, which answers every purpose of the surgeon from the standpoint of complete anesthesia.

In the article cited Alice Magaw farther says: "From experience we know that a patient can be brought under ether in from three to five minutes, and, when ready, patients do better if the operation is started at once." She here recognizes the psychological moment at which the operation should be started for the best interest of the patient. The significance of this remark can be appreciated only by those experienced in the employment of suggestion for the production of anesthesia.

From three to five minutes is also the time required by Miss Henderson to produce surgical anesthesia with ether, employing suggestion as an adjunct. I challenge any anesthetist to produce such satisfactory anesthetics as are exhibited by Miss Henderson and Alice Magaw in the clinic of the surgeons of St. Mary's Hospital by any other method than the intelligent employment of suggestion as an adjunct to the administration of the anesthetic.

These women employ the ether "drop method" and "the inhaler used is the improved Esmarch, with two thicknesses of stockinet, the frame boiled and stockinet changed after each patient." To show the small amount of ether employed where suggestion is used as an adjunct to its administration, I quote further from Alice Magaw's article:

“We use the dropper described, dropping as slowly and carefully in giving ether as though it were chloroform until the patient’s face is flushed; then a few layers of surgeon’s gauze are added, and the ether given a trifle faster until the patient is surgically etherized; then return is made to the same covering as at the start, and the regular drop method continued throughout the operation.”

It has been within my experience, with suggestion employed as an adjunct to the administration of chloroform, to satisfactorily anesthetize a patient for a double amputation above the knees with sixty minims of chloroform, and another for a suprapubic cystotomy with as little as twenty minims of this drug.

Surgical patients, with but few exceptions, come to the operating table in a condition of voluntary self-surrender, and are particularly good subjects for the employment of suggestion. Their faith in the efficacy of the anesthetic employed is a powerful auto-suggestion, and renders them pliable and easy in the hands of an anesthetist who is familiar with the principles of psychotherapy and the methods of its practical administration.

From eight years’ experience with the medical profession, during which time I toiled, and plodded, and prayed for a recognition of psychotherapy as an adjunct to the generally recognized therapeutic agencies, by making a personal canvass from office to office until headway was made in organizing groups of physicians to witness the demonstration and elucidation of practical methods of the employment of suggestion, I learned to appreciate the great need to the profession of such knowledge as could be employed by the general practitioner as well as the specialist.

Many there were who did not doubt the efficacy of such measures in the hands of the few, who had what they deemed some peculiar power over people, but they doubted the efficacy of psychological methods in their own hands.

This lack of self-confidence, child of ignorance as it was, was everywhere in evidence, and was one of the greatest obstacles that I had to overcome in bringing a small group of physicians together. One such physician said to me, in perfect frankness, “Why, my dear sir, some people can not apply these methods successfully,



and I am one who can not, for I have studied suggestive therapeutics for ten years; the past five years were spent in Europe, where I availed myself of opportunities to witness the practical employment of suggestion, both with and without hypnosis, in the great French and German universities; in my library are more than twenty volumes by various writers on Suggestive Therapeutics; could I get results like those you mention, I would gladly pay ten times the small fee that you demand."

Our profession has had either no instruction in regard to the employment of the more efficacious application of suggestion, or it has been wrongly taught.

To every one of such doubting individuals I positively guaranteed that he and every other physician present should take an individual who was a stranger to me, taken at random from the passing crowds on the streets, and by a simple efficacious method of using suggestion which I would explain they each should by his own words and personal efforts demonstrate the efficacy of suggestion to induce anesthesia, each physician using a different subject.

As previously stated, approximately five thousand American physicians personally tested the efficacy of suggestion to produce anesthesia, using a small vial containing an antiseptic solution, a placebo, as a means of suggestion.

It requires but little chloroform, or ether, used in conjunction with the judicious employment of suggestion to surgically anesthetize a patient. The greatest essential is a comprehensive knowledge of the theoretical and practical features of suggestion as applied in multifarious ways to the general practice of medicine. The subject of psychotherapy comprehends hypnotism, for hypnotism is but the employment of suggestion efficaciously and systematically.

The individual is hypnotized by suggestion; he is then in a condition of increased suggestibility, and surely, if suggestion is of value as an adjunct in the administration of anesthetics, the most effective form of suggestion is of greatest value, for just in proportion to its efficacy is the amount of the anesthetic employed minimized.

To use suggestion as an adjunct in the administration of anes-

thetics is simply to deal with the patient in such a humane, natural manner that the anesthetist becomes thoroughly *en rapport* with his patient, securing a conscious acquiescence, and then so directing the conscious and subconscious, the voluntary and involuntary functions of the nervous system, psychic states, or streams of consciousness, that, while administering the anesthetic, we persuade certain nerve and brain centers to suspend the performance of their functions, and others to increase, until the small amount of ether or chloroform being administered produces a more profound state of unconsciousness, a physiopsychological condition, in accordance with a natural law.

A little 5 year-old boy, in my office with his mother, needed to be circumcised. Everything was in readiness, and I called his mother to be present to see that I would not hurt him in the least. In a natural, pleasant manner I allowed him to smell a delicate extract which I had ordered especially for him, "because he was such a fine boy." I then informed him that he could lie on my operating table, and smell some perfume and go to sleep. This he consented to do, and, having secured a thorough relaxation, a few drops of the perfume was allowed to fall on the towel which had been placed over his entire face, and suggestions at once commenced, just as if I were telling him the effect was being produced by the perfume, followed in probably thirty seconds by chloroform, dropped on the towel, just below the tip of his nose, from a small homeopathic vial taken from my pocket, with a toothpick arranged by the side of the cork so as to allow a small drop to slowly trickle from the bottle, until additional suggestions appropriate to the understanding of the patient produced the desired result. He went into a comfortable sleep in from two to three minutes and remained so until I again sterilized my hands and did the simple operation while he appeared to enjoy his slumber. By actual measurement twenty minims of chloroform were used.

On repeated occasions I have produced anesthesia by suggestion while holding an unopened bottle of chloroform in my hand, and have demonstrated to the surgeon that a pin could be thrust through the patient's face or arm. I proceeded to drop ten drops of chloro-

form on a piece of gauze of three or four thicknesses that had been placed in the bottom of my partly closed hand, and, placing the hand thus charged with chloroform over the patient's nose and mouth, I proceeded to administer it, using suggestion to get the patient to breathe naturally and rhythmically and go into a deeper sleep. By a small addition of chloroform, surgical anesthesia was produced in this way, and the amount of the drug used varied from 20 to 30 minims. The patient would sleep for twenty or thirty minutes after the operation and awake without nausea, as suggested.

The use of suggestion in conjunction with an anesthetic, where the patient has given his consent to the operation, is attended with no failures, though the amount of the anesthetic used necessarily varies, according to the individual idiosyncrasy of the patient, and the time required to produce surgical anesthesia varies from two to five minutes. In all such cases the amount of the anesthetic used is reduced to comparative insignificance, and the procedure may be regarded as absolutely devoid of danger.

A patient of mine had a visitor some years previous who died in her home from the administration of chloroform for an operation for intussusception, and the psychic effect of this experience had been the cause of her declining an operation for a badly lacerated cervix. I had resorted to suggestion for the temporary amelioration of severe headaches and other neurotic symptoms which existed in consequence of this pathologic lesion, and on one occasion gave her suggestions in the hypnotic state to relieve the fears of the anesthetic and to get her consent to the proposed operation. She readily consented to the operation after that suggestion, stating that she no longer feared the effect of chloroform. An hour previous to the operation I suggested to her in the hypnotic state that she would go soundly asleep as soon as the anesthetist began to let her inhale the chloroform, that she would breathe rhythmically and naturally, that her heart would become stronger from inhaling the chloroform, and her sleep sound and deep, so that she would have no feeling whatever. Not over 30 minims of chloroform were required to do this operation, given by another



physician, who co-operated with my suggestive measures, and the patient awoke at the time suggested without nausea or other inconvenience.

Invariably the anesthetist or surgeon who makes employment of suggestion as an adjunct to the administration of anesthetics with marked success is he who has taken a great interest in hypnotism as a means of using suggestion efficaciously.

Among other surgeons than the Mayos whose work has attracted attention on account of superior skill and large experience, who make employment of suggestion with success in the administration of anesthetics besides ether and chloroform, may be mentioned Bodine, of New York, in his herniotomy and other operations done with a  $\frac{1}{10}$  of 1-percent solution of cocaine, and A. W. Morton, of San Francisco, in the production of spinal anesthesia.

That Bodine employs more talk in his operations with his " $\frac{1}{10}$  of 1-percent solution of cocaine" is recognized by him and all physicians familiar with the practical employment of suggestion, and I know from Dr. Morton's own statement to me that his success with spinal anesthesia, both for the safety of his patients and in the completeness of his anesthetics, has been considerably augmented by the artful employment of suggestion.

A careful study of the chapter on Hypnotism Demonstrated will give the reader all the necessary additional information requisite to equip him to make employment of suggestion in conjunction with the administration of anesthetics.

## CHAPTER XIII.

### PSYCHOTHERAPY IN RELATION TO THE EXPECTANT MOTHER.

It is generally conceded that the disorders that complicate the state of gestation are purely functional in character, but it is important to bear in mind that a functional disorder (so-called) always implies a physical change, however minute or microscopic this may be, and that a functional disorder or disease, if neglected long enough, may lead into an organic condition, and that the timely administration of psychotherapy to correct the functional disorder may prevent its resulting in a gross pathological disease.

Psychotherapy is of value in the prophylaxis and treatment of the functional and neuropathic manifestations that annoy the expectant mother just in proportion as we are enabled to exert an influence upon her habits of thought and action, both conscious and subconscious.

Each time the physician comes into her presence he has the opportunity to make such impressions upon her brain plasm as will give rise to emotions, thoughts, and feelings, which are of unquestionable therapeutic value on the one hand, and that will lead to habits that are conducive to both physical and mental well-being on the other.

What most of our expectant mothers need is education, knowledge, and guidance—other names for honest; truthful suggestion—and not instruction in the pathology of possible diseases that may arise from functional disorders accompanying the state of gestation.

A comprehensive understanding of the pathology of the more serious diseases of pregnancy on the part of the physician is of unquestionable value, but such knowledge is always detrimental when in the possession of the patient. So, while duly appreciating

a knowledge of the pathology of such diseases, what is of far greater importance to the patient is that the physician be qualified to so manage her psychologically and physically as to prevent the occurrence of such diseases.

Take the expectant mother into your confidence, and give her a plain, common-sense talk of such character as will dispel her morbid self-consciousness and give her something wholesome to think about, and tell her what to do to maintain a condition of physical and mental well-being during the state, of gestation.

The creative power of the imagination as a reliable, potent factor in bringing the ideal into actualization has been repeatedly emphasized by our ablest psychologists, and as a therapeutic resource this psychological fact is appreciated today as never before in the history of medicine.

We can by suggestion, or by mental pictures impressed upon the brain plasm of a patient who has sufficient confidence in us to seek our aid, encourage the functional activity of every cell of her organism, and do so in such a humane, natural manner as can but evoke the appreciation of our patient. Moreover, we quiet her nervousness, assuage her fears, dispel her gloomy forebodings, correct functional disturbances, and inspire her with confidence and a determination to do all that we outline for her in the way of conforming to the physiological requirements of health.

In general, I explain to the expectant mother in the early months of gestation that, by the new element that has been added to her personality, the function of every cell in her body is quickened and encouraged to new activity, and that increased vigor of both mind and body should be the consequence. I impress on her that this is a natural, healthy condition—a physiological state—and that upon her obedience to the mental and physical laws that environ her depend the best growth and development of a human life committed to her care, as well as her own physical and mental welfare and happiness. I appeal to her motherly instincts by impressing on her the sacredness of the trust that is by nature committed to her care, and get her to realize that of all divinely instituted privileges that of motherhood is the highest, noblest, and best. I impress on her the importance of beginning the training of her offspring nine



months before it is born for the purpose of obtaining the best results in both mental and physical development. I explain to her that the more or less morbid subjective feelings, sensations, and desires that sometimes annoy the expectant mother are but the recognition by her nervous system of the new role that it is called upon to play, and advise her that this must be taken as a friendly warning or notification that her diet must be of nutritious, easily digested, and easily eliminated consistency, such as good milk and butter, fresh fruit and vegetables, and either fresh eggs or a small quantity of meat once per day. I give her sufficient assurance and encouragement to have her make effort to develop a mental and physical constitution well capacitated for the training and nourishing of her offspring. The suggestion of the importance of physical exercise out-of-doors in the fresh air and sunshine as a daily pleasure and duty, as well as the wholesome employment of her faculties in lines of useful endeavor and achievement, together with a contented mind not ashamed of the exalted function of motherhood, as a means of obtaining the greatest good for herself and offspring, should never be omitted by the physician desiring to influence his patient's habits of thought and conduct as a means of preventing the disorders that so frequently manifest themselves in this class of cases.

Our artificial methods of living so frequently encourage habits that are contrary to the conditions which produce and maintain the highest standard of protoplasmic energy in the cells of the human organism, that most of the functional disorders incident to the state of gestation is but nature's penalty for the violation of known laws of health.

Psychotherapy apparently plays a secondary role in its employment to get the patient to conform to the physiological and physical requirements of health, but by planting a conviction in the mind of the patient that relief from certain functional disorders will be obtained, as the individual case may present, we give the patient the benefit of both the psychic and physical results of complying with the suggestion.

As physicians, we are nothing if not practical men, and the time has come when we should take our place as leaders and teachers of

the people, as well as that of students of pathology and prescribers of medicine.

It will be an unlucky day for our civilization when our psychotherapy becomes so allied with mysticism and religious functions that we forget to conform to the physical or physiological requirements of health. To do our best in any department of life, one must first be a healthy animal, and the hunger of the body for bread and fruit is not more real than is manifested today by intelligent people for facts and principles by which life and conduct may be guided. Therefore, our psychotherapy must consist of psychological, physiological, and educational therapeutics in order to meet the demands of the intelligence of the present age.

In all my dealing with the expectant mother, in connection with either materia medica agencies or psychotherapy, I never lose an opportunity to implant in her mind the idea that, by her conformance to the regimen outlined, or as the result of the treatment she is following, both physiological and medicinal, it is absolutely impossible for her to do else than have a safe and easy delivery, and such will be the case by virtue of the creative power inherent in the cells of the organism that my suggestions have stimulated into action, provided the plasma that constitutes the physical organism is of such quality as to receive the impress of my suggestions and execute its functions.

With all the advantages of psychotherapy, what folly it is to ignore either the physical or psychical basis of life.

For the relief of persistent nausea and vomiting, when such patients have neglected the mental and physical rules by which health could have been maintained, or where the milder forms of suggestion are not practicable on account of the temporary illness of the patient, suggestion in the hypnotic state has proven efficacious upon repeated occasions in the experience of the writer.

## CHAPTER XIV.

### THE PSYCHOLOGIC FACTOR IN OBSTETRICS.

It was once my pleasure to be present at a medical society meeting at which, from a psychological point of view, the discussions of a most highly interesting and instructive paper on the use of "Forceps in Obstetrics" interested me very much.

One physician related his experience in a recent case where he, with another physician present, had found it necessary to make several prolonged and strenuous efforts at traction upon the forecoming head before they succeeded in a delivery, which resulted in a badly lacerated cervix and a most completely lacerated perineum, stating in the conclusion of his remarks that he found it frequently necessary to resort to the use of forceps, and for this reason he highly appreciated the paper.

Another physician referred to a recent high forceps operation, and the difficulty in applying forceps before the head began to descend and while the os was as yet but partially dilated.

A third referred to the frequency with which he had found it necessary to resort to the use of forceps in obstetrics, and how he dreaded such ordeals.

Still another speaker emphasized, among other valuable ideas, the small amount of traction with which she had been able to deliver her forceps cases, even while the patient had been thoroughly chloroformed.

Among those who discussed the paper was yet another, a large, self-possessed, and magnificent-looking physician, a little past fifty-five I should judge, who stated that he rarely, if ever, had to resort to the use of forceps, and he urged the advisability of not being in a hurry, and giving the natural physiological processes time to accomplish their work, rather than hastily resorting to instrumental assistance or interference.

I do not claim to be perfectly accurate in my passing references



to the discussion to which I have referred, but the features brought out in those discussions illustrate conclusively the importance of more attention being paid to the psychologic factor in obstetric practice.

It was quite evident that the large, self-possessed physician to whom I referred did appreciate the psychologic factor, and hence "rarely, if ever," had to resort to the use of forceps. It was also equally evident that some of the physicians present were rather inclined to be nervous, and unconsciously had been a potent factor in producing the condition in their patients which necessitated the use of instruments.

More than in any other part of the practice of medicine, in obstetrics the physician should be well-poised and self-possessed, and should maintain a quiet demeanor, keeping his mental and nervous equilibrium well conserved in the presence of an excitable, frightened, and nervous patient.

In the early years of my professional work I assisted three times in the instrumental delivery of a lady who at the time of her fourth delivery fell into my hands. Knowing the difficulty that she had experienced with her previous deliveries, and seeing the depression that her condition and the approaching ordeal produced upon her, I had her come to see me quite frequently and positively assured her that I had her on a treatment that would insure a safe and easy delivery, and before her confinement I had eliminated all element of fear. When I was called to see her at the time of delivery, after making a careful diagnosis, I again positively assured her that it was absolutely impossible for her to do otherwise than get along nicely, and I have never attended an easier delivery than hers.

Where it has been possible, it has been my habit to see the prospective mothers often enough before parturition to keep well *en rapport* with them. I have frequently placed them in the suggestive state two or three times during the last weeks of pregnancy in order to insure a perfect psychological attitude at the time of delivery.

The influence of the mind upon metabolism is well established. To keep our prospective mothers in a buoyant, hopeful, cheerful

state of mind helps to prevent albuminuria, eclampsia, and other complications. All other essentials requisite to the well-being of our patient should not, of course, be overlooked. A wholesome vegetable diet, with milk and eggs, as well as regular out-door exercise, should be insisted upon.

When called to see your patient when in labor manifest a kindly interest in her well-being, and make her feel that you are kind, firm, and self-sufficient by your conduct in her presence. After carefully making your diagnosis, do all you can to calm her spirit, assuage her fears, and inspire her with confidence in your ability and intentions to do what is best for her. Assume absolute command of the situation, and allow no environing influence, such as overanxious expressions of friends, to influence her. Let her feel the masterful, helpful, encouraging influence of your personality, as well as get the benefit of your kindly assistance.

When the members of the medical profession become awake to the importance of the psychological factor in obstetrics, forceps deliveries and lacerated cervixes and perinei will be far less frequent.

While in a southern city four years ago a well-known physician requested me to see with him a woman in labor, and I quote the following from his report of the case: "About two o'clock in the morning I was called to Mrs. W., a young primipara, who was frightened, exceedingly nervous, and hard to control. Two hours later Doctor Munro came at my request and demonstrated the efficacy of suggestion in a most satisfactory manner by substituting for the extreme nervousness a condition of placid repose. The rapid heart beats became normal, the patient slept peacefully between contractions and 'bore down' to her pains without complaint. It proved especially efficacious during that nagging stage of dilation. Later on, with the aid of only a few drops of chloroform, the case was conducted to a finish with perfect satisfaction both to myself, my patient, and her friends. I am fully convinced that when physicians learn to practice intelligently what for ages we have all been practicing ignorantly—i. e., suggestive therapeutics—the obstetric couch will be robbed of its horrors."

**TECHNIC OF APPLICATION.**

Labor is well established, the os is dilated to the size of a fifty-cent piece, more or less, and the contractions and general condition indicate that there is to be no cessation of symptoms until your patient is delivered.

She is begging you to do something for her. You have made out your diagnosis and reassured your patient, but now the severity of her symptoms is such that she feels that she must have help. You have the reputation of using chloroform, and she would not be satisfied unless you did use chloroform. You are waiting for the right psychological moment—she has patiently endured her sufferings, and feels that she can hold out no longer without help that she has not received. You have assured her that she is doing well, that every indication is for a safe delivery, and that you are going to use chloroform, so that she will not suffer. The urgency of the occasion grows more imperative and you decide to make another digital examination.

As this is completed, say, "All right, madam, be patient and bear strong and hard to the next pain, and just as that leaves you I will give you chloroform, so that you will get well under its influence by the time another contraction comes, and you will not suffer any more."

Just as the contraction has expended its energy, synchronously with the first inspiration after a long bearing down, shake about thirty drops of chloroform upon a handkerchief in a paper cone or which you have placed in a tumbler, and, placing that close over her nose and mouth, suggest to her strongly, "Breathe this down now, and go to sleep." She takes a deep inspiration, and you quickly and strongly suggest, "Breathe it in again, and now again, away down deep."

The three deep inspirations from the thirty drops of chloroform administered in this way at this particular moment have sufficient physiological effect to annihilate completely the receding contraction, and these three deep inspirations in succession, together with the physiological effect of the chloroform, secure the thorough relaxation of your patient. She is now in a receptive condition, and



you must quickly, but emphatically and distinctly, follow this up with your suggestions to get her into a deeper suggestible condition or into a hypnotic state.

So, removing the cone or glass about two inches from her nose, you proceed to suggest, "Now, go to sleep, sleep, sleep, sleep. Now you feel quiet all over. Your muscles are relaxed. Everything is dark to you. You do not hear anything but my voice. You are drowsy and sleepy, s-o-o-o-o sleepy. You feel the sleep coming over you. You are going to sleep, sleep, sleep, sleep. By the time I count ten you will be fast asleep. One, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten, and you are asleep, fast asleep. By the time I count five you will be sound and dead asleep. One two, three, four, five, and you are asleep, fast asleep, sound asleep, dead asleep, and you will not awaken now until I tell you. Every second your sleep becomes sounder and sounder, and deeper and deeper. You will not hear anything, or feel anything, or know anything, except what I tell you. Sleep on quietly now until I awaken you."

Your patient is now in a deeper condition of suggestibility, but you want to take an additional precaution to secure more thorough relaxation, so, without the addition of more chloroform, you bring the cone or glass closer to her nose and suggest, "Breathe deeply, deeper yet, once again away down deep. There, now, you are thoroughly relaxed."

Then, stroking her forehead gently, make suggestions about as follows: "Sleep on quietly. Now your nerves are getting steady, and quiet, and strong—steady, and quiet, and strong all over. By the time I count ten the last bit of nervousness will be gone, and your nerves will be steady, and quiet, and strong all over. One, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten, and your nerves are steady, and quiet, and strong all over."

"Now, on account of the sedative effect of the chloroform upon you, you feel all pain, or aching, or soreness, or hurting about your abdomen, or back, or womb going away; you are getting easier and easier, and by the time I count five you will be perfectly easy and not suffer any more. One, two, three, four, five, and you are perfectly easy.

"Now your labor will be regular and normal; you will labor hard,

but will feel no pain. Your contractions will be strong, the mouth of your womb will dilate and open easier, but you will feel no pain.

“Sleep on, and when the next contraction comes reach up your hands, and bear down strong and long, but you will feel only a pressure—you will not experience any pain.”

As the contraction again becomes evident, say to your patient, “Bear down hard now; it will not hurt you. That is fine; stronger yet, more yet. There, now, take more chloroform and go into a deeper sleep.”

Here you put about twenty drops of chloroform on the handkerchief in the cone or glass and make a few additional suggestions about as follows: “Sleep, sleep, sleep, sleep, breathe deeply, sleep soundly. Now sleep on quietly until the next contraction, and then don't wake up—just reach up your hands and bear down, but sleep on.”

As this contraction recedes you give about ten drops more of chloroform and make a few additional suggestions.

By that time your patient is sufficiently amenable to suggestion to the extent that I have frequently had patients go two hours in labor without more than the slightest complaint, getting them to relax thoroughly after each contraction and making a few additional suggestions.

Toward the latter part of the second stage of labor, with the last two or three expulsive pains, it is best that you give chloroform at the beginning of the contraction for its physiological effect, using it freely and effectively, as it enables you to manipulate the head and perineum, and render such assistance as best to prevent laceration.

I have yet to see the first case of post-partum hemorrhage in a case where suggestion was used, though I have always followed the expulsion of the child with my left hand and grasped the fundus of the uterus after Crede's method. Post-partum hemorrhage is largely a nervous phenomenon, and properly directing and controlling the psychic factor is a safeguard against it, though I never neglect any other precaution, and consequently I have never had any trouble on this score.

A rigid os indicates an irritable involuntary nervous system, and

it rapidly disappears when the psychic factor is properly directed as above outlined. Your success will be in direct ratio to the extent to which you secure thorough relaxation of the patient and properly make suggestions.

The patient need not necessarily be asleep; a merely partial sub-conscious condition is attended with excellent results, provided you have the confidence and co-operation of your patient, and this it is your privilege to gain very quickly after you enter the room.

A nervous physician is undoubtedly a menace to the welfare of an obstetric patient, for nervousness begets nervousness and fear begets fear. Self-control and self-confidence on the part of the accoucheur carry, all unconsciously, a wonderfully helpful influence.

Don't neglect any other therapeutic resource. An obstetric patient of mine had two sisters, each of whom died of eclampsia in her first labor. The effect of such a family record was most depressing upon her. During the last weeks of pregnancy I saw her every few days, and assured her positively that the treatment on which I had her would prevent any such occurrence. She was a plethoric, full-blooded woman, and the secundines were removed with practically no hemorrhage at all. A severe headache, extreme nervousness, and rapid, full pulse which followed required not only large doses of veratrum hypodermatically, but free bleeding also, as well as suggestion in the form of reassurance, persuasion, and encouragement, with large doses of calomel and jalap.

To a patient who had aborted after four months, and had considerable hemorrhage and was almost pulseless, I suggested strongly and loudly, upon making an examination, "You will be all right. Be brave, madam; you will have no trouble, etc.," though I proceeded to clear and pack her uterus.

In a case of twins I "chloroformed" my patient with alcohol administered by inhalation and suggestion, and used forceps on the first child and internal version on the second with perfect success.

Ten drops of chloroform given to a patient after each contraction while she is thoroughly relaxed, passive, eyes closed, and breathing rhythmically through her mouth, and suggestions made in a monotone, conversational way, to quiet nervousness and render



the patient conscious that something was being done for her, is attended with excellent results without any farther effort to induce hypnosis.

The confidence of the patient in her physician can be considerably augmented by properly directing the psychic factor in obstetrics, and the welfare and safety of the patient are rendered far more certain.

In a case of an abortion at five months, before the expulsion of the uterine contents, which was attended with much hemorrhage, I packed the vagina and put on T-bandage, hypnotized the patient, made appropriate suggestions, and went away, returning in three hours to find that the patient had been easy, but upon removal of the packing both fetus and secundines came away together.

A patient who once has the assistance of a physician who properly directs the psychic factor will instinctively feel that she has never before had the right attention in her previous confinements.

A number of physicians of my acquaintance have been able to execute successfully the above described methods greatly to the satisfaction of themselves and patient.

Your success in obstetrics, as in all other classes of work, will be in direct ratio to the integrity and stability of your patient's nerve and brain plasm on the one hand, and your ability to present suggestion properly on the other.

The ideas suggested in this chapter are of value to the individual physician in direct ratio to his ability to appropriate and use them.

## CHAPTER XV.

### THE GUIDANCE OF THE SEXUAL INSTINCT.

The importance of a more intelligent effort on the part of the medical profession directed toward the guidance of the sexual instinct has assumed such a prominent relation to the successful employment of psychotherapy in the treatment of the psychoneuroses, as has been clearly demonstrated by the work of Freud, of Vienna, and Jung, of Zurich, that no work purporting to be an elucidation of the subject can be considered complete unless this phase is also presented. The present status of the subject is such that it would be most reprehensible and cowardly to dodge the issue on account of the fear of antagonism by those who adhere to conflicting opinions.

That abnormalities of the sexual functions are among the most common causes of nervous and mental diseases, and that insanity, suicide, and death are often the final outcome, is today recognized by all who have given this question thoughtful consideration.

At the present time we are not content to say that some "functional disorder" is the cause of an abnormal nervous and mental condition, but we seek to discover the cause of this disorder, presented as a part of the complication to be treated.

Freud has brought forth a most convincing array of facts, based upon actual clinical experience, showing that the obstacles of a normal sexual life, or unhappy love, are frequently the cause of violent disturbances of the mind, and that often, as the result of these obstacles, mental disorders appear after a continued derangement of the organic functions.

Such obstacles, Freud considers, are the most important causes of the functional psychoneuroses, which have heretofore been considered to be the result of a constitutional taint. It is his conclusion that these obstacles are due more to the inherited environment and educational influences to which the individual has been

subjected through life than to an inherited weakness of the physical organism at the time of birth.

This viewpoint is not to depreciate the inherited physical qualities or characteristics which we bring into the world as an endowment, but to give recognition to the potency of the influences brought to bear upon the human mind and body by environment and education after we are born, and to emphasize the importance of such influences in the determination of the mental and physical characteristics exhibited by the individual as a consequence.

With these preliminary remarks, let us consider the facts pertaining to the guidance of the sexual instinct as a preparatory measure to a useful, wholesome, happy life of the individual on the one hand, and as a preventive measure against untold unhappiness, with its consequent derangement of the normal functions of mind and body, resulting in mental and physical deterioration, suicide, divorce, death and insanity, on the other.

This discussion is not intended to cover the influence of pathological processes resulting from venereal disorders, which are already recognized as one of the most potent causes of the more serious nervous and mental diseases, nor to go into the abortion question, which has assumed the role of one of the most important problems confronting our American civilization. That story is best read in the history of a large proportion of the cases recorded in our annual list of suicides, insanities, death records, causes of the surgical operations in the numerous hospitals, and in the large infantile mortality list annually turned out by many of our metropolitan cities. The results of physical degeneracy resulting from venereal disorders must not stop here. It is a large contributing factor in the annual mortality list resulting from tuberculosis, pneumonia, enteric fever, cancer, Bright's disease, and many other acute affections. That venereal diseases lessen the resistive powers of the individual, and render him comparatively an easy victim, and in all other ways handicap his usefulness in life, is not in the least degree questioned by our ablest clinicians at the present time.

In this era of enlightened civilization it is not enough to say that this or the other parasite, microbe, or abnormal cell was the cause of the physical manifestations of disease or pathological process



presented. We must go back farther than that. We must consider the causation of the cause exhibited in the gross pathological manifestation of diseased processes, and in thousands upon thousands of instances the primary cause, as every intelligent, conscientious physician must admit, is to be found only in the failure of the individual to live up to his highest privileges on account of the lack of proper education in early life to equip him to be qualified for the guidance of his sexual instinct.

One who seeks to better humanity by giving expression to his ideas concerning the guidance of the sexual instinct should be prepared by broad experience and deep study. He should know men and women as we find them in the common, every-day walks of life, from the lowest to the highest, and deal with facts as they are, considering sexual laws that govern the entire race of mankind; for otherwise he is not prepared to speak out on this subject, with opinions based upon real conditions and unprejudiced researches in the laws of natural morality, the necessary requisites in qualifying one to give advice which can be followed because in perfect harmony with the laws of nature.

People should be made to understand that nature's laws are God's laws; that the sexual instinct is a part of human nature, and is not in itself immoral; that a love connection is not in itself immoral, but that it may lead to unhappy consequences as the result of social conflicts. The unhappy consequences of ignorance in regard to the performance of the sexual act, even in marriage, is in evidence in the every-day experience of the observing physician. To enumerate these illustrations would require more pages than are to be devoted to this chapter.

Here is a young man who applies for the treatment of gonorrhoea one month after his marriage, stating that his wife had been contaminated by the infection. He "thought he had been cured," and begs that his wife be kept in ignorance of the nature of her disease. A pus tube operation, and the marred happiness of one of the purest and sweetest of the human race is likely to be the consequence of this disastrous blunder on the part of a boy who would gladly have sacrificed life itself rather than infect his innocent wife.

The sexual function of the natural instincts is the strongest of all the bodily appetites. It is a most important source of happiness and health, and its normal performance exercises the most beneficent influence upon all other bodily and mental functions. The want of the gratification of the normal sexual instinct is a source of deep moral and mental suffering, lessens the love of life, and induces a sad and despondent existence.

The participation of the opposite sexes in the sexual relation through the attraction of love is one of the most beautiful phenomena of existence, and, when properly conducted, is in no sense to be construed as vulgar or disgusting, which religious ascetics have described as lust.

Monogamy is the ideal of the sexual relation for all civilized races, but its performance without personal sympathy is only a physiological function as a means of purely animal gratification, and, whether in or out of marriage bonds, it is degraded into lust. But where the psychic elements of the two personalities are in perfect harmony, where the joining links in the chain of love are present, and where personal sympathy exists, the sexual function is something more than the expression of physiological desire. It is also the gratification of the desire to be in the embrace of and in intimate contact with the one beloved, and, not only is orgasm evoked, but the relation strengthens the bond of personal sympathy, conduces to health and happiness, and is the highest expression of true love. Without this higher attraction it is, as a consequence, only a temporary relation, and in no sense worthy of performance by the self-respecting individual. Under such conditions, instead of being attended by salutary results to the participants, the effects are those that leave the self-respecting person with a feeling of disgust—weakness, nervous irritability, and a feeling of self-condemnation. Whether in or out of the marriage relation, the sexual function under such inharmonious conditions is prostitution pure and simple, and is degrading to mind and body. When engaged in between husband and wife while either is an unwilling participant, it is nothing more or less than legalized prostitution.

For a husband to force the act upon a self-sacrificing wife who

feels that, though unpleasant to her, she is under obligation to yield to his desires, which she prefers rather than to cause him to have an excuse to seek sexual satisfaction elsewhere, and he forces her thus to submit to him, though positively detrimental to her health and happiness—under such conditions the sexual function becomes an act of forced legalized prostitution in the fullest sense of the expression.

My association with several thousand physicians, and the information communicated to me by many of them in seeking aid for some psychoneurotic manifestation, has coincided with my own observations that there are many married women who do not enjoy their conjugal relation with their husbands, and that this is one of the most fruitful causes of unhappy domestic relations extant, resulting in various functional disorders of the female generative organs, with its attendant insomnia, nervousness, and general psychoneurotic manifestations. Occasionally a case is presented where the most complete happiness in the conjugal relation can not be obtained because the psychic life of the woman is under the control of religious emotion, which is, on account of the psychical correlation of religious emotion and the sexual instinct, substituted for the normal sexual enjoyment which the wife should obtain from her husband.

When a female religious enthusiast has her psychic life abnormally influenced, her emotions being unduly stirred by her minister, and also enjoys the sexual relation with her husband, the sexual act is then more of a physiological response to the minister's psychic stimulation than the normal reaction to the personality of her husband, and intercourse under such conditions is most disastrous to both mind and body. She is, in reality, playing a dual role—psychically enjoying her minister, physically enjoying her husband—and this abnormal, unnatural situation degrades her marital relation, in effect, to an act of prostitution. The overexpenditure of nerve energy from this double situation entails a draught upon her reserved forces in excess of her recuperative powers, while she is in perfect innocence. But the violation of natural laws in innocence and ignorance are no less followed by nature's penalty than if violated intentionally. She becomes dis-



qualified for her domestic duties and social responsibilities, becomes neurasthenic, psychasthenic, or hysterical, and this resulting train of psychoneurotic symptoms or functional disorders sometimes leads to insanity or bodily sickness, and even death may result indirectly therefrom.

Women are frequently observed who come out of a series of prolonged emotional religious services weak, nervous, pale, and bedridden, who passively yield to the physical and psychical reaction of such dissipations feeling that they have conscientiously performed their duty in "the Lord's work." On one occasion, when explaining to a religious devotee the disastrous effect of an emotional sermon, telling her that I believed death itself had frequently been caused by such emotional preaching, she replied that "it would be a lovely way to die." Her response reminded me of the answer given by a mentally decrepit old man seventy-six years of age, who, when told that if he was forced to satisfy the sexual requirements of a young woman twenty-six years of age, whom he was endeavoring to marry, for two weeks it would kill him, replied that if he could live with her for two weeks he would prefer to die rather than live twenty years without her. The manifestations of the sexual instinct exhibited by this woman in her religious emotion and by this man's desire to gratify his animal passion are here strikingly similar.

Religious excitement encourages masturbation in both boys and girls. To excite the nervous system in one way encourages abnormal excitability in another. A young woman whose parents were religious enthusiasts confessed that she had frequently been stirred by a religious service, and as a result masturbated and felt that she had done nothing wrong. The temporary relaxation following orgasm relieved the nervous tension induced by the emotional religious service, and she felt decidedly more comfortable.

The sexual instinct frequently manifests itself in emotional religious meetings by a nervous young woman becoming ardently interested in the religious welfare of some particular young man.

A bride of two months became very much aroused by religious emotion, and, as she went forward to shake hands with the minister, her young husband rushed to her and before the entire assembly

kissed her passionately for a half dozen or more times. The sexual instinct here manifested seemed to get beyond his control, but the unthinking audience considered this manifestation a beautiful exhibition of his Christian spirit. In many instances a young woman has mistaken the religious exaltation for what in fact was nothing less than ungratified sexual desire. To what extent religious feelings depend upon physiological conditions has not yet been definitely ascertained.

A physician on one occasion asked me in confidence why his wife had grown so indifferent to his approaches in the sexual relation. Upon questioning him, I found that she was an ardent supporter of a worn-out religious creed, around which her entire psychic life centered, and one which his scientific training had caused him to repudiate. The psychic inharmony existing in his marital relation had robbed him of all happiness to be obtained from this source, and he, still endeavoring to be loyal to her, was despondent, unhappy, and miserable.

Upon the discovery of a clandestine relation existing between a married man and a woman who was not his wife, I questioned him: "How can a man of your esthetic development live that way?" His response was: "This woman loves me, but my wife don't, and I'd sooner be dead than live a loveless life." He had a beautiful home, surrounded by shade trees and flowers, and three children were the result of his unwise marriage, but, rather than humiliatè them by divorce proceedings, he had found a solution of the situation in a manner which met the requirements of his sexual instincts, contrary to the laws of morality and civilization. To a highly educated girl, showing evidence of having had the home influences and social standing unexcelled by those to be found anywhere, who was living in a house of prostitution, I put the question, "Why are *you* here?" The story of her life showed that she was seduced by a man to whom she was engaged, having yielded to him out of the purest love, and after a most bitter disappointment had sought to drown her sorrow by plunging deeper into it, and finally had landed in the lowest depths. Many such examples don't mean to do wrong in the beginning. They are those who were not properly educated in self-preservation, and,

without the necessary training in the guidance of the sexual instinct, had committed serious blunders in the pursuit of happiness as best they knew. There are thousands of such cases that are martyrs to the ignorance that is prevalent on account of the false modesty exhibited by educators in regard to the laws of natural morality.

Healthy physiological functions and demands make the foundations for sexual feelings. They belong to all healthful, normal human beings as a part of human nature, and are not sinful, nor do they exist in opposition to all that is noble in man or woman. They are not indications of a low order of personality, but are of the greatest importance for the welfare and happiness of the human race, designed by nature for the preservation of the species. Man or woman could not exist without them, but, if they are to be a source of happiness, beauty, pleasure, and joy, as they should, they should be held within proper limits by intelligent guidance.

A young merchant sought to know why his wife did not enjoy the sexual relation. Upon further inquiry it was found that orgasm with him was premature, the act not consuming more than a half minute for its completion. Though married four years, and the mother of one child, she had never experienced pleasurable sexual intercourse. She had, as the result of this abnormal relation, suffered from various functional disturbances, for which she had been treated by various methods to no avail, and finally became morose and unhappy, and dissatisfied with everything in life. Her husband submitted to treatment for a condition which was the result of masturbation, and life to both himself and his wife was afterward fraught with a happiness, zest, and buoyancy of spirits which they had never known before.

A further enumeration of types of cases illustrative of the human misery resulting as a consequence of the prevalent ignorance in regard to the sexual instinct is unnecessary to give emphasis to the necessity for the more universal dissemination of ideas concerning its proper guidance. It is necessary for health, as well as morals, that the sexual function be intelligently guided. It is equally, if not more, essential to the welfare of the human race that the individual submit to a rational mental and sexual hygiene,



as that he should be taught sound rules concerning dietetics, exercise, and other methods of cultivating the moral and intellectual qualifications which contribute to the betterment of the entire human organization.

It is immoral for moralists to attempt to suppress the normal activity of the functions of the human organization, even though it is done with the best intentions and with the belief that it qualifies the individual for the attainment of happiness in another life.

The world's strongest, greatest, most useful men and women are those who are born with strong natural desires, but they are not libertines. As a rule, they are virtuous, because they have learned how to direct their energies into wholesome, useful lines of thought and action, such as would ennoble both their psychic and physical constitutions, contributing to the development of mind and body, bringing about a harmonious co-operation of all the natural forces and functions, promoting the highest development of the individual and the most helpful influence to the human race. On the other hand, many ascetics or puritans deserve no credit for being virtuous, for they really are not, as they are from birth born weak, devoid of the normal bodily appetites, and consequently they have never had a single sexual desire to resist.

Many women are made cold and unresponsive by the inhibitory influence of false ideas concerning sexual desire, and their personalities have become dwarfed, and the homes of such women, when married, are in consequence gloomy sepulchers, where the lives of their husbands are spent in melancholy and despondency.

By the dissemination of false ideas concerning the sexual instinct many young boys and girls are allowed to become masturbators, with the grave consequence that impotency in man frequently results, and in woman the most incorrigible psychoneurotic manifestations accompany them through life. With female masturbators the result is that the desire for the embrace, the fondling, petting, caressing—all of the strongest expressions of love—are absent, and she is incapacitated to respond to the normal psychic and physiological reactions which should attend the sexual relation. They are thus incapacitated to excite the normal desire in man, and in her presence he becomes impotent.

Thus Schrenk-Notzing says: "The self-satisfaction places the habitual masturbator in a strange—so to say, unphysiological—position to the opposite sex. In making the sexual intercourse unnecessary, it weakens the sexual desire and undermines the strongest of our natural emotions—the longing for love, which is the sexual foundation, the impulse of high, ideal actions—and adulterates the fire of the sexual senses, which is the stimulus of development of strength in the individual and of social life in the world of the beautiful and the moral. The act of onanism is more injurious to the central nervous system than the normal intercourse, because phantasy must fill the place of reality, and thus a great amount of nerve substance, possessing a higher functional value, must be consumed."

The effect of temporary masturbation must not be confounded with the results attending habitual masturbation. Much harm is done by advertising medical quacks, who speak of masturbation without making this discrimination, and many a poor victim is unnecessarily frightened and much irreparable harm is done to such overanxious individuals who read the books of these grafters, which are intended more to frighten them into submission to treatment than to truthfully set forth facts. Practically all uninstructed boys who have passed beyond the teens have at some period of their lives been temporary masturbators. The effect upon the individual case depends entirely upon the stability of his nervous system, and the time, frequency, and extent over which the habit was practiced. One can never, however, truthfully say that onanism can be practiced without more or less injurious results, and in the greater proportion of such cases with the cessation of the habit the physical effects soon pass away. The psychic effects often last much longer, the treatment of which requires the most intelligent and judicious employment of psychotherapeutic measures. As a rule, they respond to treatment very readily, with highly satisfactory results to the victims.

The entire list of examples cited, and those described as well, depending upon no organic disease as the result of venereal infection, or other physical abnormality, are cases where psychotherapy finds a most important field of application. No work undertaken

by the physician requires more time, patience, tact, experience, skill, and perseverance than the effort to guide many of the examples cited back to a normal, wholesome, natural, sexual life; but, where no unmanageable domestic situation or incorrigible temperament is presented as a part of the complication to be handled, one can in due course of time restore such patients to their normal mental and physical condition, and with results that enable them to readapt themselves to their environment—to live useful, wholesome, happy lives.

To treat such cases, one must be well grounded in the psychology of the sexual instinct—he must treat the psychology of the individual patient. Such knowledge involves the consideration of the physical, emotional, intellectual, ethical, esthetic, and moral qualities of human beings as we find them in the broad, every-day world. It is related to every phase of life—educational, religious, social, and moral—and plays an all-important part in the production of health and happiness. The highest function of the physician is to be prepared to give sane, wholesome, sensible advice where needed in such cases, and to save such as are seeking help from the vampires who live and thrive upon the distorted imaginations, credulity, and suggestibility of those who are honestly and earnestly seeking relief.

In no class of conditions can the old adage, “an ounce of prevention is worth a pound of cure,” be so aptly applied as to illustrate the importance of efforts sanely and intelligently directed in the guidance of the sexual instinct as a means of preventing untold mental and physical suffering and in promoting the welfare, health, and happiness of the human race. What is needed by children, boys and girls, young men and young women, and many who have reached the age of fifty as well, is education, knowledge, and guidance in order that the best interest of the human race may be secured and maintained.

But before outlining practical ideas that should be disseminated as a means of prevention of the woeful blunders which those who are ignorant of the laws of sexual life, or from lack of knowledge in self-preservation from inexperience, are likely to make, as has been illustrated by the examples cited, it is well that we refer



briefly to the more normal manifestations of the sexual instinct, and not leave the reader with a feeling of repugnance to this most sacred, most beautiful, and beneficent attribute of human nature, which popular theological morality has regarded as lust.

If sexual desire, the strongest bodily appetite—the highest function of health, love, and happiness—a necessary condition for life itself, is to be regarded as an evidence of sinfulness, and as the sign of the low and baser propensities in man, deserving only to be suppressed, stifled, and killed out in order that the divine and spiritual element, or what is regarded as the higher qualities belonging to human nature, may become manifested in our life and conduct, then we have conclusive evidence that the Creator made an unpardonable mistake, and should have consulted some of the antiquated theologians, who are responsible for much of the erroneous ideas concerning the “baseness,” “lowness,” and “sinfulness” of this beautiful, psychic, and physical passion, which is the most conspicuous and most prominent characteristic in the lives of all of the world’s greatest men and women, and, above all others, deserves to be exalted, and in its manifestations guided into lines that uplift and ennoble mankind, and this guidance is true morality.

The sexual instinct, if properly guided, is capable of elevating and ennobling human character, promoting the development of the higher psychic qualities—generosity, magnanimity, reverence, altruism, philanthropy, and a tenacious stand for the right. But if the individual is left to obey the instincts inherent within his protoplasmic elements without judicious guidance, it may lead him to the lowest depths of depravity and jeopardize the happiness and success of the lives of others with whom his life is bound.

It is the sexual instinct which is the source of all that is pure and noble within the human race, and anything which hinders or arrests its normal development robs human character of all those virile qualities which are so highly esteemed. It is identical in every way with creative energy as manifested in all departments of human life and action.

The two strongest natural instincts are, and have ever been,

side by side in all living animals, and it is questionable if they are not synonymous and identical. Self-preservation and the instinct of propagation are qualities of healthy, normal, vigorous living beings, wherever found. The instinct to propagate and the ability to fight for the preservation of its progeny reverses its relative proportion as animal life rises in the scale of evolutionary development; so, in human beings they blend in what is commonly designated as virile qualities, and they are manifested in both psychic and physical attributes.

From this natural virility in man is the species preserved and the home created.

From it arises our delight in music, poetry, literature, sculpture, paintings, and all the attributes of art.

From it comes our enjoyment of rivalry in athletic sports, motor-ing, horse racing, ball games, rowing, shooting, dancing, singing, and oratory. This natural virility in man gives rise to his desire to associate with the opposite sex, and is the incentive to all social life.

It is the impulse that gives rise to educational institutions and forms of government.

It finds expression in the mechanical arts, invention, and navigation.

It manifests itself by the discovery of new countries, the clearing of forests, the building of cities, and the construction of railroads.

It is the impulse that gives rise to all the achievements of science, and incites the birth of all philosophies and religions.

It is the instinctive impulse that has prompted human activity in all ages, developed business and financial institutions, given rise to wars, cruelty, and bloodshed, or to philanthropic, benevolent, and charitable institutions.

In factories, on farms, in mines, school houses, stores, business places of all sorts, in the work of all professions—wherever human activity is manifested—there do we find the mode of expression of the natural virility, or sexual instinct, in its multifold manifestations, according to the psychic and physical potentialities of the individuals concerned.

A vigorous sexual nature is the logical accompaniment of a great intellect and a strong, healthy body.

Without it there would never have been a Plato, an Aristotle, a Marcus Aurelius, a Darwin, a Huxley, a Tyndale, a Carlyle, an Emerson, a Göthe, a Shakespeare, a Milton, a Tennyson, an Edison, a Morse, a Stephenson, a Cæsar, a Napoleon Bonaparte, a Payne, a Voltaire, a Hugo, a Webster, a Calhoun, a Clay, a Washington, a Grant, a Lee, a Buddha, a Confucius, a Jesus Christ, or any other one of the names of those who have possessed the high order of psychic and physical qualities of manhood to dare to get out of the beaten path of the common herd and give to humanity the highest expression and meaning of a life. These persons and thousands of like character, who have achieved special success in their respective departments of endeavor and become the world's true benefactors, have been men who have been endowed with the strongest natural passions and feelings, and their special achievements indicate the channels into which this inherent power of psychic and physical manhood had by them been directed. Without it, ambition would sleep, virtue would flee, pride would vanish, and we would be as those who are emasculated—impotent, cowardly, and weak. Without it the individual is unfit for life's battles, lacking in the distinctive qualities of sexual beauty, flabby in muscle, weak in mind, and minus the highest qualities of moral sense.

Heredity plays an all-important part in the mode of manifestation of the sexual instincts; so much so, that a single fertilized cell contains all the psychic and physical qualities, dispositions, traits of personality, and mental and physical attributes of ancestors for ages past. All the potentialities are transmitted in this microscopic fertilized cell.

But what is really inherited at the time of the birth of the individual is that innate, inherent quality of psychophysical force—that instinctive primordial "urge," strong or weak as it may be—which is expressed in the various manifestations of the conduct of the individual and indicated by what is commonly referred to as desire. We see it manifested in the new-born chick as it kicks, and scrambles, and bursts its way out of the shell in which it was



developed, and seeks a broader, more favorable environment, where it can grow and develop according to the laws of its being. We see it also manifested in the healthy human infant as it ravenously seizes its mother's nipple when placed in contact with it, and so markedly is this desire manifested that many children are what is sometimes described as "born hungry." This appetite, desire, or craving is generally admitted to be a strong motive to conduct, and this is manifested from the time of birth all the way through the entire life of the individual.

More and more is it dawning upon us that the mode of manifestation of this inherent quality of psychophysical force—or creative energy, natural virility, or life power—depends upon the influences brought to bear upon the individual after we are born. It is at least very largely determined by education, knowledge, and guidance, which is received by the individual in his growth from infancy to manhood, as is furnished by environment.

This guidance, as the result of the influence of environment, may be for the good or harm of the individual. It may be acquired consciously or unconsciously. Who can determine at what age the impressions made upon the receptive tablets of the child's brain plasm are retained, by which ideas, propensities, and inclinations are conserved, to manifest themselves in the life and conduct of the individual later in life?

Contemporary psychologists are agreed that ideas are conserved by the neuron elements, forming psychophysiological complexes, or physiological centers, the functioning of which determines the individual's habits of thought and conduct in after-life. These groups of ideas are conserved by the neuron elements in such a way as to form physiological centers, that carry with them ideas and bodily feelings as well, and these do not always functionate in such way as to conduce to the best interest of the individual. The result is the development of many manifestations of abnormal mental and bodily symptoms, commonly referred to as the functional psychoneuroses. The reason for this inharmony between man's acquired habits of thinking and bodily functions, and those natural physiological processes with which we are born, is the result of false education. All education should be in harmony with

the natural functions of the human body, and not antagonistic to them—as such antagonism will pervert them—if health, happiness, and contentment is to be maintained. This is natural morality, and any educational or religious influence contrary to the laws of nature—such as cause the individual to condemn the body, and regard his normal sexual feelings as sinful, as “lust of the flesh”—is responsible for many unhappy psychoneurotic manifestations, resulting in divorce, suicide, insanity, and often in death. Such religious teaching is positively immoral and deserves to be condemned.

We should not regard our normal sexual feelings as something sinful, low, vile, and lustful, as theological morality has taught. They are, on the contrary, indications of normal virility and belong to all normal, healthful, human beings; and are an indication of creative power that can be directed into lines of healthful, useful endeavor, as various as are the pursuits, pleasures, and avocations of mankind, and should at all times be under the dictation and guidance of reason and judgment.

We are constructed on a double principle. Man has a dual nature, and contains within himself two forms of existence, intimately and mutually interwoven, which are respectively constantly influencing each other, and they should never be at war or out of harmony with each other.

As animals, we have within us the instincts, passions, feelings, and sensations common to all other animal life. As intelligent human beings, we possess a moral will, by which we are able to modify, guide, and direct the bodily motions. Mental action and bodily functions also go hand in hand, constituting the psychic and physical manifestations of man as a psychophysical organism. These mutually influence each other, as is indicated in the old maxim, “mens sana in corpore sano.” This is why many influences commonly designated as sympathies, or irradiations of the nervous system, frequently manifest themselves as psychoneurotic functional disorders. The psychic contents of the personality, as the result of education and environment, are collected in the central nervous system, conserved as dormant physiological complexes, and make themselves manifest as dissociated unconscious reflexes, or as conscious sensations. Hence arise moods—such as mental irrita-

bility, nervousness, perversions of imagination, jealousy, and other obstacles of a normal sexual life—and these are the greatest obstacles to the manifestation of a normal, useful, happy, successful existence as well.

The highest privilege of life is that the individual develop and give to the world the very best personality that can be made of himself—physically, mentally, and morally. This is the very goal of all human endeavor and achievement, and, no matter what success the individual may attain, life is a failure unless one has succeeded in the acquirement of a personality consisting of such physical and mental attributes as are an inspiration and encouragement to other personalities with whom he or she is associated.

The sexual instinct is a phenomenon that has both its physiological and psychological manifestations. In no phase of human conduct do we see the influence of personality upon personality so markedly exhibited as in the sexual relations between man and woman. The love of the normal man is awakened and nourished by essential and natural qualities in woman—beauty, gayety, vivacity, healthy normal love, and devotion—and he values domesticity as well as knowledge; helpful, sympathetic co-operation in his life's duties, as well as physical attractiveness; and in all of the relations of life her influence upon him is as a psycho-physiological depressant if she is unhappy, exacting, quarrelsome, and constantly exhibiting psychoneurotic manifestations. The influence of the personality of the man upon wife, or the wife upon husband, determines one's conscious sensations—pleasant or disagreeable, as the case may be—and no factor in human life so contributes to health, happiness, and success, and all that goes to make life worth while in the world, as the influence exerted by the personality of the individual upon his or her companion in the marriage relation.

Sensations that are pleasant or unpleasant, agreeable or disagreeable, stimulating or depressing, play a most important role in the mental as well as the bodily manifestations of man. Those sensations that arise from an association that produces effects upon mind and body that are pleasant, agreeable, and stimulating to the organism encourage all bodily functions, stimulate the activities



of the mind, and increase the capacity of the individual for mental and physical work, thus evoking health, love, life, and happiness.

Sensations that are unpleasant, disagreeable, and depressing cause mental depression, despondency, and nervous irritability. Such an influence may result in actual pain, and cause a marked inhibition of mental and physical capacities.

Self-preservation is the first law of nature, and therefore it is only in accordance with the constitution of the human organization to perceive as pleasant, agreeable, and stimulating everything favoring itself, as expressed in bodily functions or in mental activity, for all helpful sensations encourage health, success in business pursuits, and happiness as a natural consequence.

Agreeable sensations do much more to contribute to the happiness of man than is generally supposed. They carry with them ideas, feelings, and beliefs that constitute luck, joy, happiness, love, and sympathy. They soothe and satisfy the cravings of the normal human organization, and predispose to active and useful endeavor in the great every-day world.

Disagreeable sensations, on the other hand, are positive psychophysiological depressants. They depress and inhibit the functions of the entire organization, cause nervous and mental irritability, make the individual miserable and unhappy, and rob life of its zest and enthusiasm.

The necessary requisites for a happy and permanent sexual relation concern the entire personality, psychic and physical, in which educational qualifications, mental attributes, acquisitions, and temperament, likes and dislikes, are of equal importance to bodily qualities. The natural attraction of sex to sex, present in the sexual act, is more influenced by psychic qualities—and all that is implied in the word "congeniality"—than by the physiological expression of the desire to gratify sexual passion by orgasm.

Many marriage relations are entered into only from sensual intoxication, as the result of constant association of the opposite sexes, without considering whether psychic qualities exist which make a marriage relation for life possible. Such marriages are often the burial ground for happiness and joy, as well as for a useful life in the business world.

The different developments of character and faults in the parties to a marriage relation, usually as the result of education and environment in early life, frequently cause the disharmony which proves destructive to the home life.

Thus Nystrom has well said: "One thing is certain—viz., that not the most obviously wise legislation concerning marriage, nor the most rigid superintendence, is able to create happiness of married people, safety of children, and happy homes. Love alone can do this, and where it is absent a union is false and marriage is unworthy oppression, which ruins character, and all prattle of infidelity is without inner deeper import."

True love, mutual sympathy, and respect are the fundamental conditions for the happy marital union of two well-developed individuals. This embraces comradeship, understanding, mutual interest, sympathy, loyalty, and all that contributes to the happiness, success, and development of the entire personality.

The sexual relation is only an incident in the life of the parties to a union where the fundamental conditions above enumerated exist, and it is then only one of the numerous ties which unite and hold man and wife together.

In many cases, on the other hand, the sexual act is the only link that binds in the marital relation, and such a relationship is not the same as love. It may be performed as the result of habit, without love or sympathy, in response to the physiological demands of the animal nature, carrying with it no gratification for one party and is a humiliation for the other. Such a relation is devoid of devotion, and thus the main element of sexual life is lacking, and has in it not one element worthy of the participation of a self-respecting being. Sickness, suicide, divorce, or the most unhappy state of existence is the consequence. Many such marriage relations are in existence. The man is willing to surrender his happiness, success, convictions, ideals—his very life—for the sake of the conservation of a home, where the children who are born as the result of his unhappy union may be reared and educated. Such men are martyrs, for the unhappiness they are forced to conceal is worse than the most malignant cancer constantly preying upon life. Of the ten or twelve thousand suicides per annum

in the United States, many that are reported as caused by "business complications" are the result of an unhappy domestic union. Many marriages too early in life are entered into under the influence of emotion, or the stimulus of animal passion, which is mistaken for love. Psychic qualifications do not enter into such relations as an incentive to the selection of a mate. Later on in life man's psychic nature is stronger in its influence upon him than mere animal passion, and sexual intercourse without the stimulus of the higher elements of congeniality produces a surfeit, a disgust, and positive repulsion in perfect accord with the laws of his higher nature.

Man is a being of intelligence, with moral and social ideals, aspiration, reason, ambition, knowledge, perception, and judgment, and, where a union is maintained without congeniality in regard to these higher evolutionary factors of personality, but only as a means of gratifying his animal passions, intercourse is robbed of the essential psychic elements which produce a favorable reaction upon mind and body, without which it is prostitution pure and simple.

Beastiality, or the act of having intercourse with a brute, is not an uncommon occurrence among the uneducated negroes of the southern states. A horse has been known to be the instrument for this disgusting act by a man in whom the higher psychic qualities had not been developed. The sexual act is the same in effect when a man has intercourse with a prostitute, who grants him the privilege of using her body to produce orgasm for a price, as in the instance where the horse was employed. In both instances the essential psychic elements were lacking, and only an individual who has smothered every worthy quality within him, or one in whom they had never been evolved, could engage in such a disgusting relation.

Just in proportion as man rises in the scale of evolution, or has become more civilized, does his sexual instincts become more refined and ennobled, and the qualities of mind and character enter his ideal of what his conjugal mate should be.

Like attracts like in the mating instinct as in other departments of nature. The feminine nature is drawn by the man who most



nearly conforms to her ideal of what a man should be. Beekey, a popular young negress, was infatuated by Jordan, the strongest negro on the farm because he was more than the equal of the other negro men when a test of strength was made at loading cotton, carrying logs, splitting rails, and in all places where physical endurance was the test of manhood. He was also a born fighter, and she gloried in his virile qualities manifested in the most primitive way.

Mary, another negress, was a great church devotee, and no negro man in the neighborhood stood in her estimation as compared with Lewis, the young deacon. She was proud to become his wife because he measured up to her highest ideal of what she conceived a man should be.

And all along up in the scale of civilization, from the lowest to the highest, woman is attracted most by the man who is nearest the embodiment of the physical and psychic qualities which most nearly conform to her ideal. The masculine nature is drawn by the woman who most strongly believes in him, and he naturally desires to be her protector. He is strengthened and encouraged by her confidence, comforted by her sympathy in the battles against environment, and in all of life's struggles made more of a man by her self-sacrifices for his success.

The types of individuality are as varied as are men and women in the world, and among them all this natural sex attraction is in evidence. A woman's ideal of what a man should be depends upon her training, as determined by environment and education. According to her development is she prepared to appreciate the highest qualities of ideal manhood, and she is instinctively drawn to the man most nearly representing in her estimation the characteristics of what true manhood should be; and man is drawn to the woman who most nearly conforms to his ideal of womanly perfection. This element of sympathy pertains more to psychic than to physical qualities, and in this alone does man differ most conspicuously in sexual instincts from those manifested by the brute. Nothing so helps in the making of a man as the love, and confidence, and helpful co-operation of a woman who truly believes in him. She is the *vis a tergo*—the power behind the throne—the mainspring to man's effort at doing and being something in the

world in which he lives, and a true woman wishes no higher place in life than to inspire one man to put forth his energies in the performance of useful, helpful service to mankind. To help him in his work by her love and helpful co-operation and kindly sympathy, and to know that she is justly appreciated by her hero, is the reward that the normal, sane, wholesome woman seeks above all else in the world.

It is but the manifestation of the normal sexual instinct in man that is manifested in any and every line of wholesome, useful, conscientious endeavor, in all that pertains to making himself and family a living, educating and developing them, and contributing his best efforts for the betterment of humanity; and it is but the manifestation of the normal sexual instinct in woman to help him, believe in him, love and encourage him, and so reign as the queen of his home that in her kingdom he can obtain peace and happiness, joy and comfort, and the rest that he needs from a life of care and responsibility.

No human being can stand alone very long unless supported by the love and helpful co-operation of other human beings with whom he is related. As the head of a home, man's life is a fight between himself and the entire world, and his comrade, his fighting mate, his inspiration and encouragement, his best help, must come from the wife who loves him, believes in him and his work, and stands ever ready to contribute all within her power to his happiness and success.

With over ten thousand suicides and fifty thousand divorcees yearly in the United States; with our overcrowded insane asylums, hospitals, and penitentiaries; with weakness, impotency, incompetency and disease thronging our cities, the time has arrived when physicians, and laity as well, should face this question of the guidance of the sexual instinct in the young, so as to equip them to live sane, useful, normal, healthful, happy lives as a means of preventing the disastrous consequences which result from ignorance concerning the power inherent in all human beings, and we should take such measures as would prevent the fate of all who are allowed to drift unguided along in the world into disease, unhappiness, and degeneracy on account of the failure of educators to en-

lighten them upon the simple, practical questions of every-day life. And in efforts to educate and enlighten the young and older people as well it should be remembered that education may be ever so good, principles of life ever so high, but, unless they are in harmony with nature's laws and meet the requirements of the normal, natural individual, they fall short of meeting the requirements of the needs of mankind.

Conscience, that secret monitor which decides the righteousness or sinfulness of our actions, is the result of education, and has a tremendous influence upon the guidance of the sexual instinct. Most children either have no instruction in regard to the sexual function or they have been wrongly taught.

To send children to church, and leave all moral guidance to its influence, is not sufficient. It is idle to promulgate lofty theories and sentiments when we are brought face to face with conditions that should be handled practically. It may appear beautiful to teach a boy to sing, "There is sunshine in my soul today," but we who have seen the miserable mental depression and physical suffering resulting from gonorrhoea and syphilis contracted by unthinking youths, or the despondency with which they suffer later on in life as the result of masturbation, know that it is far wiser to talk to them plainly about the sexual functions and give them that knowledge that all boys are eager to receive, and thus save them from the pitfalls that lurk in their pathway by an earnest appeal to their reasoning faculties.

Many people look with disapproval upon any effort to solve the problem of social vice. They pride themselves in their ignorance and call this purity, but violations of natural laws in innocence and ignorance are attended with the same penalty as other crimes of misconduct.

To teach children to sing, "We will walk in the light," and not forewarn them of the consequences of physical degradation and vice, is mockery and deceit.

It is in early childhood that we can plant sense impressions or suggestions upon the soft tablets of their brain plasm, and so form habits of thought and action that will make them conquerors in life. The consequences of vice as a hindrance to their develop-



ment should be explained to children, and constantly iterated and repeated by those responsible for their training. They should be made to feel that every part of their body was created for a purpose, and that function should be carefully explained to them. They should not be allowed to become ashamed of their procreative organs, but should be taught to regard their care and preservation as a sacred trust, and that upon that care and preservation their future happiness, health, and success in life will largely depend.

Children should be taught that every living thing, from man down to the lowest insect, comes into the world as the result of the union between the sexes by coaptation of the sexual organs, and that, instead of regarding sexual cohabitation as low and degraded, it is nature's method of procreating the species, and therefore the most sacred of all relations. As a means of self-preservation, they should be taught the harmful effects of self-pollution, or pollution by others, and wisely trained to bring their bodies, minds, and characters into perfect manhood and womanhood, so that they can be prepared to enter the marriage relation well qualified for man's and woman's greatest usefulness to the world—that of populating it with children well endowed with all the physical and psychical attributes to make the highest type of the species.

There is a time in the life of every boy and girl, just as they enter the age of puberty, when they feel the thrill of the sexual impulse, and, witnessing the rapid development of the organs of generation, they seek from every available source information upon this most vital subject, and in the majority of instances are falsely educated by those who are thrown in their environment, without the slightest warning of the danger that comes from the abuse of these most beautiful emotions and most worthy aspirations. Children should know that such passions are but an evidence of energy that seeks to find expression in their lives and conduct, and that such energies can, by the guidance of reason, be turned into intellectual and physical development. They should be so trained that their habits of thought and action during the first twenty years of life will produce strong bodies, clear minds, and buoyant, happy spirits. The best development comes in the un-

conscious exercise of a child's faculties in wholesome endeavor and useful employment, such as will call both mind and body into action.

Children should be taught to know that their bodily passions are but the indications of awakening and developing capabilities of mind and body, and that these they can restrain, control, direct, and govern. They should be taught how to divert their surplus energy into channels of useful work and achievement—such as will result in mental development and muscular strength, and that will qualify them to make the fight against environment for all that constitutes success, happiness, and usefulness in the world. The results of masturbation should be carefully explained to them, and the possibility of disease and pregnancy resulting from an effort to gratify their passions in an illegitimate way should be pointed out.

Children have a right to know the truth about all these questions of life which most concern their future welfare. We warn them against the danger of firearms and deep water, and of the risk they take in exposure to ferocious beasts, but the care and protection of their minds and bodies we leave too often to the guidance of utterly unreliable sources.

The meaning of kissing, hugging, fondling, and caressing between the sexes should be taught, and the utility of these love manifestations in the marriage relation emphasized, both for their future happiness as well as a means of self-protection from the standpoint of virtue and as a safeguard from disease.

The moral cowardice of men and women in regard to these matters is worthy of deepest contempt. Even some physicians, who reap a reward of thousands of dollars yearly on account of the indiscretions of ignorance and youth, vigorously protest against any movement to educate and enlighten those who are surrounded by a thousand pitfalls.

The pursuit of happiness is the incentive to the acts of all human beings as well as the motive of conduct of the lower forms of life, and children should have the education that the human animal needs to meet the requirements of his primitive instincts and to

adapt his life to conform to the requirements of morality and of civilization as well.

Prevention of disease, poverty, unhappiness, insanity, divorce, suicide, crime, incompetency, illiteracy, and all that tends to the degeneracy of the human race are the watchwords of the present age. The tendency of the age is toward the growth of convictions that are more concerned with the conduct of life and the development of the individual qualification for meeting the exigencies of life, incident to making his struggle for existence, than mere belief in dogma. There is a growing conviction among all well-educated people that the work of physicians, educators, politicians, philanthropists, social servants, jurists, theologians, and commercial men should be in closer touch, in greater harmony, in deeper sympathy for the accomplishment of the best results in either field. The line of demarkation between work that is secular and work that is religious, work that is human and work that is divine, is growing less and less every day, and scientific knowledge practically applied for the social, moral, mental, and physical welfare of humanity is permeating every phase of human life. Body, mind, and character are so related that their development can not be separated. It is practically impossible to obtain the highest development of one element of human personality while the others remain weak or degraded. The test of the value of any line of work is displayed in its influence on the development of man as a whole. The final test must ever be found in the character and purpose of the individual effort to contribute to the public weal. We have reached that stage in the development of the virile human intellect where we have ceased to become afraid. Progress is the order of the world, and to have a part in the universal movement for the uplifting of humanity is the work that is most worth while.

As we advance in knowledge we behold a new order of things. Old conceptions are dropping out of sight, and we have a clearer viewpoint of life, duty, and destiny. Only those who are inert and impotent mentally and morally are content to be satisfied with the existing order of things. Too long have we submitted, under the guise of religion, to the promulgation of those ideas not in harmony with the teachings of modern science, with the result that life has



been suppressed, intellect has been overthrown, and all the potentialities inherent within the protoplasmic elements of the individual stifled and, smothered.

Those who speak lightly of the functional psychoneuroses, including such as the undifferentiated depressions, psychasthenia, hypochondriasis, neurasthenia, hysteria, and obsessions, and disregard the part played by education and environment in their etiology, are asleep, and they need to be aroused from their lethargy.

The prophylactic spirit, so conspicuously at work in applying the principles of bacteriology and immunity to the prevention of infectious diseases, is no less in evidence in the field of preventive insanity, preventive degeneracy, poverty, crimes, drunkenness, and other conditions resulting from perverted or misguided potentialities. Who can say that neurasthenic symptoms, if neglected for a sufficient length of time, will not become a contributing factor in paresis, dementia precox, paranoia, or a maniacal depressive insanity?

The treatment of the psychoneuroses, which are usually the result of the failure of the individual to receive that guidance of his powers of mind and body to qualify him or her to exercise them in wholesome, useful lives of thought and action by psychotherapeutic measures—which embrace moral education, physical education, prophylactic education, as well as the employment of suggestion both with and without hypnosis—in order to overcome the harmful effects produced by false education upon the functional activity of the neuron elements, if timely administered, would prevent a greater proportion of the insanities than is commonly supposed. The people in our insane asylums are the same kind that we see every day on the outside, but with exaggerated differences. All that is needed for a great portion of the human race to develop manifestations of insanity is the unfortunate environment that has surrounded during infancy and childhood those who are insane. The heredity of many of us is not better than those mental defectives who are allowed to become so because of false education, and, had the same environing influences fallen to our lot, the results would have been the same.

Children should be given something truthful and practical to

think about and to act upon—they should be taught to exercise their faculties by early wholesome work and employment. They should be made to feel that they are helpers in carrying the burdens of life and thus develop self-reliance. They should be made to realize that they have within themselves an inherent quality of psychophysical force, or natural virility, which they can exercise so as to be of real use in the world.

They should be made to realize that every man is a creator—that he is endowed not only with procreative energy, as is indicated by the normal sexual feelings, but that this is one manifestation of that innate, inherent capacity of mind and body with which his influence in the world of thought and action will be felt by his kind.

Desire is the positive part of our being, and by it the normal instincts are manifested. These, by false education, may be repressed, perverted, or stifled, and abused, as the case may be; or they can, as the result of education, knowledge, and guidance, be encouraged into normal lines of activity, by which the individual is developed and the best interest of the human race conserved.

The world has not yet adequately realized the importance of the recognition, use, and guidance of the natural virility of the human being. To use it right, we need a degree of intelligence to which the human race has not yet attained. To equip us to use it in normal, healthful lines of thought and action is the problem of education, the problem of science, and its guidance concerns all that contributes to the evolution of the human race.

In the education and intelligent guidance of the natural virility of man, or of the sexual instinct, lies the method of true reform, which deals with causes and not effects. It opens the way to individual emancipation and progress, and the regeneration of society should follow. Conventions and mass meetings avail nothing in the decision of the way to direct this natural virility within us all. That is a problem for the individual, and one which every one must sooner or later solve according to his limited knowledge and experience, and through its intelligent guidance is his happiness, health, sanity, and success in life determined. Preparation to guide and direct our energies into lines of wholesome, useful, helpful endeavor is not to be acquired or assumed by a psychological

change called conversion. It must come by effort, education, development, and growth, in accordance with the laws of the evolution of the psychic and physical potentialities in man.

Intelligent guidance of the sexual instinct must come as the result of long and persistent training, and in childhood is the time to begin this training. Life consists in the exercise of our faculties and functions, and happiness results from the performance of duty and from successful achievement.

We are in the world for growth and development. We are each endowed with a mind and a will to use for ourselves. We have within us high and noble aspirations, which have spurred us on to develop and train this mind, that we may comprehend the physical and mental laws by which we are controlled. Long and tedious has been the way, slow and painful has been our ascent from darkness into light. Every foot of our progress has been obstinately contested by ignorance, superstition, fanaticism, and misdirected zeal. The illumined genius of man has never evolved a life-saving or mind-soothing discovery that has not been bitterly fought by the great masses of the people. It has been ever thus, and will be until the end of time.

The intelligent guidance of the sexual instinct involves all that contributes to the evolution of the individual. It embraces the question of food, home, clothing, education, work, exercise, mental and physical development, beliefs, moral teaching, and companionship. Its guidance is an attempt to direct the course of that sublimely grand evolutionary principle which extends from the lowest form of animal life up to the most highly cultured man and woman.

According to the physical development of the individual are his sexual instincts manifested, and according to his psychic development are they guided, whether by the impulse actuated by physiological desire from within the protoplasmic elements of his own being or by the psychophysiological influences exerted from without. One thing is certain—the guidance of the sexual instinct in the young, before the psychic development of the individual has rendered him competent to become master of his own potentialities, is most beneficent in its results, and it may exercise a potent in-



fluence for the good or harm of the individual throughout his entire existence.

No sectarian interpretation of the problems of life contains the clue to its correct guidance, but the knowledge obtained from all books of science, philosophy, sociology, history, psychology, and all religions—the accumulated knowledge of the ages—sheds light upon this important question. The times demand a leadership that will appeal to reason and not to ignorance, to the intellect and not to prejudice—a philosophy that will develop the individual into the complete statue of man and womanhood and not suppress the normal physiological activities of the human organism, nor inhibit the normal manifestations of his or her personality.

The influence of mind upon mind, or the influence of suggestion, must be fully comprehended before one can appreciate the disastrous influence of a religion not in accord with the facts as revealed by science. Children, and grown people as well, are capable of believing only those things that come within the domain of personal experience. The untrained and uneducated mind, unacquainted with the facts of science, can be taught to believe anything, be it true or false, and the majority of people at the present time go through life fettered by beliefs thrust upon them during childhood. The greater portion of the old people of our age are nothing more than grown-up children so far as brain power and intellectual development are concerned. The only hope for the individual to escape from the consequences of his unfortunate heredity and environment is by self-education, self-development, and self-control.

The religion does not exist and will never exist that contains all the requirements of a perfect guidance for human conduct. Evolution, growth, and change in religious concepts must keep pace with the intellectual development of mankind, or they stand as positive hindrances to the progress of all that conduces to the best interest of the human race.

No sane individual can protest against an effort to promote the moral development of the human race, but, when a belief is promulgated that robs this life of its zest and enthusiasm, fetters the human mind, and weakens the body, it is high time that we should

manifest character and true manhood sufficient to demand a higher, truer, and more enlightened philosophy of life. The old anthropomorphic conception of deity, capricious and bloodthirsty, must be replaced by a conception that embraces the idea of a universe that is ruled by law. Man, as an intelligent being, must be recognized as a part of the universal intelligence that rules the world; and, while yet under the rule of law, it is his privilege to discover the laws of the universe, of which he is a part, and to so conform his life and conduct thereto that health and happiness can be maintained.

The old conception of this life as a vale of tears, that must be endured until we are transported to a locality of everlasting happiness, must be replaced by one in which life is regarded as our opportunity for growth, education, and development, and our immortality must consist in the contribution made by us to the sum total of human happiness.

The hope of humanity consists in the belief that each human being will some day so strive to contribute his best efforts to the furtherance of the highest and best qualities of manhood and womanhood, that he may—like a tiny pebble that, when cast into a body of water, causes a ripple that grows larger and larger—affect each human life with which he becomes associated in such manner that his influence will be felt in the evolution of the human race down the centuries of time throughout eternity.

In this struggle for the higher development of mankind, man and woman will go hand in hand, side by side, without which united effort neither can attain the greatest development or accomplish the best service.

The time comes in the life of every highly-developed man when his strongest desires—the normal aspirations of his natural virility—are to give to the world the highest and best expression of his life in deeds of useful endeavor and in helpful service in perfect accord with the laws of his psychic nature. The highly-developed woman does not desire to hold him back or hinder his activities; on the contrary, she prefers to push him out into the arena, so that her woman's femininity will not, through force of its love, cause him to be weakened and to grow effeminate—to lose any of his

normal virility. For, no matter how intensely a woman may love, if she is true and her love is pure, she prefers not the continual presence of her lover at her feet, but to watch his fight with his fellowman—to see him conquer, to be victorious, to know he loves the struggle because he loves her—and she loves and adores him as her hero because he **dares and does**. Thus the sexual instinct finds expression in the higher development of the individual and promotes the best interest of the human race. It matters not how interested a man or woman may become in their respective work, or how worthy its purpose, over them at times come feelings of “longing, lonesomeness, and love,” which is the natural attraction of sex to sex, without which no life is normal, and through which the species is reproduced and happiness obtained, in accordance with the natural laws governing the normal instincts of all human beings.

In this manner we should strive to obtain happiness—to make this earth an empire of love, where happy and healthy people can enjoy their existence, and the mind should be open for all that is beautiful, pure, and true, vibrating with joy and the love of life.



## CHAPTER XVI.

### PSYCHOANALYSIS IN THE TREATMENT OF THE PSYCHONEUROSES.

America's ablest neurologists and psychiatrists now boldly assert that the greatest triumph of neurology is its successful employment of measures aimed to modify the mental mechanism underlying the symptomatic manifestations presented in that class of nervous diseases designated as the psychoneuroses, which embrace hysteria, psychasthenia, and the large "heap" of neurotic disturbances included in the so-called neurasthenia.

This sentiment is well voiced by Dr. J. J. Putnam, professor of nervous and mental diseases in the Harvard Medical School, in these well-chosen words:<sup>1</sup>

"The neurologists of the present day tend less and less to treat the nervous invalids intrusted to their care in accordance with the principles of a narrow 'militarism' or as subjects for cajoling, and more and more as reasonable beings, possessed of consciences and independent wills, and capable of intelligent co-operation. In proportion as our knowledge of mental life has become deeper and more accurate, there has been a growing tendency to seek further and further for the causes of distressing symptoms—whether these causes lie in the environment of the patient, or in habits, instincts, and experiences dating back to the years of childhood, or expressed in inherited physical traits."

The interest in this special branch of applied psychotherapeutic technic has arisen from the investigations of Freud, Bleuler, Brener, Babinski, Jung, Prince, Sidis, Meyer, and others, and has resulted in the employment of a method of diagnosis and treatment of the psychoneuroses by laying bare and remedying the pathological mechanisms underlying the symptomatic manifestations presented

---

<sup>1</sup> Psychotherapy, by Morton Prince and others, consisting of the papers presented before the American Therapeutic Society, May, 1909. Published by Richard G. Badger, Boston.

in the individual case, and the technic of the procedure is known as psychoanalysis.

It is more especially through the work of Freud, of Vienna, that the psychoanalytic form of psychotherapy has been given to the medical profession. That the method, and the theory upon which it is based, represents one of the most important steps in the evolution of psychotherapy, particularly as applied to the treatment of the psychoneuroses, and is destined to become more and more useful, just in proportion as the theory and technic of its application is simplified and rendered more rational, as the result of further development, is beyond question to the fair-minded investigator. That the ability to successfully apply the psychoanalytic form of psychotherapy must be limited to those having a special adaptability for comprehending, appreciating, and employing the simpler methods of psychotherapeutic technic must be equally certain. The efficacy of any therapeutic or surgical procedure will, in most cases, depend upon the development of the personal capacity of the individual employing it. The truth of this assertion can not be denied. The same rule holds good with the employment of the psychoanalytic method of treatment as applies to other departments of medical practice. Professional skill is the result of work, study, and painstaking development.

In many respects, Freud's psychology harmonizes with my own theoretical explanations for the results obtained from other methods of employing suggestion in all classes of medical and surgical practice. The essential difference in his technic lies in his method of employing suggestion as a means of detecting and remedying the effects of previous harmful suggestions—or "psychic traumas," as he calls them—due to experiences occurring in early childhood and other processes of experience. The essential difference in his theory is in his conviction that the dissociated functioning complexes which are within the domain of the subconscious, conserving the painful ideas which are the most productive factors in the etiology of neurotic symptoms, are, in the ultimate analysis, those consisting of wishes or impulses related in some way to the sexual instinct, representing the pathological fulfillment of a repressed wish, and having its origin in the sexual incidents of infancy and early

**childhood**, producing the traumas which are the psychogenetic factors responsible for the neurosis developed in later life.

I will discuss these two points of technic and theory in which Freud's methods are so radically different from my own after showing the points of similarity, or harmony, existing between his views and those set forth by me in the present and previous editions of this book. In doing so I hope to set a correct valuation on Freud's contribution to the psychology of the psychoneuroses, as well as to illustrate the **small value of his methods of psychotherapeutic application.**

The *ipse dixit* of some recent writers, purporting to describe Freud's methods, denies that suggestion plays any part in the method of employing psychoanalysis, or that it is to its efficacy that the cure is effected. On this point I was an agnostic until reading a description of his technic by Freud himself, showing that he uses suggestion from the start to the finish of his psychoanalytic procedure, with the special intent of eliciting the autosuggestions of the patient, so that the mature judgment of the individual patient can react to the evidence evoked through recalling effectively to his memory the influence of experiences of the forgotten past, which have been responsible for his neurotic symptoms. In this he is conforming to a well-known principle known by every one making successful employment of any method of applied suggestion—i. e., that every suggestion, to be effective, must be presented in such a manner as to be accepted and assimilated as an autosuggestion. No suggestion can be effective if not presented to the patient in such a manner as to appeal to the reason, to the voluntary desire, to the intelligent will of the patient, unless it be by forcibly attempting to dominate, coerce, or intimidate the patient, a method which is as unreasonable as the attempt to hold up a victim at the point of a pistol, and is unjustifiable under any circumstances.

This method of intimidation, or of forcing a suggestion upon the undeveloped personality, is the method of the stage hypnotist, and is the method employed by Freud to extort from the subconsciousness of the undeveloped hysterical patient a revelation of his most intimately guarded psychic processes, as is clearly shown by Freud's description of his technic, though he carefully omits a



record of the suggestions given to the patient, which would prove the correctness of my assertion.

The reader must study Freud himself, as shown in his writings, to appreciate the dominating power of his suggestions in his effort to invade the secret precincts of the human soul, or to understand how he exacts from the subconsciousness of his patients the repressed ideas which were incompatible with the wishes of the conscious ego, and were producing the disagreeable feelings responsible for the symptomatic manifestations.

In so far as the principle, or theory, is concerned, when not carried to the extreme of forcing the individual neurotic to reveal the remote and innocent experiences of childhood, it contains much that is sane, sound, practical, and useful. But the application of the principle involved has its limitations, and these are not recognized by Freud or set forth in his writings. The method as advocated by him is liable to produce untold harm, even to the extent of inciting the patient, under certain conditions, to self-destruction, or to be so painfully self-conscious of his or her shortcomings that it is capable of rendering life more unbearable, and will serve to add to the severity of the neurosis instead of remedying it.

Be it far from me to discredit the theories and technic elucidated by Freud, and described in his writings, which have been accepted by so many able physicians as "scientific psychotherapy." On the other hand, let us not forsake or discredit the results of our own investigations which have proved to be of practical utility in the hands of thousands of conscientious American physicians.

In any department of human knowledge, coming as the result of painstaking investigation, we can react to the influence of ideas only according to our individual experience. Consequently, no two men can view the ideas obtained through personal association or from literature in the same light. It is in this spirit that I shall attempt an elucidation of psychoanalysis, for Freud's method can never be my method. All that I obtain from his theory and technic must go through the refining alembic of my own reasoning, and, whether it is or is not made to be of more practical utility to the reader by the resulting modification, will still remain a matter of individual viewpoint. My purpose is not to seek the approval of

the small handful of pupils of Freud and Jung, but to exact the practical from the subconsciousness of the ideas presented by these men after the method of psychoanalysis, and give to the general practitioner an account of the underlying principles in such manner as to be of practical utility. I shall endeavor to make Freud's ideas conform to my individual viewpoint, though setting them forth for the judgment of the reader to decide for himself, and for the forthcoming distortion of the originator's concept the reader must not hold Freud entirely responsible. If the result of my effort can give the reader only a sufficient glimpse into the subject of psychoanalysis to serve as an incentive to a further investigation of the Freudian theories, together with the evidence against his extreme theories as viewed by other writers, I will be more than compensated for the audacity manifested in undertaking to express my individual convictions on this subject.

My sixteen years of experience with the employment of psychotherapeutic procedures in all departments of medicine and surgery, in conjunction with all other sane and rational surgical, medicinal, hygienic, dietetic, and other therapeutic procedures, has been conserved as functioning complexes, which do not react to the stimulus of high-sounding theories like those newly created complexes only recently formed in virgin soil. In other words, I am unable to react to the teaching of Freud in the same manner as the man with little or no experience in the general application of psychotherapeutic procedures reacts to all classes of medical practice.

It was with intense interest that I read the reports of the cases treated by Freud, in the translation by Brill, entitled "Hysteria and the Psychoneuroses," as well as his addresses delivered on the occasion of the twentieth anniversary of the opening of Clarke University, translated from the German by Harry W. Chase, on "The Origin and Development of Psychoanalysis." These contributions by Freud were of particular interest to me because of the strong similarity of his theories and practical technic, together with the radical differences of the same, to my own personal experiences, theories, and writings, though expressed in an entirely different terminology, and limited in its application by him to only a small field.

So far as his results from the employment of the psychoanalytic form of psychotherapy are concerned, I have herein reported a much greater variety of cases, showing the applicability of suggestion both with and without hypnosis, and employed in all varieties of medical and surgical practice. Moreover, so far as its application to the treatment of hysteria is concerned, I have reported many more cases, showing results obtained from the employment of the simpler methods in equally, if not more, difficult cases, and which were accomplished in only a small fraction of the time required by the technic described and elucidated by Freud, and not limited exclusively to the higher classes of intelligence, which he has most emphatically assured us are the only patients suitable for the employment of his method.

As many hystericals are, like the Christian scientists, inordinately proud of their superior "intelligence," this claim will no doubt catch many patients. In this claim for the adaptability of the method only to those of superior intelligence we discern a very clever use of disguised suggestion as a means of obtaining patients. A very good ruse, so far as the interest of the physician is concerned, but of no value for the interest of the scientific application of psychotherapy.

In deference to Freud's methods, I must repeat again, the reader can never fairly appreciate the value of his contributions to the evolution of psychotherapy, particularly his psychology as applied to the better understanding of the psychoneuroses, without a careful study of the methods and theories as presented by Freud himself, nor will he be able to fairly estimate the theories of Freud and other foreign investigators without a careful study of the writings of Prince, Münsterberg, and Sidis, to say nothing of Putnam, Meyer, Brill, and other well-known American writers, whose names are mentioned in the preface of the present edition of this book. The more thoroughly one studies this subject from the writings of all who have contributed to its development, the better will he be able to judge of the practicability and soundness of the methods which the writer has given to the profession, and which stand unscathed and unreprouched by all of these scholarly investigators. In the hewing out of the crude, coherent mass our conception of



rational psychotherapy, let us adhere to the line of truth, letting the chips fall where they will.

As to Freud's sexual theories and their relation to the psychogenetic origin of the psychoneuroses, I am not prepared to indorse them. On the other hand, I am free to say that more and more have I become convinced of the importance of the guidance of the sexual instinct in the earliest years of infancy and childhood, construing the "sexual instinct" in the broad manner indicated in the foregoing chapter on this subject. As unpopular as is the sexual subject in America, I have dared to express my convictions freely, however much the personal sacrifice may prove. The change of a single word in Freud's sexual theories and their relation to hysteria would make them very nearly harmonize with my individual opinions on this subject.

Freud tells that "he who understands the language of hysteria can understand that the neurosis deals only with the **repressed sexuality**. One should, however, understand the sexual function in its proper sphere as circumscribed by the infantile predisposition. Where a banal emotion has to be added to the causation of the disease, the analysis regularly shows that the sexual components of the traumatic experience, which are never missing, have exercised the pathogenic effect."

I would transpose his statement as follows: He who understands the language of hysteria can understand that the neurosis deals only with a **repressed personality**. One should, however, understand that sexuality is one of the component elements of every normal human being, and that all the elements going to make up the development of the personality are influenced by hereditary predisposition, and that where a banal emotion has been added to the causation of the disease the analysis regularly shows that the environing influences of early childhood have been the determining factors in contributing to the development of the neurosis, and the sexual component **may or may not** have entered into the traumatic experience exercising the pathogenic effect.

As long back as 1897 I had frequently removed hysterical symptoms by employing suggestion in the hypnotic state to detect the forgotten painful experience contributing to the development of the

symptoms manifested, discussed the incidents which were painful and objectionable to the conscious ego, and again hypnotized my patient for the purpose of removing the hysterical symptoms manifested, with complete and permanent success. By this means I not only brought into the consciousness of the patient memories of painful experiences which were responsible for the feelings of depression—nervousness, insomnia, and other neurotic manifestations—but by the clearer understanding of the gross psychogenetic factors, or “psychic traumas,” contributing to the development of the symptoms with which I had to deal, I was better enabled to re-educate my patient, after I had obtained this new insight into his relations to his life’s problems, so as to equip him for readaptation to his present and future environment.

In many of these patients the irritating subconscious factor, or series of factors, which was responsible for the repression and retardation of the development of the patient’s personality had so interfered with the functions of the physiological machinery as to markedly lessen the mental and physical capacities of the patient, and he was unfit to take up the duties and responsibilities incident to the strain and stress of his occupation until his physiological machinery could re-establish the lessened physical resistance which had resulted as a consequence of the disturbing psychogenetic factor or factors. In such cases, detecting the psychogenetic factors was only the beginning of the treatment by other means. Until the physiological machinery of the patient could be qualified to meet the duties and responsibilities incident to his struggle for existence, hypnotic suggestion, suggestion without hypnotism, reasoning, persuasion, re-education, exercise, gymnastics, and dietetic and hygienic instruction were all essential to the qualification of the patient for obtaining a sufficiently stable mental and physical condition commensurate with a happy, useful existence. These patients were taken from every department of life.

On the other hand, the cases reported by Freud were patients whose lot in life had been without the physical strain and stress of the individuals constituting 95 percent of our American citizenship. His patients, according to his reports, knew nothing of physical hardships. They were reared more like “hot house flow-

ers," as his reports clearly show and as he positively assures us, though he uses other words to express it. Moreover, the expense of treatment by methods requiring as long a time as is required by Freud to accomplish results according to his "favorite method" would bar fully 95 percent of the average American psychoneurotics, since we are informed by one of his pupils that Freud devotes an hour each day for from one to three years to effect a cure in some of his cases. Even those effected by him in much shorter time are at a considerable expense to the patient on account of the relatively long time required.

Freud tells us:<sup>1</sup> "The process is toilsome and wearisome for the physician; it presumes a profound interest for psychological incidents as well as personal sympathy for the patient. I could not conceive myself entering deeply into the psychic mechanism of a hysteria in a person who appeared to me common and disagreeable, and who would not, on closer acquaintanceship, be able to awaken in me human sympathy; whereas I can well treat a tabetic or a rheumatic patient regardless of such personal liking. Not less are the requisites on the patient's side. The process is especially inapplicable below a certain niveau of intelligence. It is rendered extremely difficult wherever there is the least tinge of weakmindedness. It requires the full consent and attention of the patients—but, above all, their confidence, for the analysis regularly leads to the inmost and most sacredly guarded psychic processes. A large proportion of the patients suitable for such treatment withdraw from the physician as soon as they become cognizant whither his investigations tend; to them the physician remains a stranger. In others, who have determined to give themselves up to the physician and bestow their confidence upon him—something usually voluntarily given, but never demanded—in all those, I say, it is hardly avoidable that the personal relation to the physician should not become unduly prominent, at least for some time. Indeed, it seems as if such influence exerted by the physician is a condition under which alone a solution of the problem is made possible. I do not believe that it makes any essential difference in this connection whether we make use of hypnosis, or have to avoid or substi-

<sup>1</sup> *Hysteria and Other Psychoneuroses.*—Translation by Brill, page 84.



tute it. Yet fairness demands that we emphasize the fact that, although these inconveniences are inseparable from our method, they nevertheless can not be charged to it. It is much more evident that they are formed in the preliminary neurosis to be cured, and that they attach themselves to **every medical activity** which intensively concerns itself with the patient, and produce in him a psychic change. I can see no harm or danger in the application of hypnosis even in those cases where it was used excessively. The causes for the harm produced lay elsewhere and deeper."

So, according to the statements of the originator of psychoanalysis, by the method employed and taught by him, the agent stands condemned, so far as its value to the greater majority of psychoneurotics is concerned.

In reading the latter half of the above quotation from Freud, I could hardly believe the evidence of my own senses, since I had learned from some of his pupils that he regarded the employment of hypnosis as an unjustifiable personal relation between the physician and patient, and, so far as my limited knowledge of the opinions of Freud will warrant, I have found no statement from him to contradict his expressed opinion that he "can see no danger in the application of hypnosis even where it was used excessively."

In the name of common honesty, why do some recent writers make such statements as to convey the idea that the relation between a physician and his patient where psychoanalysis is employed is so essentially different from that where hypnotic suggestion, or any other medical or surgical agency, is employed?

The jealousy exhibited by some neurologists, going so far as to maliciously falsify, in their zeal to limit psychotherapeutic expedients to the small handful of Freud's personal pupils, who are purported to be the only individuals qualified to employ psychoanalysis, is, to say the least, unworthy of scientific men. If they mean to follow their leader, let them learn the a b c of his honesty of purpose and strive to emulate his example.

The reader is now prepared, if he has followed me comprehensively, to understand my reasons for not being so enthusiastic over the employment of psychoanalysis, as an exclusive psychotherapeutic agent, in the treatment of the psychoneuroses, as the Freud-

ians, who would have us believe that this method of treatment is the only psychotherapeutic agency worthy of employment by the "well-trained neurologist."

My relation to the medical profession, in regard to psychotherapeutic methods, is such that I am obliged to stand alone. My efforts have been to help the general practitioner to procure for himself, from the great mass of psychotherapeutic knowledge, the useful and practical, as applied in the treatment of all classes of patients, coming under the domain of the general practice of medicine. All psychotherapeutic methods look alike to me, and I can not afford to give undue prominence to any one procedure until its proven utility warrants its high commendation. The fact remains, however, that the medical profession is indebted to Freud for a most important contribution to the evolution of psychotherapy, particularly his psychology of the psychoneuroses, however much his method of therapeutic application deserves to be improved.

However much his technic may be altered or his theories challenged, the truths that he has set forth will attest his deep comprehension of human nature, and emphasize the importance of a better understanding of the psychogenetic factors contributing to the etiology of the psychoneuroses, just in proportion as his work is studied by the intelligent, open-minded investigator, **who holds himself well in hand**, with the view of finding the sane, the useful, and the practical contained in his presentation. From the darkness of a comparatively unexplored field of scientific study, Freud has brought to light many beautiful truths, however mixed with the irrational they may be, which are useful and practical.

Without an attempt at discrimination for the time being, let us now see what some of Freud's ideas are, so as to be better equipped to understand the therapeutic application of psychoanalysis, taking, first, a glance into Freud's psychology, upon which the psychoanalytic method of treatment, by whatever modification it may be therapeutically applied, is founded.

Freud has conclusively demonstrated that it is the emotional life which furnishes the dynamic energy which guides and controls the actions of both normal and abnormal persons. Every case of hysteria is the result of a series of psychic traumas, occurring at some

period in the life of the neurotic, and these represent the steps in the development of the neurosis. No single experience can be responsible for the symptoms manifested, but usually several or many, each contributing to the effect of the former experiences. Every experience which produces the painful effect of fear, anxiety, shame, or other psychic pain may act as a psychic trauma. The psychic trauma, or the memory of the same, acts like a foreign body, which, even long after its penetration, must continue to act like a new causative factor.

According to Freud, the etiologically effective traumas from which hysterical symptoms are derived reach to experiences which belong to the patient's childhood and concern his sexual life. Even where a banal emotion of a nonsexual nature has occasioned the outburst of the disease, this can be traced back to the sexual traumas of childhood.

“The incomparable significance of sexual experiences in the etiology of the psychoneuroses seems therefore firmly established, and this fact remains until today one of the main supports of the theory.”<sup>1</sup>

In the application of psychoanalysis for the relief of the psychoneurosis it is necessary to reproduce from the subconscious into the conscious memory of the patient the entire series of pathogenic memories in chronological order, the last coming first and the first last.

The nervous system faithfully conserves the experiences and “complexes” resulting from the emotional excitations during the life of the patient—stand like monuments, conserving the original experiences—so that hysterical patients suffer from conscious or unconscious reminiscences, from which they are powerless to escape. This conservation and fixation of the experiences producing the psychic traumas are the essential characteristics of the neurosis. When these complexes are stimulated, the patient is under the embarrassing situation of having to suppress strong feelings, or he must give vent to them in conscious words or actions. Only childhood experiences can explain the excessive sensitiveness to later traumas, and only when these memory traces, which are

<sup>1</sup> Hysteria and Other Psychoneuroses.—Translation by Brill, page 188.



almost always forgotten, are discovered and made conscious is the power developed to banish the symptoms.

Freud further tells us that, as a protective measure, the individual receiving a psychic trauma attempts to force out the painful and disagreeable idea from his conscious memory, resulting frequently in a splitting off from the main content of the conscious personality, the complexes conserving the experience. Though submerged below the threshold of consciousness, these emotional complexes take on an automatic or independent activity. Thus the individual, being unaware of the functioning of the complexes conserving the emotions, feeling tones, and other sensations, is harassed by neurotic manifestations, to be reproduced in his conduct as often as they are stimulated by similar associations. In the same individual several mental groupings are possible, functioning independently of each other, presenting, if may be, a double or multiple personality. When such splitting occurs, the conscious personality represents one or the other of the respective mental groups, while the other, or others, remains unconscious. The hysterical is incapable of correlating and unifying the various mental states resulting from his manifold experiences—hence his tendency to mental dissociation.

Freud employs suggestion by the induction of a state of suggestibility which might be regarded as a light hypnosis, though he claims no similarity to this condition of abstraction to hypnosis, to revive from the subconscious the forgotten experiences, frequently having considerable resistance to overcome, before extorting from the subconsciousness memories that were apparently lost. On this idea is based his theory of the psychic mechanism of hysteria. In order to cure his patient, it was only necessary to bring to bear suggestion with sufficient effectiveness to exact from the subconsciousness the memory of the pathogenic experiences that had been crowded out of the consciousness of the patient by the repression process, which he regards as characteristic of the mechanism of hysteria. He informs us that in all such experiences it happened that a wish had been aroused, which was in sharp opposition to the other desires of the individual, which was not capable of being reconciled with the ethical, esthetic, and personal preten-

sions of the patient's conscious personality; that there had been a short conflict, and the end of the inner struggle was the repression of the idea which presented itself to the subconsciousness as the bearer of this irreconcilable wish. This was, then, repressed from consciousness and forgotten. The incompatibility of the idea in question with the "ego" of the patient was the motive for the repression—the ethical and other pretensions of the individual were the repressing forces.

The presence of the incompatible wish, or the duration of the conflict, Freud considers, had given rise to a high degree of mental pain, which pain was avoided by repression. The later process is evidently in such a case a device for the protection of the conscious personality. However, the repressed presentation then avenges itself by becoming pathogenic, and the hysterical symptom is a species of self-gratification. The disagreeable idea is rendered harmless to the conscious personality of the hysteric because the force of the trauma is transformed into physical manifestations, a process which Freud designates as conversion.

The embarrassing psychic conflict characteristic of neurotic patients is frequently exhibited. Freud considers it an attempt of the ego to defend itself from painful memories, but it does not necessarily result in complete dissociation or splitting of the personality. Just how the "repression" contributes to the development of the hysterical symptoms, and how these symptomatic manifestations connect with the pathogenic experiences causing the psychic trauma, is not clear. It must be hypothetically assumed, and the correctness of the theory demonstrated by the results obtained from psychoanalytic therapy, as the cure of the symptoms must be traced over the same route to the suppressed idea.

However completely the painful ideas may have been driven out from the conscious memory, the nervous mechanism conserving them, at the expense of a great amount of psychic pain to the patient, still exists in the subconsciousness as a suppressed wish, ready to functionate in a disguised and distorted manner, accompanied by the same painful sensations that were produced by the original experience, and from which the patient believed he was relieved by the process of repression. The cure is effected, under such condi-

tions, by convincing the conscious personality of the patient that he was wrong in rejecting the pathogenic wish, which he may accept entirely or in part, or the wish may be directed to a higher goal, in channels free from objection to the conscious ego, by a process of sublimation; or the rejection may be regarded as the right disposition of the wish, in which case the automatic mechanism of the complex conserving the repressed wish may become so changed that it becomes an indifferent functioning complex, or one conserving entirely different associations. Thus the cure of the patient is effected, and he becomes master of himself.

Freud has explained with repeated emphasis that the effectivity of psychoanalytic therapy depends upon a reproduction of the emotional excitement accompanied by the original traumatic experience. If the patient is reproducing the traumatic scene to the physician, the process has no curative effect if, by some peculiar chance, there is no development of emotion. How he gets the adult to reproduce the emotions caused by infantile and childhood "sexual traumas" is not clear to me. At any rate, he regards the emotional processes as being that upon which the illness of the patient and the restoration to health are dependent. The illness of the patient results because the emotion developed in the pathogenic situation was prevented from escaping normally, and hysterical symptoms are due to the fact that these "imprisoned" emotions undergo a series of abnormal changes. They are conserved as an ever present source of psychical disturbance, and are transferred into bodily innervations and inhibitions, which present themselves as the physical symptoms of the disease.

Since it is the "reproduction of the emotional excitement accompanied by the original experience" upon which Freud depends to effect his cures, I see in his method nothing but a process of nagging his patient about "sexual incidents of life," by which means the emotions are deeply stirred or aroused, and in this particularly suggestible moment he appears pleased to have discovered "a psychic trauma," which was no doubt produced by his process of torture, and the assurance given to the patient that an important step in the cure of her hysteria had been accomplished gave her



a feeling of relief until the next hour of digging into the sexual incidents of her early life should be resumed.

Under the guise of religion I have frequently witnessed a stirring of the emotions in hysterical subjects, and noticed the effectiveness of the suggestions of the pulpit orator in producing a state of extreme delight in such subjects, and in sending them away with a feeling of well-being in the extreme. I can see nothing but the same method of using suggestion in disguise by Freud's process of holding the patient's attention, day after day for a year or more, to ideas concerning her sexual experiences, consisting of impulses and "wishes" during early childhood, as well as adult life, and finally succeeding in so embarrassing the unstable personality that she bursts into tears, or exhibits other marked manifestations of emotion, thus obtaining relief from the "psychoanalysis" for that day, as she is assured that another step in the "cure" is effected.

One of the strongest arguments in favor of my opinion that hysteria and other neurotic manifestations are the result of an environment of early childhood, which was responsible for the repressed personality or the retardation of the normal psychic and physical development, is found in the following quotation from Freud:<sup>1</sup>

"The former value of the person should not be overlooked in the disease, and you should refuse a patient who does not possess a certain degree of education, and whose character is not in a measure reliable. We must not forget that there are also healthy persons who are good for nothing, and that, if they show only a mere touch of the neurosis, one is only too much inclined to blame the disease for incapacitating such inferior persons."

Showing the limited scope of the measure, as advocated by Freud and set forth in his writings, I quote again:

"If one wishes to take a safe course, he should limit his selection to persons of a normal state, for in psychoanalytic procedures it is from the normal that we seize upon the morbid. Psychoses, confusional states, and marked (I might say toxic) depressions are unsuitable for analysis, at least as it is practiced today."

<sup>1</sup> *Hysteria and Other Psychoneuroses.*—Translation by Brill, page 181.

He, however, further remarks:

"I do not think it at all impossible that, with the proper changes in the procedure, it will be possible to disregard this contraindication, and thus claim a psychotherapy for the psychoses."

At least the cases I have reported in the foregoing pages will show a broader application of psychotherapy—embracing the various methods of psychotherapeutic technic, including psychoanalysis, physical education, moral education, prophylactic education, suggestion with or without hypnosis, instruction in diet, hydrotherapy, exercise, and gymnastics—and will give us a psychotherapy applicable to all branches of medical practice, and, as applied strictly to neurological work, will reach a much greater variety of cases, as the case reports herein presented will prove beyond contradiction, than the limited field admitted by Freud for psychoanalysis.

Moreover, we have a psychotherapy not limited to "class or wealth," but, when selected and applied to meet the requirements of the individual patient, according to his peculiar development, it is applicable to the great mass of sufferers needing assistance by the combined efforts of all classes of medical practitioners.

In the application of psychotherapy, in the broad sense indicated, by the various educational, dietetic, hygienic, and physiological methods embraced, results are accomplished in a shorter time, and by the employment of all such measures the physician is less liable to find himself in a muddle of embarrassing complications, for his remedial agents are such as to meet the requirements of the individual as a whole.

Adolph Meyer has well said: "Mind should be looked upon as a sufficiently organized living being in action, and not a peculiar form of mind stuff. Mental activity is best understood in its full meaning as the adaptation and adjustment of the individual as a whole, in contrast to the simple activity of single organs, such as those of circulation, respiration, digestion, elimination, or simple reflex activity. It is the act that counts; the reaction of the person as a whole—not merely one 'thought.' Psychotherapy is regulation of action, and complete only when action is reached. Habit training is the backbone of psychotherapy—suggestion merely a

step to the end. Action with flesh and bone is the only safe criterion of efficient mental activity; and actions and attitude, and their adaptation, are the issue in psychotherapy."

But, as important as is "action with flesh and bone," we must not forget that the psychic elements, either inherited or acquired, are what determine the activities, actions, and attitudes of the individual in action. Freud and Jung have shown with masterful skill how the bisexual elements of father and mother are manifested in the activities of the offspring, constituting the chief psychic and physical determinants to the characteristics of the individual, with as much certainty as that the seeds of two varieties of corn, planted side by side, will produce corn having characteristics not the exact reproduction of either of the original varieties, but presenting all the marked characteristics of the parent elements. Moreover, those who have studied the laws of heredity show us how the individual of today is but a reproduction of the psychic and physical characteristics of ancestors eons and ages remote. This we know from the study of the histories of normal and abnormal persons, or from the study of ourselves and others, and the principle holds good whatever be our especial characteristics.

If the reader will pardon a personal reference, I can trace for him my own essential characteristics, as illustrated in every page of this presentation, showing that all through life I have been my mother's boy and my father's son, and how the emotional factors proved to be the determinants. On my mother's side her predominating emotional manifestation was seen in her motherly attitude toward the exslaves and the children of exslaves. For these she constantly exhibited as much kindly interest and motherly sympathy as if they were her own children. In sickness or in trouble of any kind she took their part with the zeal of one whose own heart had felt the pressure of their tremendous problems, and they leaned upon her when in need of advice or material assistance, but never imposing upon her generosity, on account of the dignity of her method of dealing with them. From her I acquired my passion for taking the part of the "under dog" in all of my relations in life.



My father's greatest emotional manifestation seemed to be a subconscious recognition of his own loss in the death of his only brother. He had no recollection of his own father, who died in his early infancy; so he leaned upon this elder brother, many years his senior, making him his model of ideal manhood. This elder brother, in accordance with the wishes of his mother, received a splendid education at one of the best eastern universities and afterward studied medicine. Shortly after his graduation in medicine he was thrown from his conveyance by an unruly horse, sustaining injuries from which he shortly died. On account of his death my father's education was necessarily neglected, and his widowed mother practically reduced to poverty. This physician brother seemed to have been my father's ideal, and, although my father later became one of the most important contributors to the cause of scientific agriculture, and though I enjoyed farm life as a duck enjoys water, I felt impelled, as if by an irresistible force, to study medicine.

But why should I, an unsophisticated country practitioner, have also felt impelled, by a force which I was powerless to resist, to give lectures on psychotherapy? I must go back to the records of Edinburg University, and there I find that for one hundred consecutive years my direct forefathers had held a professorship in that institution. Hence we see both hereditary and environing determinants in their respective relations to individuality. But this has nothing to do with the formation of a neurosis, might be said of the defenders of Freud's theory. Then I will make a personal illustration of the factors contributing to the development of a pronounced neurosis, and make my deductions from that illustration.

The association method of Professor Carl G. Jung, of Zurich, which I will describe presently, has demonstrated beyond question that the writer has a pronounced psychological "sore spot." In other words, according to this reliable and profoundly instructive diagnostic test method, I am a psychoneurotic. Of this I was glad to learn, for in no other way could I have been so thoroughly convinced of the reliability of the method as a means of obtaining the accurate history of a patient, detecting the "psychic traumas"

resulting from painful experiences of his past history, and definitely locating the ideas producing the neurosis.

One hundred "stimulus words" have been formulated by Professor Jung after many years' experience. He tells us that the words are chosen and partially arranged in such a manner as to strike easily almost all complexes of practical occurrence. In this formulary which he has constructed there is a regular mixing of the grammatical qualities of words, which has its definite reasons. In describing his method, Professor Jung says:<sup>1</sup>

"Before the experiment begins, the test person receives the following instruction: 'Answer as quickly as possible the first word that occurs to your mind.' This instruction is so simple that it can be easily followed by anybody. The work itself, moreover, appears extremely easy, so that it might be expected that any one could accomplish it with greatest facility and promptitude. But contrary to expectation, the behavior is quite different. The first thing that strikes us is the fact that many test persons show a marked prolongation of the reaction time. This would make us think at first of intellectual difficulties—wrongly, however, as we are often dealing with very intelligent persons of fluent speech. The explanation lies rather in the emotions. In order to understand the matter comprehensively, we must bear in mind that the association experiments can not deal with a separated psychic function, for any psychic occurrence is never a thing in itself, but is always the resultant of the entire psychological past. The association experiment, too, is not merely a method for the reproduction of separated word couplets, but it is a kind of pastime—a conversation between experimenter and test person. In a certain sense it is even still more than that. Words are really something like condensed actions, situations, and things. When I present a word to the test person which denotes an action, it is the same as if I should present to him the action itself, and ask him, 'How do you behave toward it? What do you think of it? What do you do in this situation?' If I were a magician, I should cause the situation corresponding to the stimulus word to appear in reality, and, placing

<sup>1</sup> Lectures delivered by Carl G. Jung at the celebration of the twentieth anniversary of Clarke University.—Translation by Brill.

the test person in the midst, I should then study his manner of reaction. The result of my stimulus words would undoubtedly approach infinitely nearer perfection. But, as we are not magicians, we must be contented with linguistic substitutes; at the same time we must not forget that the stimulus word, as a rule, will always conjure up its corresponding situation. It all depends on how the test person reacts to this situation. The situation 'bride' or 'bridegroom' will not evoke a simple reaction in a young lady, but the reaction will be deeply influenced by the provoked strong feeling tones—the more so if the experimenter be a man. It thus happens that the test person is often unable to react quickly and smoothly to all stimulus words. In reality, too, there are certain stimulus words which denote actions, situations, or things, about which the test person can not think quickly and surely, and this fact is shown in the association experiments."

In having my reaction test recorded by a physician well qualified to take it, whereas my average reaction time to each of one hundred words was one and eight-tenths seconds, upon the stimulus word "to pray," to which my answer was "religion" (the answer indicating the reaction) and my reproduction "delightful," my **reaction time** was five and four-tenths seconds.

My impediment in reacting to the stimulus word, "to pray," indicated that my adaptation to the stimulus word was disturbed. Hence, as Jung tells us, "the stimulus words are therefore a part of reality acting upon us; indeed, a person who shows such disturbances to the stimulus words is in a certain sense really, but imperfectly, adapted to reality. Disease is an imperfect adaptation; hence in this case we are dealing with something morbid in the psyche—with something which is either temporary or persistently pathological; that is, we are dealing with a psychoneurosis—with a functional disturbance of the mind. This rule, as we shall see later, is not without its exceptions."

The latter half of the last sentence in the above quotation allows me, perhaps, to believe that I am one of the exceptions. Be that as it may, the history of that complex and the painful sensations caused by its functioning, after I was obliged to follow the dictates of my own reasoning faculties and reject the idea of an an-



thropomorphic deity, and my early religious convictions based upon the conception, completely upset my adaptation to my environment after I had for ten years been engaged in the general practice of medicine.

It may be of interest to the reader to know that I am not consciously aware of this psychological "sore spot" until all of the chapters of this book, except the present, had been written. One can easily see how the emotional element, suppressed and unconscious, fairly glistens from every page, especially where I am fighting against religious teachings based upon superstition and ignorance, and pleading for a religious conception in accord with the teachings of modern science.

The association method of Carl G. Jung, as an incomparable diagnostic psychotherapeutic agency, in enabling one to elicit the history of the patient without his knowledge, and in giving us an insight into his most secretly guarded psychic processes, be these conscious or dissociated, without the prolonged digging into the sexual incidents of the patient's life, as employed by Freud, can be fully appreciated only by one having made employment of this method of diagnostic technique. By it we are enabled to interrogate the patient without his consent, frequently enabling the physician to detect the psychogenetic factors contributing to the development of a neurosis as could be obtained in no other manner.

One illustration will suffice: The patient was a young man of thirty years of age, having a wife and five children. He came to me to be treated for impotency, and no pathological cause, from a physical examination, could be ascertained to account for his impotency. The history elicited by questioning him gave no clue to the etiology of his psychoneurotic manifestations. He assured me that he was devoted to his wife; that they were congenial in every respect; that no foreign goddess figured in the etiology of his condition; that he had been otherwise well capacitated physically until a few weeks previous to consulting me, at which time he began to suffer from insomnia, indigestion, depression, and other nervous symptoms. His conduct, however, excited my apprehensions, and on one occasion I interrogated him unconsciously by the employment of the association method of Jung. This was commenced by taking in my

hand a list of one hundred words and beginning by asking him this question:

"If I should say **stork**, of what would you be reminded?"

"Baby," was his reply.

"Very well; in the same way repeat the first word that comes into your mind as I read to you this list of words."

Let me say that I have adopted a method of diagramming the reaction time of each test person instead of recording the reaction time with a stop watch. After repeating the stimulus word, I begin making a number of straight perpendicular lines about like the figure "1" as it appears when written with a lead pencil, making probably three to each second. In looking over my test sheets I can recognize at a glance the "complex indicators" by the long row of marks opposite the stimulus words. The answers to the stimulus words—the reaction words—are also recorded. After going over the list once, the patient is held in waiting for ten minutes by diverting his attention to some other subject, and he is then requested to see if he can repeat his answers to the stimulus words. The reproduction is indicated by a cross mark, and, if the reproduction words in going over the second time are not identical with the first reaction words, they are likewise recorded, and these are frequently very significant "complex indicators," showing impeded adaptation in the test person to the group of ideas aroused by the stimulus words. Further explanation of certain acts manifested by the test person—such as a failure to react to the stimulus word, interrogations, repetitions, etc.—will not be necessary unless I were going into the minute technic of employing Jung's association method, but these are not without significance as probable complex indicators. They always indicate something very important for the individual psychology of the test person.

Now, to return to my patient for the significance of the record diagrammed as described. A glance over the test sheet warranted me in saying:

"I am so very sorry to find that you are laboring under such a suppressed feeling of shame and humiliation; you are carrying a heavy burden which you are forcing yourself to conceal; it concerns some one dear to you; a separation has been seriously con-

sidered; it concerns your most intimate family relations; the welfare of your children is at stake; you have contemplated beating some one; your pride has been wounded, and you are very much depressed by this unfortunate state of affairs. I now see the bearing of this misfortune upon your symptoms. Do as you please about telling me the details of what is here plainly indicated, but, if you care to confide in me, I shall be more than glad to render whatever assistance I possibly can to help you adapt yourself to this situation.”

He arose from his chair, put on his coat and was in the act of going from my office, but again removed his coat and gave me the facts, showing that I had obtained a true history of this recent psychic trauma. The unbosoming or liberation of the pent-up feelings which he had borne alone had the effect to bring about a rapid amelioration of his neurotic symptoms, but the earnest talk given him, in which I endeavored to show him how he could be as a “savior” to the life and happiness of the erring one, and save his children from a hurtful trauma from which they would never completely recover, as well as the weekly conversations afterward, must not be overlooked, for these combined efforts constituted the psychotherapeutic management of the case in question.

Jung tells us that the larger number of neurotics show a tendency to cover up their intimate affairs in impenetrable darkness, even from the doctor, so that the doctor finds it very difficult to form a proper picture of the patient's psychology. In all such cases the association experiment is indispensable.

Jung further tells us that one must get rid of the idea that educated and intelligent test persons are able to see and admit their own complexes. Every human mind contains much that is unacknowledged, and hence unconscious as such, and no one can boast that he stands completely above his complexes. Those who persist in maintaining it do not see the spectacles which they wear on their noses.

The study of psychoanalysis—the field of investigation—is only begun, and is indispensable for the intelligent understanding of neurotic disease. It helps us to understand ourselves and others with whom we associate in every department of life, and enables



one to be more tolerant of the frailties and weaknesses of human nature. Especially does it better equip us to help the psychic cripples to help themselves, which is the ultimate aim of every branch of psychotherapy. Moreover, it gives us a clearer insight into the understanding of child life, and will better enable us to begin today a method of preventing many of the psychoneuroses and psychoses of a hundred and a thousand years hence. But be it understood that by indorsing the great value of "psychoanalysis" **I do not mean sexual psychoanalysis**, as I have endeavored to distinctly emphasize throughout this entire article.

**Dream analysis** promises to be of some value as a psychoanalytic method of dealing directly with the subconscious processes, as the investigations of Prince, Sidis, Freud, and others have conclusively demonstrated. The study of the various theories presented by these men teaches us that dreams are not something that happen in a haphazard, meaningless manner, but that they appear as the logical sequence of impressions, ideas, and experiences conserved by the neurons as the result of ordinary every-day conduct.

The bungling, apparently meaningless acts of neurotics, and normal men and women as well, deserve the rank of symptoms, and their observations, like those of dreams, can lead to the discovery of hidden complexes of the psychic life. Thus the psychoanalyst is distinguished by an especially strong belief in the determination of the psychic life. "For him," says Freud, "there is in the expressions of the psyche nothing trifling, nothing arbitrary and lawless. He expects everywhere a widespread motivation, where customarily such claims are not made; more than that, he is even prepared to find a manifold motivation of these psychic expressions, while our supposedly inborn causal need is satisfied with a single psychic cause." The idea embraced in this quotation is in perfect accord with the entire presentation of my work in the present and previous editions of this book, as the reading of the following chapters will conclusively demonstrate.

How to introduce the pathogenic psychic material into consciousness, and so do away with the suffering brought on by the creation of licensed symptoms—by the study of the eruptive ideas called up by free association, by Jung's association diagnostic experiments,

the patient's dreams, and his bungled and symptomatic acts, and adding to these the value of other phenomena which emerge in the study of the individual patient—is the object, aim, and purpose of psychoanalysis.

That there is much in Freud's contributions to the psychology of dreams which is of great value, I am more than glad to acknowledge. But in so far as he attributes every dream to being the "disguised fulfillment of a repressed wish," and attempts to trace that "wish," in its ultimate analysis, to signify an ungratified sexual desire, I prefer not to dignify such theories by further quotations. Those who are suggestible enough to be hypnotized into believing such rot are welcome to their delusion, so far as I am concerned. The pity is that the unfortunate, suggestible, hysterical patient must be brought under the dominating power of such suggestions as a pretense to cure her unpleasant psychoneurotic manifestations.

I have employed "dream analysis" as a form of suggestive treatment with highly satisfactory results. In all such cases I could trace the dreams to be the natural sequence of the previous processes of experience, which had been conserved by the nervous system and which were reproduced in the sleep consciousness. They were caused by suggestion, and were relieved by suggestion, in conformity with the laws governing normal and abnormal psychic processes.

An hysterical patient, who had a strong revulsion for her husband, which I discovered by Jung's association method, night after night awoke frightened and nervous because of a dream that a snake was in her room. I could get no clue to the meaning of this dream, in which the snake constantly figured, until she dreamed that the snake was at her dining table and she awoke in the act of snatching her child away from the reptile, lest the child should be harmed. The meaning was then clear to me. Her husband slept in a separate bed in the same room, and she had as much revulsion for the demonstration of his affections as if he were a snake. In her conscious thoughts she expressed her revulsion, probably, in this formula: "I would as lief have a snake touch me as to have my husband touch me." In her dream consciousness she was sleeping in the room with a snake, and became afraid that it would harm

her, and, again, she was eating at a table where a snake was beside her child, and she feared that the snake would bite it. My explanation of the meaning of her dream removed the vision of the snake from her home ever afterward, and she was no more troubled by snake dreams. But the procedure did not get rid of her husband, who needed psychic treatment as well as his wife, which he refused to have administered. So, nothing was left but for the patient to transfer the feeling of unhappiness resulting from this inharmonious domestic situation into some other psychic or physical manifestation as a means of expressing her lack of adaptation to her environment.

Another patient, a cultured and refined young woman of twenty-two years of age, dreamed frequently that she was in the act of parturition, suffering all the pain of a woman in the child-bearing act. By the aid of light hypnosis, a condition identical with "hypnoidization" *a la* Sidis, I assisted her in recalling to memory an incident in which she, when a small child, overheard a conversation relating to the pain and suffering of a woman who had given birth to a baby. The older persons engaged in the conversation thought she was asleep, but she heard their conversation, received the impressions, or suggestions, and these expressed themselves in the dream consciousness many years later, though she had apparently forgotten everything about the original experience, which was responsible for this psychic manifestation many years later in the dream consciousness. Of course the Freudians will see in this the fulfillment of a repressed wish. This patient shortly afterward found a normal outlet for her emotional energy in a useful, helpful occupation; she became enthusiastic in her work and has made of it a great success. Every psychoneurosis will be banished if the early home training of the patient has been such as to equip him for a place of real service in the world, and the individual can be induced to find that place and fill it to the best of his ability. But he must have a congenial occupation. It must be a work in keeping with the mental and physical capacities of the individual, and one in which his mental and physical powers can find their highest expression. Such is the only safe goal to health and happiness.

In another patient a severe migraine of over ten years' standing



was traced by the aid of hypnosis to a severe fright by the effort of her husband to kill a cat which had been confined in a cellar. The crying of the cat suddenly aroused the patient from her sleep at a time when she was ill, producing a severe fright, with nervousness, headache, tremors, and other manifestations. Since the original experience she occasionally dreamed of cats, always waking with a severe headache and all the other feeling tones accompanying the original experience. The discovery of this submerged functioning complex, with all the painful sensations that it had so faithfully conserved, enabled me to effect a cure of the resulting symptoms.

Friedlander, in quoting from Jung, in which he sums up the value of his association methods, says:<sup>1</sup>

(1.) "The complex appearing in the associations of the psychogenetic neurosis is the cause of the disease (a disposition is presupposed). Every psychogenetic neurosis contains a complex which differs from the normal complex in that it has an extraordinary emotional tone, and can thus bring the entire personality under its influence."

(2.) "Association tests can, therefore, be of great help in uncovering the pathogenic complex, and also serve as a means of facilitating and shortening Freud's psychoanalytic method."

(3.) "Association tests enable us to obtain experimentally an insight into the psychologic structure of the neurotic symptoms. Hysterical and psychic symptoms are nothing but symbolie representations of the pathogenic complexes."

Further quoting from Jung, Friedlander says: "The complex uncovered by the association method is the cause of the dreams and of the hysterical symptoms. The disturbances which the complex causes in association experiments are nothing else than resistances met in Freud's psychoanalytic method.

"The mechanism of repression is the same in the association experiments as it is in the dream and in the hysterical symptoms.

"In hysteria the complex possesses an abnormal stability, and tends to an independent existence. It progressively diminishes the

<sup>1</sup> *Hysteria and Modern Psychoanalysis*, by Dr. A. Friedlander, Frankfort, Germany.—*Journal of Abnormal Psychology*, Boston, February-March, 1911.

power of the ego complexes and substitutes itself in their place. A new diseased personality is thus gradually formed, whose inclinations, judgments, and decisions are directed by the diseased will. The ego is thus destroyed by the new personality, and is forced to become a secondary complex.

“The effective treatment must, therefore, aim to strengthen the normal self, to induce new complexes which should free the personality from the mastery of the disease complex.”

Commenting upon these deductions of Jung, Friedlander says: “These conclusions are indeed very interesting. But the last sentence contains what every psychotherapist has been attempting to do without perhaps such fundamental psychological considerations. To strengthen the ‘diseased personality,’ to induce new aims in the diseased thought, to train the patient in self-control, to suppress the emotions, and to train the patient in diverting work, all these were and still are the effective instruments in the treatment of hysteria and neuroses in general. And that which Jung calls the disease complex is still termed by the ‘old school’ effective disturbances and autosuggestions.”

Here I rest my argument. I leave it to the sane judgment of any well-known psychotherapist—such as Prince, Sidis, Meyer, Münsterberg, or others—to decide if the results accomplished by this “scientific psychotherapy,” called psychoanalytic, are not accomplished in precisely the same manner and by the same effective mental mechanism—employing the same physiological machinery—as are the results accomplished by the simpler methods which I have elsewhere elucidated in this book, and which I have taught and demonstrated for the past twelve years.

The psychoanalytic method, as taught by Freud, is tedious and uncertain. The hereditary abnormalities have a long pedigree, and the experiences of childhood are too remote to uncover, with the least possible advantage to the patient, or for the adult or mature judgment to correct. Recent gross pathological psychogenetic complexes may, however, be broken up, altered, modified, changed, and rendered more benign.

The directing of the emotional energies into normal channels must ever predominate in psychotherapeutics, whatever be the

technic or the method employed. A new point of view, a new habit formed, a new conviction instilled into the conscious personality, will change an individual as nothing else can do, without the humiliating, tedious, expensive efforts at delving into the sexual past as taught by Freud. However entertaining his theories may appear, and I admit that they are as fascinating as some of the erotic productions of fiction writers, we can never make an individual over. He is the product of the hereditary and environing determinants, which are as certain in their results as the law of gravitation. Then, what can we do? We can take our patients as they are, and help each to make the best of his or her potentialities, be they much or little, weak or strong.

In referring to Freud's method of holding the attention of the hysterical patient to the sexual incidents of infancy and early childhood, by the employment of the methods described by him, in support of his extreme sexual theories, Friedlander remarks: "At any rate, I can conceive of parents who would see their daughter hysterical all her life rather than submit her to a sexual psychoanalysis lasting for years."

As a preparatory step to the beginning of the study of psychoanalysis, I most earnestly commend the article on "Hysteria and Modern Psychoanalysis" by Dr. A. Friedlander, of Frankfort, Germany, published in the *Journal of Abnormal Psychology*, Boston, February-March, 1911. In this article Friedlander remarks:

"The retrospect we have taken is not consoling—perhaps a view of the future is more promising. Scientific strife stands for progress, provided it does not turn into personal quarrels. Freud and his followers should see if they could not get equally satisfactory results without their 'sexual investigations.' We, the opponents, gladly acknowledge their psychological work helping us to understand the neuroses.

"But it must be remembered that, with all their analysis, they have not succeeded in throwing any more light as to the real nature of hysteria. Psychoanalysis in itself is indispensable to the neurologist and psychiatrist. Sexual psychoanalysis, on the other hand, appears to many of us as objectionable and superfluous. We all recognize the importance of sexuality in the normal human life as



well as in disease; but, with the exception of rare cases, treatment should be directed to the suppression of the sexual representations and not to bring them to the surface. Education of youth relative to sexual matters is indeed desirable, but the discussion of all possible perversions is objectionable.

"I may conclude with the hope that the future is not far distant when no undue emphasis will be given the sexual factor, and when we will be able to come to an understanding without doing violence to the facts; and that not only should we learn from Freud, Jung, and Steekel, but that the latter should give earnest, critical consideration to the views of their opponents."

At least in America the sane trustworthy judgment of Prince and Sidis should have the earnest consideration of every truth-seeking investigator of psychoanalysis in the treatment of the psychoneuroses before risking his chances of getting lost in the fascinating mirage set forth by Freud.

## CHAPTER XVII.

### TRAINING THE SUBCONSCIOUS SELF.

**A Rational Basis for Autosuggestion.**—Every sense impression, or perception, or idea that has come within our individual experience through education or environment has left its impress upon the brain cells. These brain cells, stimulated by ideas of a similar character, reproduce the memory pictures gathered by experience, and this process is what is called thinking. Thinking, in logical sequence, constitutes reasoning. Thinking gives rise to mental processes, or states of mind, or conditions of consciousness that are constantly changing, so that the conscious mind or ego of one moment is not that of the next.

So interrelated are our psychical and physical processes that much has been learned of our subconscious psychic activities by observing the influence of the mind over the body.

The subconscious self corresponds to all mental and physical processes which lie beneath the stream of consciousness. We often flatter ourselves by believing that we control our thoughts when, as a matter of fact, thinking is but a reflex of the sense impressions that have been made upon our cerebral cells by all that has gone to make up our experience in life. Yet, education, travel, association with people, and all other like experiences, benefit us only as we react to them.

Every impression or idea that is made upon the conscious mind of the individual throughout his entire life has been conserved by the neurons, and is one of the factors that, collectively, constitute the training of the subconscious self. The result of this training constitutes our assets, as represented by body, mind, and character.

Our ability to react upon and be benefited by the experiences of life is dependent upon an inherited quality of brain plasma on the one hand and education on the other. We can be benefited by

the experiences that come into our lives only as we are prepared by knowledge gained from previous experiences.

That which influences us most is what most persistently holds our interested attention. The kind of thought or line of endeavor that most receives our purposeful attention, sustained by reason, will, and determination, so reacts upon our bodies and minds that we unconsciously become molded by that particular kind of work.

The mind, like the body, becomes strengthened or weakened by mental and physical action. The blacksmith, who uses a sledge hammer, day by day develops a muscle of steel, while the book-keeper, who lifts no more ponderous weight than the leaves of his ledger from week to week, has muscles that have become atrophied and shriveled. The man of genius is distinguished from other men only by his exceptional power of attention to one given subject. On any line of work in all professions the individual who becomes most proficient is he who most persistently gives attention to his specialty.

It has been well said that the mind set habitually and strongly in any one given direction loses the power to think upon any other line. The Christian scientist, who ignores the material aspect of disease, and the physician who does not appreciate the psychical, are good illustrations of the above statement. The particular line of thought to which we constantly give our attention and by which we habitually act makes us what we are.

To be strong, capable, and free is the ideal that every individual should strive to attain, but strength in mind and character can not be attained by neglect of the body, for the interdependence of mind and body is such that the highest development of the one quality depends upon the other for its support.

Use your faculties and live, grow, and develop is a decree of nature from which there can be no escaping. Some day, sooner or later, each individual awakens to the realization that his life is a fight between himself and the entire world. We are so related to each other, however, that the duty of the individual and his dependence upon other individuals and their dependence and relation to the great whole must never be left out of consideration. Yet, the individual must stand upon his own feet, see the world



with his own eyes, do things with his own hands, and interpret the problems of life with his own intellect.

To be prepared for this conflict, this contest—this body, mind, and character tryst—is the problem of training the subconscious self. Life itself is the greatest incentive for living, and to attain the highest development and expression of the subconscious self renders the individual capable of enjoying life, not only for his or her own sake, but because to him or her comes a double pleasure of being better equipped to help make life more worth while to others.

Since we are endowed with a little, infinitesimally small portion of the universal life, wisdom, intelligence, and force that exist in the universe, the highest privilege of every human being is that of being a chooser—the privilege of exercising a choice between what shall and what shall not receive his attention. The ideas which we encourage become stronger, last longer, and exercise the greatest influence on our habits of thought and conduct.

Even in the case of what are commonly held to be involuntary mental processes, which crowd themselves upon us unwelcome and unbidden, when we are consciously all unaware of their existence—coming as the result of previous experiences—we can, to a very large degree, encourage those that are desirable and inhibit others that are undesirable. But, while we can only partly inhibit those memory pictures that are undesirable, we can as choosers decide what shall in the present and in the future claim our conscious, intelligent attention.

Everything that claims our conscious attention strongly and persistently constitutes “food stuff” for the subconscious self, which contributes to the remolding and rebuilding of our physical and mental constitutions. Character itself is evolved in accordance with this same law.

As choosers, then, the privilege is ours to be open and receptive to whatsoever is good, true, and useful in the realms of thought—as expressed in the literature of poetry, fiction, philosophy, religion, or science, or from association with individuals—that may be of use to ourselves or other human beings. We should study

it honestly, appropriate its truths, and live by them in all departments of life.

In the same realm of human experience, with respect to whatever is not good, and not true, and not useful for our best growth and development, let us exercise the courage of our convictions and reject it, even though it has the time-honored sanction of conventionalism and authority. We should let truth herself sum up the case, and guide our lives and conduct in accordance with the light and knowledge of the present age. This is the clue to the correct training of the subconscious self.

Then, too, since we realize the power of mind upon mind and the influence of the mind upon the body, both for our own good and for the benefit of others, we should encourage mental states that make us hopeful, optimistic, and cheerful. We should look upon the bright side of everything and strive to say and do something to cheer the lives of others. As we sow shall we also reap is the law of nature in the realm of both thought and action. Whoever uses suggestion to help others is using the highest form of autosuggestion to help himself. Our effort to create healthful mental states in others reacts upon our own subconscious selves, so that what we are is to a great extent the result of what we have given to others.

Individuality and strength should be our highest and most constant aim in life. The great subconscious self, with its millions and millions of living cells of brain, and blood, and bone, and muscle, all reservoirs of expressive energy, is for us to educate, train, and develop in accordance with the laws of evolution. Each individual is the maker of himself in a far greater sense than is realized by the pessimistic philosophers of our age, who would surrender all to heredity and environment. The limitations set by heredity and environment are, of course, beyond question, but, when once we become strong enough to think for ourselves and to rely upon the powers and capabilities inherent within the cells of our organism, those influences that would fetter and mold a weaker individual, and hinder bodily and mental growth and development, become for us strengthening and wholesome exercise.

Each individual contains within himself an ideal man, and to

bring forth this individual harmoniously and symmetrically developed in all the qualities of selfhood should be our constant endeavor. What the man or woman of the future is to be depends upon our habits of thought and conduct today. No proposition is more true than that by constant endeavor we can day by day gain in strength of body, mind, and character.

The great trouble with the majority of people is that they have not an adequate appreciation of the potentialities and possibilities inherent within the cells of their own organism, which are ever ready to be trained into active, useful service. Others are satisfied as they are, and they constitute a large percentage of our population. They are drifting along day after day without making any special effort at self-development, and almost wholly dependent upon others to think and do for them. Depend upon others to think, and act, and do for you, and you become incapable of thinking, and acting, and doing for yourself. That which makes a man strong in all the qualities of self—social, intellectual, physical, moral, business, or ethical—is action, effort, concentration, persistency, determination.

Recognition of our defects and desire for self-improvement are the incentives which urge us to higher growth and development. Those who feel that they are self-sufficient, and are all that they care to be, have not been stirred by the influences which induce a self-consciousness that gives rise to the impulse to make effort. Perhaps they are unfortunate, and have not been awakened to a consciousness of what they are as compared with what they may become.

The hope of humanity lies in the law of the "survival of the fittest." The great mass of the people do not think for themselves above the most elementary questions of life. In problems of health and education, ethical and moral ideals, their views are more a matter of inheritance than based upon intelligent conviction as the result of careful investigation. The physician who can arouse them to observation, reflection, and self-activity is doing them the highest service that an enlightened mind can render.

The problems of health are the problems of life, and pertain to all questions of human interest. Body, mind, and character are



but reflections of the great subconscious realm, with its inherited or acquired impulses, habits, instincts, or ideals, and these, like the flower garden, need to be continually uprooted and reset. The false, and barren, and useless should be rejected, and new varieties planted in keeping with knowledge and experience.

Surely this line of thought has a practical application in the practice of medicine. Stand any day you choose on a street corner and see the masses as they pass, and with pencil and paper in hand make a mark for every one who is weak and living minus the qualities of a normal, healthy individual, and you will find that at least fifty percent of our population have weak bodies and imperfect nervous organizations.

The great majority of those who are sick need to be taught how to keep well, how to eat, how to drink, how to exercise, how to work, and how to sleep—in short, how to live. More than at any time in any age does the individual need self-reliance and the feeling of independence and freedom. This belongs only to those who have achieved sufficient selfhood to dare to exercise the courage to stand by their convictions.

Self-reliance is nothing more than one's own recognition of his or her ability to act, and think, and live according to the dictates of reason and judgment. Each individual has a different problem to solve. All people are not "born free and equal," so far as heredity and environment are concerned, but all are born with the privilege to think, act, and do for themselves, that the greatest health and happiness may be maintained.

People, as a rule, are not sufficiently educated to take their lives into their own hands. In their efforts to do for themselves and to struggle with the problems of life, they make many blunders which react with ill results to both mind and body, and, as experts in the healing art, our aid is sought to help them. They do not always need medicine, but they do always need education, knowledge, and guidance.

The physician must have more than professional knowledge and skill. He should be an expression of the highest thought and culture of his age—to be prepared to take his place as a leader and teacher of his fellowman.

The practice of medicine offers great privileges for real, genuine, unselfish service. The opportunities for being of real help to our fellowman are the greatest of any calling in the list of human achievement. In no other profession are such conditions offered for brain development, self-reliance, and altruism.

The people have a right to make every effort to keep healthy and strong without relying upon us to administer to their physical necessities. It should be a part of our work to help them to help themselves, and then the followers of the different nonmedical therapeutic systems would no longer continue their hold upon the people.

So long as new-born babies come to gladden the hearts of the men and women of the world, physicians will be in demand. While human endeavor continues, accidents will happen and the surgeon will be needed. We have not yet subdued the mosquito so as to prevent his carrying malaria and yellow fever germs, or eradicated vice to prevent the diseases of physical degradation due to infectious germs.

The Klebs-Löffler bacillus, the bacilli of anthrax and typhoid fever, and the thousand other germs of infection, do not respect even a healthy human organism, and for all these conditions the services of the physician will be invoked. The astigmatic eye and other refractive errors are here to stay to cause reflex disturbances and functional diseases of both mind and body. Infantile diseases will claim our little ones as long as it is human to err in dietetics and the world remains the abode of Weischelbaum's bacillus of meningitis and other infectious diseases. The great white plague alone claims one out of ten of all human beings. In spite of our knowledge of mental therapeutics, women will grow tumors, and a million years of special effort will not annihilate the physical results of inebriety and syphilis or prevent insanity in its various forms.

The one sure event in the pathway of every human being is death, sooner or later, and the one hope of every individual is that his life will be prolonged. Let us, then, do all we can with all therapeutic measures when the people are sick, but by all means

let us help them to keep well by teaching them how to live, as far as possible, to maintain healthy bodies.

The benefit to be derived from work, exercise, water, laughter, rest, food, companionship, education, environment, and self-development in a thousand ways should be ever kept before them. All these things should be studied by the people, and all these constitute the correct training of the subconscious self.



## CHAPTER XVIII.

### CORRECT DIAGNOSIS A SAFEGUARD AGAINST BLUNDERS.

It goes without saying that a good clinician has a wonderful advantage over the individual who has not had sufficient training and the necessary experience to interpret the symptoms of a disease, and quickly couple those symptoms with its etiology, pathology, prognosis, and treatment.

As has been stated in previous pages, suggestive therapeutics should be applied with an understanding and comprehension of the anatomical and physiological relations of the organism as well as of the pathological conditions to be alleviated.

Good men in our profession who do not sufficiently appreciate the psychic factor in therapeutics are frequently so engrossed with pathology that they forget to tell the patient what he can expect in the way of recovery and to keep this idea constantly impressed upon him. They do, however, often impress him with the seriousness of his condition in a detailed explanation of its pathology, but they fail to inspire him with a conviction of recovery. Such physicians leave the patient depressed, and if, forsooth, he happens to fall into the hands of a quack who has sufficient personality to lift him out of the depression thrust upon him, and recovery is not incompatible with the pathology of his disease, the patient "is cured" and the physician's reputation is injured.

As bearing upon this subject, in a discussion of a paper read by me in one of our larger cities, one of the best known men in the medical profession thus expressed himself: "Now, gentlemen, you know as well as I that there are a great many people in this city that have been treated by some of our very best physicians for months and years, but satisfactory results have failed to be attained by them. Yet, those same patients, after going the rounds from one physician to another, finally land in the office of some

one of the notorious quacks in the city, and do obtain the relief so vainly sought at our hands. When we know that such things as this exist all about us, it seems the time has come when we can afford to study some of the secrets of the quack, for what they can do for morbid processes we also can do."

At that same discussion another physician, in the course of her remarks, said: "Doctor Munro dares to speak out aloud what all thinking physicians have recognized, but do not express, except at low breath when among themselves."

This line of therapeutics is undergoing a rapid evolution, and the true, and useful, and good that are in it are being sifted from the false and useless. Those of our profession who take a stand against it are doing much to encourage the followers of the modern "creeds" and "cults," "ists" and "paths," who go to extremes in their views of the influence of the mind over the body.

People easily believe that which it is to their interest to believe. Physicians are educated to their view that medicine is the natural recourse of the sick man, and it is hard for them to recognize the psychologic factor because it happens to be the basis of all forms of quackery. Yet, the thinking portion of the American people are on the alert, and they are ever ready to accept and support anything true and useful, it matters not how strong their prejudice may have been. Christian science, Weltmerism, etc., have served a useful purpose. They have stimulated the people to reflect and exercise more self-control, but they have made, and are destined yet to make, many gross and painful blunders before their fanatical zeal is quelled.

In several instances within my knowledge disastrous results have followed the vigorous methods of those who use massage as a means of suggestion. In a case of acute articular rheumatism in a little boy of twelve, the inflammation which followed this treatment by vigorous massage was such that an amputation of the limb was necessary to save the little fellow's life.

In a case of diphtheria the methods employed served only to increase the inflammatory exudate, and a speedy death followed, whereas the timely employment of antitoxin in diphtheria has reduced the mortality of that disease to a very small death rate.

A case of acute mastoiditis, resulting from a neglected middle-ear disease, was treated by the methods of the Christian scientist, whereby surgical intervention was withheld until too late to be effective.

In several instances it has come to my knowledge where appendicular abscesses were ruptured by massage with fatal consequences, to say nothing of children with gastroenterocolitis who died under Christian science psychotherapeutics, while legitimate, prophylactic, antiseptic, medicinal, and dietetic methods were withheld.

I once witnessed the removal of sixty-five stones from the gall-bladder of a woman who had been taught to ignore such "errors of mortal mind," but, after becoming weak, jaundiced, and anemic, with all bodily functions disturbed, she at last yielded to the rational advice of her friends in time to resort to surgical procedures for relief and recovered.

At a Christian science service not long since, just in front of me sat a young man who was rapidly losing his hair as a result of an infection of the hair follicles with the germ which causes seborrheic eczema. The psychic effect of his religion upon him was great, but the germs went on with their work just the same.

Christian science was held before the attention of the audience by readings, songs, and prayer as a sovereign remedy for sin, sickness, and death. Over on my left sat a lady in mourning. With her head drooped and lips closed tightly, she sat there, not at all receptive, and took her medicine, though her expression showed a consciousness that realized the mockery of all that was receiving her attention. Her face was sad because her husband was dead, and this experience was setting up a mental reaction to all the negations that fell upon her ears.

Over on my right sat a gentleman with eyes open like full moons, and his lower jaw dropped as if it had no muscles to support it, with a well-fixed gaze upon the reader of the suggestions that had been prepared to hypnotize the audience. He was suffering with locomotor ataxia, and, though credulous, receptive, and suggestible in the most complete sense, he walked away upon two "errors of mortal mind," usually called crutches.



Yet, physicians are far from infallible. All their patients do not get well, neither does absolute knowledge upon any subject exist, while every conception, or theory, or viewpoint represents some relative phase of truth to be determined by individual experience.

While we know what mercury will do in syphilis, and quinin in malaria, and sulphur in itch, and antitoxin timely administered in diphtheria, and what the result of corrected errors of refraction will bring in the relief of headaches and numerous functional disturbances, and what relief surgery will bring in gross pathological changes, etc., yet there are many conditions confronted in all lines of professional work in which we do not know absolutely what the outcome will be, and no physician has done his full duty until he has given his patient the full benefit of every therapeutic aid. The rule should be, "while there is life there is hope."

Two cases here cited that have been brought to my attention will illustrate the blunders that may be made by too quickly jumping at conclusions without due appreciation of the psychologic factor in therapeutics.

A well-known physician and surgeon was consulted in reference to a patient of another physician with an incipient malignant affection of the cervix, and he strongly advised operative procedures as the only safe course to pursue. The operation was deferred, and several months later this patient was taken on a litter to a prominent surgeon in one of our larger cities. After carefully considering the case, together with the assistance of a well-known pathologist who made a microscopical examination to determine the exact character of the disease, he declined to operate, as he believed this would only serve to transplant the disease to more vital structures and hasten her death. Discouraged and hopeless, the lady finally yielded after much protest to the solicitation of a Christian science friend, and consented to do so because this was the only promise held out to her for a possible hold on life. After three or four months' treatment by Christian science psychological methods, that lady had gained twenty pounds and returned home, walking erect and strong, and after three years would occasionally call upon the consulting surgeon in her home town who advised

the operation in the incipiency of her disease, and laugh heartily over the incidents connected with her case. The facts in this case can be well authenticated.

Again, in a western city a gentleman about thirty-five years of age had been treated for pulmonary tuberculosis for a period extending over many months, and was finally advised to go to a higher and drier altitude, his physician assuring him that this was the only hope offered for him. He went to a town situated just west of the Rocky Mountains, and carried with him a letter of introduction from his home physician, together with a report from a competent pathologist showing sputa teeming with tubercle bacilli. After examination and observation for several days, this physician advised the sufferer to go home at once and die among his friends and relatives. He then sought the assistance of a Christian scientist, and after two days did return home inspired with hope, and, having been able to sleep and eat under the psychic effects of that method, he was much improved, and put himself under the care of a Christian science "practitioner" at his home town. When I saw him he was holding the position of city attorney, and in his hands he held the report of the pathologist, as unquestionable proof of the correctness of his history, which he flaunted, while he enthusiastically related his experience at one of their midweek meetings, stating that he had gained thirty pounds, and was enjoying life—eating, working, and happy.

As illustrating another phase of the subject at hand, however, in another western city a well-known physician advised an immediate operation for an incipient malignant disease of the cervix. Seeing his patient a few weeks later, he very naturally greeted her and expressed his pleasure at seeing her looking so well. "Oh, I have never been sick, doctor. That was all an 'error of mortal mind.' I am perfectly well." Her phraseology at once "put him next," so, with the salutation, "I wish you well, madam," he modestly left her.

Several months later she returned to his office. The temporary psychic stimulation that had for awhile held her up, in spite of the existing pathological conditions, had reacted, and now that characteristic, sallow, cachectic hue which attends this disease was

plainly in evidence. She was weak and anemic, nervous and over-anxious about her condition. She had at last decided to have him operate, but she had waited too long, and there was nothing left but to leave her to face the inevitable.

In the first case of "malignant disease" it is probable that the pathologist was mistaken; and tuberculosis, under favorable climatic conditions and when not too far advanced, is by no means an incurable disease. Good food, dry open air, sunshine and optimism often do wonders in the way of giving the recuperative powers of such patients an opportunity to overcome pathogenic bacteria and re-establish a condition of health. In less serious affections, especially, should the influence that the psychic factor exerts be well kept in mind before an unfavorable prognosis is rendered, for there are numerous instances in which the prognosis may determine the outcome of the disease on account of the part played by suggestion in aiding or retarding recovery.

In many diseases an exact diagnosis is not always possible, though few expert diagnosticians will admit this, and even in psychiatry and nervous diseases those that are amenable to treatment, either curative or palliative, are benefited just in proportion as the mental and bodily functions, both voluntary and involuntary, are encouraged into normal activity.

No possible harm can come to the individual by suggestive measures, used either with or without hypnotism, which are only a means of getting the individual to rely upon the properties, faculties, and functions inherent within the biological elements of the cells of his organism. By suggestion we can stimulate and develop all bodily and mental functions, both voluntary and involuntary.

All other sane, sensible measures are, of course, not to be neglected, such as rest or exercise, dietetics, hydrotherapy—both internal and external—relaxation, deep breathing, and materia medica agencies, as the individual case indicates. Yet, there are many cases, not incompatible with complete recovery, in which the patient would get well, due attention being given to the psychologic factor, but which would not recover without its aid.

In all cases let us give the patient the benefit of the doubt.



## CHAPTER XIX.

### PHILOSOPHY AND RELIGION—THEIR RELATION TO HEALTH.

From a psychological standpoint all religious services of all denominations are especially interesting. If we attend them to learn, we usually find our lesson between the lines.

The psychic effect of the commingling of several hundred male and female voices, with sentiments of love expressed in song; with the martial spirit of soldiers battling in unison and marching as conquerors from victory to victory; amid music and beautiful flowers, fine clothes and suggestive mottoes, and mystical carvings; all these combine to have a significance but little appreciated by one in a thousand of the people of our times. They subtly and gently stimulate all the involuntary cells of the body, and temporarily lift the individual out of his self-conscious physical and psychical weaknesses, and, in general, when free from emotional excitement, prove to be an experience which, like other stimulations, reacts with benefit upon both mind and body.

Suggestion is to be seen in all such experiences from start to finish. The methods adopted by the clergyman of getting *en rapport* with the audience—the unconsciously induced condition of receptivity by quartets composed of male and female voices, the reading responded to by the audience, followed by a female solo—all create a psychic condition which renders the individual forgetful of self and his surroundings.

For the time being he is completely amenable to the suggestion given from the pulpit orator, who for from thirty to sixty minutes has the opportunity to create sense impressions and present ideas or suggestions that are beneficial or harmful, as the case may be. They are wholesome, beneficial, and helpful suggestions just in proportion as they are the reflection of a broad, well-educated, truth-loving mind or personality.

It has been my privilege to hear such men in all denominations, both Protestant and Catholic, Jew and Gentile, Mormon and Free Thinkers, as well as promulgators of Oriental philosophies and religions, containing much that is true, and useful, and good.

Just in proportion as the people are becoming sufficiently well educated to comprehend in some degree the cosmic order of the universe and the laws of its evolution, and to appreciate the part played by heredity, environment, and education in determining the ideas and ideals which go to construct the religious beliefs of individuals, are they becoming more open to accept the contribution made by science to our moral and religious philosophy.

The more enlightened element of all denominations now admits that science has in numerous instances unquestionably demonstrated that religious teachings have at times been wrong as to matters of fact. Be that as it may, man is a religious being, for he is by nature a truth seeker, and every one must either have a philosophy of his own in reference to the questions of life or be creed-fettered by some fixed religious dogma, which seeks to mold him according to prescribed ideals.

At no time in the world's history were the rights of the individual so much appreciated as now. All religions are useful just in proportion as they contribute to the development of the individual in body and mind.

As long as religion appeals to the intellect and renders the individual conscious of his privilege of being a thinking, reasoning, responsible entity, with the power to exercise choice as to what shall and what shall not enter his life; as long as its promulgators inspire men and women with high ideals, and point to sane, rational, sensible rules of conduct, both for self-betterment and for the health of his fellowman; as long as it teaches him self-appreciation and altruism, and its influence is for what is good, and true, and useful for human happiness, and health, and growth, the beneficial influence of religion for the evolution of the individual can not be questioned.

The sublime faith that carries with it a conviction that is unshaken, that brings peace, eliminates fear, and makes life serene, or a reasonable philosophy that is entirely satisfactory to the in-

dividual in regard to his past evolution, present conduct, and future development, is as essential to the life, health, and happiness of a rational human being as is food, water, exercise, sleep, air, congenial associates, or other life essentials. It is here that the mind takes refuge in those problems that are forced upon the attention of all civilized races.

Yet, when the emotions have been wrought upon and the individual is led into that extreme state of monoidealism which exists in religious ecstasy with crying, shouting, or other manifestations of joy or grief, pleasure or hope, and he or she is no longer under the guidance and control of reason, it can but be regarded as psychical prostitution pure and simple.

The psychical correlation between religious emotion and the animal passions is now recognized by all our ablest psychologists, neurologists, and psychiatrists. The erotic and religious feelings are so closely associated that the step from the emotional religious enthusiast to the sexual prostitute is but a very short one.

As bearing upon this subject, Howard says: "Religious emotion springs from the animating power of the sexual nature, and through the emotion thus aroused we deify and worship the inspirational source of our spiritual longings."

Kraft-Ebing remarks: "How powerfully sensuality expresses itself in the histories of religious fanatics, and in what revolting scenes, true orgies, the religious festivals of antiquity, no less than the meetings of certain sects in modern times, express themselves.

. . . Owing to the correspondence in many points between these two emotional states, it is clear that when they are very intense the one may take the place of the other, since every manifestation of one element of mental life also intensifies its associations."

The reader is aware that the more enlightened leaders of all religions now openly oppose any form of emotional excitement in religious services, and regard it as a deplorable relic of ancient barbarism. But, be that as it may, it has been my experience to attend such meetings all over our country, and the consciousness of the degrading influence of such meetings on innocent, impressible, and highly suggestible boys and girls, men and women, who



are the victims of these induced endemics of temporary emotional insanity, has been particularly painful and revolting to me.

Children, as well as men and women, who are not sufficiently educated to think for themselves upon these questions are, when the emotions are stirred, suggestible in the highest degree, and any method of coercion which incites fear, plays upon the imagination, and dethrones reason is prostitution of body and mind. One neurotic boy of my knowledge remained in a subconscious state all night long, and his nervous system never reacted from the shock or sense impressions of that experience. He was weak-minded and hysterical ever afterward, and finally became insane and died in the asylum. A neurotic woman, after having been subject to religious excitement for several days, began having cataleptic seizures, and had kept this up constantly every day for two years, being all the while in a state of religious fervor, and was frequently visited by her minister, who would talk and pray with her, thus keeping up this morbid, psychoneurotic condition.

It has been my experience to be called in consultation to see two persons, ill with an acute disease, who died as a result of the effect of having been for several days subjected to the injurious sense impressions produced by a fanatical, emotional revivalist. The timely use of suggestion to drive back these perverted mental states and plant new sense impressions in their stead would, no doubt, have altered the results, but neither of these patients was amenable to treatment at the time I visited them.

The conviction of sin, and fear of hell and the awfulness of the "judgment day," were impressed upon them until every organic function had been disturbed, they had been unable to sleep, food and medicine had not been assimilated, and they died of diseases from which under different conditions they should have made a speedy and sure recovery. Such has been the experience of hundreds of physicians of my acquaintance as a result of emotional, religious excitement.

But, aside from the danger that such pernicious influences exert upon life itself, the positive harm to the development and growth of body and mind is the worst. To speak plainly, the effect upon the entire individual is identical with that of excessive sexual inter-

course, and it is questionable if the results upon mind and body of sexual excesses are not even less injurious.

Every intellectual state is accompanied by definite physical manifestations. The physical concomitants of such psychical states as where the individual is under the sway of emotional religious excitement are vasomotor phenomena, respiratory phenomena, and motor phenomena, or phenomena of expression.

The vascular modifications that take place are felt in the form of arterial pulsations, heaviness, and a sense of choking, all of which are usually ascribed to being "the power of the holy spirit" acting upon the individual. They all denote a state of tension of the organism and of concentration of effort. Such emotion is contagious. Mental states beget similar mental states in others who are so situated as to receive sense impressions from those thus affected. The tension produced upon the nervous system and the physical reaction to such experiences for several days in succession leaves such individuals nervous and weak, with all bodily functions disturbed. Sleep is hindered, and they are often pale and indifferent to interest in all other things except religious matters.

We all realize that this is nothing more than a condition of hysteria, but such hysteria is contagious, and when often repeated forms a habit, and such habits are positively injurious. To be exposed to such influences interferes with the growth of both mind and body of children, and the habit of having one's psychic life controlled and played upon by an emotional enthusiast, in the personality of an individual of the opposite sex, is positively destructive to the essential conditions of a happy marriage relation.

To educate an individual to be guided and controlled by emotion or passion in religious matters, and expect him to exercise reason and judgment in reference to other phases of his life's conduct, would mean to teach him to act directly contrary to his religious teaching.

The overexpenditure of nervous energy from such emotional religious experiences and the habit of being psychically aroused by such experiences reduces the individual to a condition of mental and physical inertness. It is horrible to contemplate, but there are thousands of ardent female religious devotees whose psychic

life is so dominated and controlled by their church executive or "spiritual adviser" that their husbands find no more place in their higher nature than a dog finds comfort upon the grave of his buried master.

This state of affairs reduces such marriage relations into nothing less than legalized prostitution. Whoever holds the attention of an individual, stirs his emotions, and directs his thoughts, governs his actions and controls his life both consciously and subconsciously; and when married women are so dominated and controlled, the higher social affiliations and more complete amalgamation of personalities between man and his wife are rendered impossible. Such marriages, then, are a fraud and a farce, and the result is unhappiness and nervousness, functional disorders and disease. Such practices might be excused in old maids and widows who are safely beyond the danger of ever getting married and who have no ambition to attain in life, but no growing young man or woman, or wife or prospective mother should be exposed to their pernicious influences.

Adolescence, especially, should be kept free from an environment of religious fervor, which holds the constant attention of the individual and causes a useless expenditure of nervous energy to the neglect of the development of all other physical and mental attributes that should be cultivated by directing the person's life into the normal, healthful, useful lines of thought and action.

The religious training of a great many individuals has but served to educate them into a psychoneurotic disease, which practically disqualifies them for the duties and responsibilities of life. To maintain a robust, vigorous state of health and physical well-being while adhering to such religious practices is an absolute impossibility.

It is from this class of religious neurotics that Christian science largely draws its membership, and its dogma of negation and affirmation is only a suggestive means to drive back morbid states of consciousness produced by sense impressions made in times gone by and forgotten, and to replace these by conceptions, ideas, sense impressions, or suggestions that give rise to a new consciousness, to mental states that are more pleasant, more hope-



ful, less emotional, more optimistic and cheerful, and these react favorably upon the body. With all its absurdity, Christian science is a stepping-stone, perhaps not an indispensable one, to the evolution and revision that is today taking place in the religious philosophies of the world. To the man who is broad enough, and generous enough, and wise enough to detect the kernel of psychological truth buried within its capsule of religious dogma, this cult serves as an illustration for an important lesson—namely, that the mind and the influence exerted upon it through religious worship plays an important role in the cause of disease and the maintenance of health.

People are not to be blamed for their religious beliefs or habits of conduct in life. As a rule, they are creatures of circumstance, fettered by environment, unfortunate heredity, and deficient educational advantages.

The clue to the situation was unconsciously admitted by a country clergyman in the South, who, in discussing the evolution that is taking place in religious ideals among the more enlightened centers of our country and the part that education exercises in shaping our religious beliefs, answered, "Yes, but we care nothing about such ideals and education down here." And so it is with every one in reference to his philosophic and religious convictions. He instinctively feels that he is right from his viewpoint, and he is. His religion fills an essential need to his life, and he has as much right to it as he has to life itself. And so has the individual who has acquired a broader perspective the same right to reject the false, worn out, and useless, and to interpret the problems of life for himself.

We are still only half civilized. Ten million years of growth, evolution, and development will not have remedied all the consequences of the ignorance that exists today.

Institutions, organizations, and religions are a necessity. When they do not interfere with individual liberty and expression, they are useful. The majority of people are incapable of thinking and reasoning for themselves. They have not as yet acquired strength of intellect and knowledge of the universe sufficient to give them the confidence to take their lives into their own hands.

To them the power, strength, authority, and privileges of the self-conscious ego are as much a stranger, and as intangible and useless in the choice as to what shall govern and control their life, as if they never existed. Indeed, such a self-consciousness to them does not exist, for this quality of human personality is also developed according to the general laws of existence through heredity, environment, and education.

However, individual responsibility can not be evaded. Men and women who know better, and have evolved moral courage sufficient to give them the impulse to act up to their convictions, are impelled by immutable law under which they can not decide to do otherwise than press forward, and onward, and upward, and they are increasing their strength day by day according to the law of development by use.

We live in a new age and are confronted by new conditions. New opportunities are thrust upon us. We must live up to our privileges or take the consequences. We must turn opportunities to good account. We must each go our route. We can not live and do as any other individual in this world today or in any age has done.

The great need of the world is men and women to interpret life and its meaning in the light of modern education and enlightenment; such as will speak out aloud and tell the truth as the more enlightened people of this day see it, and who will not be intimidated by the bulwarks set in our way of progress by the ignorance and superstition of ages past and gone.

At least to us, as physicians, there is no other time but now, and no other place but here, and a billion of years will not make it otherwise.

## CHAPTER XX.

### CONSERVATION OF ENERGY.

**Education and Control of the Emotions—Breathing, Relaxation, Dietetics, Etc.**—More power, strength, and ability is a radical craving of the human being. Such cravings are as instinctive as the desire to live.

Each individual is endowed with latent potentialities or energy expressed in the millions of cells of his organism, according to their quality, and these he may use or abuse as he decides for himself.

How to create and conserve the highest expression of personality as represented by body and mind, in order that the greatest happiness may be maintained, is worthy of the serious consideration of every intelligent human being.

When we take stock of ourselves, we find that we have all the qualities of the lower animals, and others besides, which are the distinguishing characteristics between human beings and the lower forms of intelligence. Appetites, passions, emotions, feelings, desires, and a consideration for others of its species belong to the animals beneath us. Man alone of all the animal creation is capable of thinking and reasoning, and of communicating his ideas to others in spoken and written language.

No rule of conduct can be pointed out as a guide as to the best methods for the individual to pursue in order that the highest degree of physical strength, intellectual development, and moral character may be maintained. That is the problem that confronts every individual. It is the problem of life which each one must solve for himself; yet, how many there are who fail to live up to their privileges.

When we, as physicians, are brought face to face with the problem of treating disease, we have but to reflect for a moment to see that the real problem for the individual is how to live.

The most fruitful cause of disease and weakness of body and



mind lies in uncontrolled and misguided appetites, emotions, and passions, and a failure to properly conserve and direct our mental and physical energies into healthy channels of thought and conduct.

With the properly developed individual the intellectual functions and physiological processes are so under his control that he can by practice direct any selected one as he chooses. The true purpose of education is to teach the individual self-control and a just consideration for the welfare of others.

The sexual function, of the natural instincts, is second only to the instinct of self-preservation. In some individuals it is perhaps the strongest of all the bodily appetites and passions. The healthy, vigorous glow of sexuality, when not debased by sensuality, is the crowning glory of a man or woman. We have but one energy, and this is expressed by the individual in every manifestation of his life's conduct, whether physical, intellectual, or emotional in character.

Scott<sup>1</sup> has well said that "purity is the crown of all real manliness, and the vigorous and robust, who by repression of evil have preserved their sexual potency, make the best husbands and fathers, and they are the direct benefactors of the race by begetting progeny who are not predisposed to sexual violation and bodily and mental degeneracy."

The tendency of rational medicine is getting more and more toward the prevention as well as the cure of disease, insanity, and degeneracy in its numerous manifestations. Educators and teachers are at last awakening to the importance of defending ignorance and innocence against morbid moral processes, as well as to protect them from smallpox and yellow fever; so the day is not remote when children will be taught in our common schools to regard the care and preservation of their bodies as paramount to their lessons in English grammar and arithmetic.

Monogamy will modify all excesses in the sexual line, and right thinking will eliminate all habits which may be destructive to an individual or against the best interest of the community.

Aside from a condition of lowered vitality that is frequently

---

<sup>1</sup> Scott: *The Sexual Instinct*.—E. B. Treat & Co.

maintained in both men and women by such indiscretions, emotional religious feelings, too much social excitement among enthusiastic, exuberant young people; overeating, excessive chewing and smoking of tobacco, whisky and beer drinking, worry and overanxiety about business; anger, envy, jealousy, and fear; irregular habits of sleep, work, and recreation—all contribute their quota to hold the individual in check and prevent the highest and best expression of individuality in body and mind.

A lady who had emerged from an excitable emotional religious revival, weak and nervous, after being sick for a day, was anxious to return, and when I admonished her of the danger of such dissipation, and remarked that death itself was not infrequent as a result of such indiscretions, she answered suavely that "it would be a lovely way to die."

In the same spirit another patient, whom I advised to abandon the use of tobacco and whisky if he expected to get well, replied that he would rather not live if he had to give them up, that he had reached the age when his sexual powers had failed, and he now felt that these offered all that went to make life worth while.

It is hard to realize, until one stops to consider this subject, in what complete slavery many human beings are held by their appetites and uncontrolled emotions and passions.

A country parson once sent for me, and very seriously and confidentially explained that the physicians of his town did not understand his case; that he had for years suffered so much with indigestion until he was unable to do mental work, and, though he "loved his work and was completely in the hands of the Lord," that it troubled him to be unable to prepare sermons that would hold the people. He was six feet high and weighed two hundred and eighty pounds. After he had related his tale of woe, I informed him that the external evidence in his case did not coincide with his interpretation; that, instead of suffering with indigestion, he gave every evidence of digesting and assimilating too much food. Then, turning to his wife, I asked how much he ate for breakfast as compared with the other members of the family, and she answered as much as herself and their four children combined. I reasoned with him, and explained how it was impossible for his

stomach and his intellect each to perform the highest function at the same time, and outlined a reasonable diet, advised that he walk ten miles a day and cut his own wood, work in his garden, and take such other physical exercise as would reduce his weight. He took my advice kindly, and two weeks afterward informed me that he felt like a new man. He had been so completely occupied in getting individuals to "save their souls," that he had forgotten the present salvation of his own character sufficient to control his bodily appetites.

I was once introduced to an aged physician, then ninety-one years old, who had just returned from a six-mile ride on horseback on a visit to a patient in the country. I inquired why he did not leave such trips to "the boys" in the profession, pointing to two physicians who were themselves between sixty and seventy years old. I shall never forget his answer. He died of pneumonia several months afterward, but that answer of his contained a fine lecture on psychotherapeutics. His reply was: "I don't want to die. Don't you know that as long as a man is at work he is thinking, and that when he is working and thinking he is using his brain cells, and that the brain cells, kept in constant use, give strength to every part of his body?"

For sixty-five years this physician had kept in harness, frequently making trips on horseback for sixty miles in the early part of his professional career, and he furnished a good illustration of the salutary effect of continuous exercise and useful employment.

The only safe way to control our emotions, appetites, and passions is to direct our energies into channels of wholesome and useful effort, whether it be physical or mental effort. The result is strengthening to both mind and body, provided it is done cheerfully and with a purpose.

The emotional part of our nature, when guided by reason, is expressed in enthusiasm, a quality which is essential to success in any line of effort. Be it man or woman, the continuous and persistent pursuit of some steady work or useful employment will react as health and strength-producing factors to both mind and body. This very effort conserves our energy, guides and controls



the emotions, and cultivates all the positive qualities of human character. The proficiency which comes from continuous persistent effort achieves a self-reliance that eradicates fear.

Worry is only our own recognition of our inadequacy or inability to be equal to the exigencies of life. It shows a lack of self-reliance, without which man is but the plaything of chance, a puppet of circumstances.

Envy, and anger, and jealousy are all characteristics of weakness and incompetency. Such negative qualities can find no place in the life and character of a real man or woman.

There is a retroactive degeneracy of wealth which, as history has shown, proves the destroyer of the idle, the proud, and the self-conceited.

The sooner every human being can learn that the real elements that create health, and strength, and happiness, and success in life are inherent within him, and that reason should be the guiding star by which he should direct, and control, and develop, and use the potentialities within his own organism, the sooner will he realize that upon him alone depends the responsibility of so living that he can maintain sufficient resistive power in the cells of his organism for health to become a habit, and happiness and success the rule of his life.

We have only a few medicines that can be relied upon in their application to the treatment of disease, and in some instances it is really remarkable how well people get along without any medicine at all.

In one little city of 25,000 inhabitants the physicians informed me that a nonmedical practitioner in that town was doing more work than any two physicians in the place. He had taught school for a good many years, and had gained quite a fund of general information in regard to psychotherapeutics, dietetics, hydrotherapy, massage, exercise, etc., which, coupled with a good personality, enabled him to practice with remarkable success.

Now, I am not a therapeutic nihilist. We should use medicine when indicated, and there are conditions in which it is absolutely indispensable, but in the great majority of cases that come to us for aid we should display more confidence in our patient's brain

plasm and in the recuperative powers inherent in the cells of his organism under proper conditions to re-establish a condition of health.

Without the co-operation of the patient, it matters not what be our therapeutic measures, we are handicapped very seriously. It is not what we do for the patient with *materia medica* agencies that is the greatest factor in therapeutics, but the environment which we create for him and what we get him perhaps unconsciously to do for himself. If his brain cells do not respond to the sense impressions made upon them so as to get him to act upon and execute our ideas both consciously and subconsciously, then may we expect very little benefit to be derived from the administration of medicine. It is what he eats and what he drinks, how he acts and the way he thinks, together with breathing and relaxation, fresh air, pure water, work, and sunshine, that are the real helps to get a sick man well.

Thousands of the ablest physicians place little or no confidence in more than a few medicines aside from the confidence that the patient has in their efficacy. Is it not time that we should deal with our patients squarely and honestly, and, while giving medicine when indicated, either for its physiological or psychological effects, let them know that the real source of health and happiness depends upon their own control and direction of their conscious and unconscious psychic activities into normal, healthful lines of thought and conduct? Where an individual needs such advice, and the majority of them do, I should deem myself untrue as his physician and false to my Hippocratic oath, did I not express my honest convictions relative to the real elements that contribute to his health and well-being.

Thousands of American people today are magnificent examples of what intelligent, systematic, physical exercise can do in the way of developing a vigorous, robust, healthy body. A large percentage of our most successful physicians are physical athletes as the result of intelligent physical training.

As yet not one person out of five knows how to breathe, or realizes that sufficient oxygen taken into his lungs from the inspired air is as important as the food that he eats.

Water—pure, wholesome water—as a functional stimulant, a toxin eliminant, and health-producing agent, has not occupied the place it deserves in our therapeutic armamentarium, or in the appreciation of the people, whose privilege it is to use it without our advice.

Most of our people still overtax their nervous systems with an excess of meats as an article of diet, and thus maintain a lowered power of both mind and body on account of such indiscretions and excesses. The tests at Yale University, made by Professor Irving Fisher, have proved beyond all question that “a low protein, non-flesh or nearly nonflesh dietary,” is conducive to a greater mental and physical endurance than the ordinary American diet.

The use of the corset as a fruitful source of disease yet needs to be impressed upon the minds of our women.

Intemperance or lack of self-control, and the use of reason in eating, dress, business activities, religious worship, and sexual matters, and emotions of all kinds and passions of every description, should all be kept in mind by the physician who intends to make such suggestions as will redound to the greatest benefit of his patients. Self-control is humanity's greatest, highest, noblest achievement.



## CHAPTER XXI.

### ROUGHING IT AS A MEANS OF HEALTH.

Disease is a condition where the cells of a part or of the entire organism do not properly perform their function. At any rate, it denotes an absence of health. These are only relative terms, for what might be a condition of reasonably good health for one individual would be so far below the normal standard of another as to be considered disease for him.

A problem that confronts every human being is how to maintain the highest possible degree of resistive power in the cells of his organism so as to render them invulnerable to pathogenic germs and other etiological factors of disease. This can not always be accomplished by tonics, reconstructive agents, etc. In many instances it is simply a question of getting the individual to conform to those conditions and habits of life which bring an increased degree of resistive power to the cells of his organism as a consequence. Such habits can often be brought about as the result of an idea put strongly into the brain plasm of your patient. Before you can succeed in putting such an idea sufficiently strong to get your patient to act upon it so as to change his habits of thought and conduct, you must believe in the efficacy of the means to secure the desired end. Confidence begets confidence, and conviction creates conviction; courage begets courage, and health begets health.

So, if a physician is weak, discouraged, and tender-footed, he must get right himself before he can get others to act upon an idea, either consciously or subconsciously. To bring about this end, try "roughing it" as a means of health, and get your patients to do likewise.

The finest reconstructive agent at our command is an idea conveyed to your patient that will create hope, expectancy, confidence, and optimism. All these encourage anabolism or constructive metamorphosis, and this is doubly true when it moves one out into

the sunshine and fresh air, and enforces exercise and deep breathing, resulting in sound sleep, good appetite, and increased digestion and assimilation. It means new blood for the patient, and all these contribute to health.

Along with this comes a rest from the routine path of life, the dropping of business cares and perplexities, and a chance to catch something of the inspiration that comes from associating with birds and wild flowers, trees and rocks, and running streams. The psychic and physical effect for the good of the individual of all such measures can not be overestimated.

We are told that one death out of ten in the world today is the result of tuberculosis. It is not so. The people who die infected with tubercle bacilli do so because they do not live so as to maintain that high degree of resistive power to enable the cells of their organism to withstand the onslaught of this pathogenic enemy.

In offices and street cars, in places of business and on the street, we in cities are exposed to the tubercle infection every day of our lives. We do not contract the disease because we are alive enough to resist its invasion. The factors of disease are here and ever will be. It is up to us to learn how to live.

No better illustration of the value of roughing it can be cited than where thousands and thousands of individuals with this disease are yearly going to the high altitudes along the range of the Rockies and dropping all home comforts, having the will and courage to face hardships in the West, living out-of-doors in open tents, and in this way making the fight for their lives. The very decision to do that which they believe will result in their recovery is the important essential which, favored by a dry high altitude and the conditions for living in the open air and sunshine, and encouraged by the optimism and cheerfulness of those who have been in that section long enough to have dropped the title of "tender-foot," brings about a restoration of health.

Life is a struggle with us all. In order to live, we must dare to be. We need sufficient resistive power in the cells of our organism to combat the etiological factors of disease, and this can be secured only by conforming to the requirements for creating and maintain-

ing that high standard of healthfulness that will secure this quality.

In all classes of practice, medicine is only an aid. With its assistance the individual's chances of recovery, when sick, depend upon the natural recuperative powers of the cells of his organism.

In thousands of instances during warfare individuals have left their homes of comfort and luxurious ease, and for years have endured the hardships of camp life and the stress of battle, on scanty food and insufficient bedding without shelter, only to return after the campaign strong and robust, and in a perfect state of health.

During the cowboy days many young men, reared in wealth and affluence, went as physical weaklings to the western plains, and, astride a broncho, followed a herd of cattle and endured the hardships of camp life and simple diet until they were rewarded with health and vigor of mind and body.

The very process of learning to be content with little to make one comfortable and satisfied with extemporized substitutes cultivates a mental and physical stoicism which, as a means of health, is hard to overestimate.

We watch with interest a game of baseball or football on the hottest day of summer, and wonder how the participants can so ignore the heat and enjoy such sport; such "roughing it" brings its reward and produces physical athletes.

At a temperature of 110 degrees in the shade I watched a gang of men working for hours and hours in the hot sun engaged in laborious manual labor with pick and shovel. This acquired physical resistance came "by roughing it," and the men were healthy and happy.

A month after the earthquake of San Francisco, when a hundred thousand people were in improvised tents and on plain, coarse food, the health of that city was officially reported as being better than at any time in its history. Neurasthenics who must have a cup of coffee with snowflake crackers in bed before rising in the morning were, after one month of "roughing it," enjoying a breakfast of onions and beans.

The health and vigor that rewarded the early settlers in the



pioneer days of our country, when they were compelled to labor hard, live simply, and have but little, also has its lesson.

To the thoughtful observer it is plain that our artificial methods of living at the present time are not conducive to the highest development of manhood and womanhood.

When education interferes with physical development, it strikes a weakening blow at the quality of the brain plasm of the individual, an element that must be kept at a high standard to attain the best results in mind and body building.

It has often been observed that the most successful men in all professions and in all lines of business in our large cities have been, and are, those who were reared in the less populous towns and rural districts, where those natural conditions of simple living, fresh air, pure water and sunshine, quiet surroundings and wholesome food, exercise and employment, furnished the environment under which the highest standard of physical development could be produced. Such conditions favored the growth and development of a quality of brain plasm that manifested itself in the facility with which the individual was enabled to withstand the arduous duties and responsibilities amid the more complex environment of city life.

The boy reared in the fields, well acquainted with the woods and familiar with the chop ax, and the wood pile, thought he was having a hard time, but we know better now.

The country girl that rides horseback to school, carries a cold lunch in a bucket, and grows up among the birds and flowers, with cheeks painted by fresh air and sunshine, has a mental and physical equipment for life that far surpasses the accomplishments of her more delicately formed city sister. Let this be supplemented with a liberal education, and she is prepared to withstand the exigencies of life under any and all conditions.

“Yes,” said one physician, “granting that all you say about the value of physiological and mental therapeutics be true, if we put the laity in possession of such knowledge, we physicians are likely to be out of a job.”

To entertain for one moment such a selfish idea or to give ex-

pression to such sentiments is not in accord with the spirit that actuates the leaders of our high and noble profession.

We are rapidly learning to appropriate every possible means of maintaining a high degree of physical resistance in the cells of the organism as a means of enabling it to withstand the stress and strain of modern life.

The distance from the primitive life of our forefathers is too short to suddenly abandon the habits whereby they developed muscle and sinew. The most important factors in the maintenance of health are not on sale in a drug store. An occasional return for a short period to the primitive vocations—toil, manual labor, hunting, and fishing in the places remote from the dust and noise of the city—exchanging the freedom of camp life, fresh air, and sunshine for the confinement of office and the responsibilities of business, are being made every year by thousands of our American physicians in the effort to maintain the highest degree of physical resistance and mental efficiency, and we should never forget the beneficence of such measures in prescribing for our patients.

## CHAPTER XXII.

### PERSONALITY AS A FACTOR IN THERAPEUTICS.

The personality of a physician is an important asset in the makeup of his professional equipment.

The achievement of personality is the goal sought by every one beginning the study of medicine, and everything pertaining to medical thought, colleges, books, hospitals, clinics, operations, laboratories, dissecting rooms, class associates, quiz masters, instructors, and professors, all combined, furnish the environing and educational factors which collectively go to convert the aspirant into the type of *genus homo* known as a physician.

Aside from his scientific medical training, the personality of a physician is the greatest factor in the makeup of his professional armamentarium. So much so is this true that we often hear the expression that "the physician is born, not made." Such an expression usually implies that there is an inner quality of personality, which manifests itself in the dealing of a physician with his patients, that does not exist equally in all men equally trained in professional knowledge. There seems to be an inner spring or quality of character that counts when such men are put to the test in the office, or at the bedside, in daily intercourse with others, on any and all occasions, which is a *sine qua non* to the successful practice of medicine.

There is in every one a quality of personality that either attracts or repels others. It is not necessarily an accompaniment of any special type, or physique, or nervous organization. It is found in men of small build and of neurotic type as well as in those that are robust, phlegmatic, and heavy. Such men frequently make serious blunders in their professional work, but still they hold the people.

It has been a matter of personal experience, in my former work among the medical profession, that I have frequently grasped the



hand of a stranger and instantly felt that I had found a warm personal friend before we had exchanged any more than a mere formal greeting. On the other hand, I have frequently felt so repulsed at the first glance of a physician that I refused to acknowledge him as a man whom I wished to meet.

Upon one occasion I called upon a physician of high professional attainment whose conduct, when I approached him, was discourteous in the extreme. I looked him squarely in the face for a moment, and extended my hand, saying, in a quiet monotone, "goodby, Doctor." The effect of this upon him needs no comment. He shook hands with me, but learned a lesson. In his reception room he had but one patient, and that one appeared to be an old standby. This was no surprise to me, for that physician had given me a taste of his quality—I never cared to see him again, and so it was with his patients.

From this office I went to see another physician, in the same specialty, who was courteous and human, really showing me more deference than I felt that I deserved. He had won a high place in the esteem of his colleagues by hard work in his home city, and his office was full of patients. The treatment accorded a stranger by that physician was a sample of the quality of the personality of the man—such a quality as the people liked—and he is doing a great work.

Invariably those of the medical profession who are competent men, and who possess this happy streak of personality above illustrated, are making a success of their work.

A little display of those qualities typified by the great religious reformer about two thousand years ago—kindness, sincerity, sympathy, earnestness, fearlessness, bravery, magnanimity, and altruism—is an inestimable element in the personality of the physician. It helps to get control of people—not by force—and better enables him to put them in possession of themselves.

Here is the clue to the explanation of that indefinable psychic quality that the successful physician carries with him which proves a power in therapeutics, and this is manifested all unconsciously by him in every move of his life. It begets the confidence

and trust of his patient, and the respect and co-operation that is a most essential factor in the successful treatment of any disease.

Especially is this quality in the physician necessary in the treatment of enlightened and self-respecting people. It begets a reciprocation of that respect which such people feel is due them. They positively refuse to be driven, but it is only an evidence of their high intelligence when they are willing to be led for their own good by the skillful direction of a cultured, competent, conscientious physician.

A sensible display of tact and diplomacy will often enable a physician to win the confidence of a patient, and thus secure the co-operation so essentially necessary for the best results, when being too blunt and abrupt would render him utterly helpless.

To see one physician so manage a little fellow as to get him to submit to the skillful dilatation and treatment of a suppurative dacryocystitis with hardly a whimper by his firmness, and kindness, and tactful persuasion, where another would become nervous and excited, and spend a much longer time in accomplishing this result, his patient crying vehemently and suffering a needless amount of pain on account of his resistance, is an illustration of what personality means in a certain class of work.

It is a great help to a physician to be able to get hold of people and use them to help themselves to get well. We all help or hinder the recovery of our patients, far more than many realize, by the way we deal with them. We unconsciously use suggestive therapeutics at every step in our routine work.

People buy goods of the merchant they like, the groceryman they like, the dairyman they like. In all trades this personal factor is taken into account. A dry goods clerk brings a better price because people like him—he knows how to deal with people and to help them to suit themselves in their purchases—but more than in any other department of life does the personality of the physician count in helping people to get well. A patient can not get into your office and walk out without your personality having made some mark upon him. There are people in whose presence you are always at your very best, and for whom you can render the best professional service.

It is a recognized psychological law that we become like those whom we habitually admire. Thus we become a part of all with whom we have associated during our existence. In all of our experience with literature and personal association this law continually operates, so that all men are reproductions of other men.

In all sections of the country are neurologists who, from constant association with a certain class of patients, seem to have become the living embodiment of all the objectionable mental and physical characteristics of their patients. A patient who had twice been to see a physician of that type remarked that he felt worse after each visit, and did not care to return.

Another neurologist, who was himself the personification of physical strength, mental vigor, and optimism, remarked to me that he never felt as though he had done his duty unless he sent his patient out of his office feeling better for having come to see him. It is needless to remark that he is one of the most successful men in his specialty in the profession today.

The reader will pardon me if I seem critical or personal in my remarks in this chapter, but the importance of the subject at hand is such that I should deem my effort futile did I not drive home the point under consideration. Only my experience and the results obtained by careful observation of the personal factor in therapeutics, and the encouragement of physicians who have also personally tested these methods, give me the courage to express my honest convictions at all hazards.

I fully realize that the hard knocks and criticism that may be fired at me will only serve to educate the profession in the sane, rational use of the measures advocated, and, if such be the case, my efforts will not have been in vain.

It is a great thing to be able to make a hair-splitting diagnosis, the correctness of which is infallible, and I shall unceasingly strive to attain such proficiency.

It may also be a great satisfaction, and it is of unquestionable benefit to the physician who can do it, to give a minute and detailed delineation and description of the pathology of a disease to the satisfaction of his professional associates, but such an elucidation is never of value to the patient.



Physicians themselves become the easy victims of any disease as soon as they become conscious of the seriousness and gravity of the diagnosis rendered by their colleagues in attendance. Their very knowledge of its etiology and pathology renders them unduly self-conscious of their condition, and such a self-consciousness gives rise to morbid mental states that inhibit the normal physiological processes, prevent sleep, and seriously retard recovery.

When I see a physician sick and a half dozen of his learned colleagues lined up around him, all rendering him more self-conscious of the seriousness of his condition, I wish that only one of them had been called, and that he possessed those qualities of personality that, in spite of the physician's knowledge of pathology, could drive back those existing morbid sense impressions, and substitute in their stead mental states that would enable him to put up a more creditable fight. If the life of a physician is worth anything, the end would justify the means. So, while giving due appreciation to scientific professional knowledge and training in pathology and diagnosis, what is of far greater importance is that we do use our knowledge as to help our patients get well.

Every visit of the physician is an opportunity to help accomplish such a result, and here is where the personality of the physician is often detrimental or helpful to the recovery of the patient. The very self-consciousness induced by a physician at his visits, and the mental states which follow in consequence of such an induced self-consciousness, are the deciding factors for the good or harm of the patient. The influence of personality is contagious. We set up mental states in others around our patients that prove helpful or harmful in the sick-room.

Out in New Mexico a young man walked out of a physician's office looking downcast and dejected, with lips tightly closed and with jerky inspirations. "A lunger up against it good and hard," is the way they refer to such patients out there.

That night I lectured to a class of physicians, and the next day that patient went out of the same office with a smile on his face and a bright, animated expression, having taken the first step toward recovery, as the result of sense impressions or suggestions strongly made upon his brain cortex by his physician. He ate

more that day, slept well that night, and reported that he had coughed but little, was not so nervous, had enjoyed his breakfast, and felt stronger—all because his physician had the personality to exercise the egotism and altruism to look him squarely in the face after his examination and say to him, "I have some good news to tell you. You are much better today. Already a marked improvement has taken place in your condition, but you will be very much better by tomorrow. You will enjoy your food today, have a good digestion, sleep well tonight, and improve every day from now on."

Physicians themselves frequently have invalid wives, whose invalidism is maintained in consequence of the constant association of a husband whose personality depresses them. The affection displayed by such men for their wives may be beautiful to contemplate, but the accompanying emotional, sentimental sympathy is weakening in the extreme.

Reader, if you happen to be of that type of individual, get cured of your miserable psychoneurotic disease, and don't live as a parasite, infecting the lives of those with whom you associate. My prescription for you is to associate and amalgamate with the wide-awake element of the medical profession who constitute the upper ten percent of our ranks. Sages, poets, and philosophers of all ages have repeated this message to the world—that men and women make men and women.

If there be anything of value in these expressions, that I so feebly echo here, they are but the reflex of impressions that association with other personalities has left upon my cerebral cortex. If the quality of my brain plasm were of higher standard, and my previous environing and educational advantages had been more propitious, my opportunities would have borne better fruit.

We all have our capacity, and, under equal opportunities, we can react upon sense impressions or suggestions only in proportion to our qualifications.

Whatever be our deficiencies as a result of heredity, environment, and education, each of us can give our patients of our highest, truest, and best self as an aid to their recovery.

Some men bring a reproach upon the profession on account of a failure to exhibit those character qualities which alone constitute

the highest type of professional personality and manhood. By the correct use of your personality as a factor in therapeutics, you help people to help themselves.

The fear that some physicians have that people will object to the employment of these methods is a self-confessed weakness. They are too proud to express a favorable opinion. Fear never accomplished anything for the good of the physician or his patient. Some of the best friends I have in the world today are those made in my efforts to get them to control themselves, who took my suggestions given either consciously or subconsciously, and through such aid learned to rely upon themselves.

In the employment of suggestion, both with and without hypnotism, you are only helping your patient to help himself. Yet, many physicians will denounce and ridicule it, and go on filling neurotic patients with such medicines as lessen in every way the patient's self-reliance, making the patient absolutely dependent upon them.

A man who practices medicine in that way may make money, but he also encourages the business of the undertaker. He can be excused only upon the ground of ignorance, and deserves to be placed in the class of the quack and the charlatan.



## CHAPTER XXIII.

### THE ABUSE OF PERSONALITY.

In order to make myself understood, I will give you an illustration of how personality is abused in the practice of medicine, and the picture here presented is an apt illustration of the conduct of many of the general practitioners, who do not take into consideration the psychological factor in therapeutics.

All observing individuals have noticed that in every locality there are physicians who have more "very sick" patients in proportion to their patronage than others. That the personality of a physician is frequently the prime factor in producing these "very sick patients" is beyond question.

Here is an illustration of the usual conduct pursued by such men in the treatment of an ordinary case of pneumonia, a disease in which the correct use or abuse of the personality of the attending physician, more than in any other acute disease, determines the recovery or nonrecovery of a patient.

"Give this medicine very carefully, and watch her closely until I see her again. I will call this evening."

True to his promise, he is punctual in fulfilling his appointment, much to the satisfaction of the family, who anxiously await his coming. During the day the sick mother has grown more nervous, her temperature is higher, and her pulse rate is faster. She is by this time overanxious about her condition, and this in turn has made her family extremely anxious about her.

The physician has, by his conduct, demeanor, words, and action, made a strong impression upon both patient and family, and the fear that he has thus implanted into the minds of all in the household has kept up a depressing environing influence which has got in its effective work upon the patient.

The lady in question is suffering with acute pneumonia. She feels a decided pain upon breathing, experiences a sense of suffoca-

tion, and the paroxysms of coughing have rendered her decidedly conscious of her illness, and now the physician in whom she has placed her trust has looked serious and given directions in a way that speaks louder than words in unduly exciting her. Not one word has he said to allay her anxiety, soothe her mind, assuage her fears, or inspire hope.

Upon his second examination he finds his patient decidedly worse, as might have been expected, and now he is serious sure enough. His fatalities in the treatment of pneumonia have been particularly large, and he much dreads this disease; and, seeing his patient with a higher fever, a more rapid pulse, flushed face, more anxious expression, and remembering his past record with such cases, he makes no effort to conceal his gloomy forebodings.

Again giving directions for the night, he starts for his conveyance, and when out in the hall the members of the anxious family, who have followed him, turn with pleading faces and inquire, "Doctor, how is mother?"

"Very sick, very sick," is his reply. "Watch her carefully tonight. Keep the house as quiet as possible, and, if she should get worse before morning, be sure to call me."

Before the next day he has been called, for his patient has been unable to sleep, and from his point of view a hypodermic of morphin is decidedly indicated.

On and on this management goes, and if finally his patient recovers after two weeks of severe illness, which she might possibly have done in spite of her physician, that family is grateful to God and the doctor for having "pulled her through."

I remember once going to see a lady about fifty-five years old, with acute pneumonia, a decided congestion of the lower lobe of the right lung, and, after carefully making out my diagnosis and prescribing for her medicinally, I turned to the patient and gave her a talk about as follows: "You have pneumonia, Mrs. Blank, but only a mild case; temperature only 103.5° F., but a good pulse, and everything is favorable to a nice recovery. You are in pain, but a hot poultice I have ordered will relieve that very promptly. You will soon get comfortable and will rest well tonight, and be feeling much better tomorrow when I see you again. Now, be pa-

tient, and in from seven to ten days you will be well. The medicine prescribed for you will keep you comfortable, strengthen your heart, keep your nerves quiet, steady, and strong, and all will be well with you."

With tears of gratitude in her eyes, she answered, "Oh, Doctor, you make me feel like I am well already. I feared that I had pneumonia and felt that I never would get well."

"You are going to get well all right," said I, "going along nicely to recovery. Your daughter will have entire charge of your medicines, and knows just what I want you to have in the way of nourishment. After the hot poultice is applied you close your eyes and go to sleep, you will rest nicely, and feel much better when I see you tomorrow."

Upon my return the next day she smiled pleasantly as I entered and bade her good-morning, and when I felt her pulse and remarked, "You are better," she answered, "I feel much better, Doctor."

"Going right along to recovery, madam. Now, I shall see you day after tomorrow."

"See her every day if you think best, Doctor," exclaimed her son. "We want mother to be well real soon."

"I can't trust everybody as I can you, so I will not come tomorrow unless you call me. She is going to do well. Keep out all visitors, continue all directions, and I will see her again day after tomorrow."

I saw that patient only twice more, and at the last visit assured her that it was a pleasure to come into her pleasant family, but that I was going to turn her over to the entire charge of Mrs. Blank, her daughter.

"If you feel it necessary to consult me again, just whistle and I will come."

In about seven more days the son came to know if his mother had better have a tonic; he said she had had no fever for three or four days and was entirely well. Her lung cleared up upon the ninth day of her disease.

I do not mean to say that all pneumonia cases should be seen only four times. In fact, a daily visit or two is indicated in most cases, but the case in question serves to illustrate the part that the



psychological factor plays in an ordinary case of illness. Many people die who would get well if given a chance to allow their protoplasmic energies to assert themselves.

Out in California I was invited by a physician to go with him on his rounds through the county hospital. Six pneumonia patients were in one of the wards, four of them old men. The majority of these were chronic alcoholics, and only one was delirious or appeared seriously ill.

"But one death from pneumonia in five years in this hospital," was the physician's record up to that time.

"How do you treat them?" I inquired.

"Keep them comfortable, give them hospital tea (sweet milk), and let them have Old Frank to keep them feeling good." "Old Frank," as the hospital physician styled the genial German superintendent, carried sunshine and good cheer into those wards at least twice a day. He had then been in his place for seventeen years, and the therapeutic value of his personality to that institution would be hard to estimate. He knows how to get the confidence of men and women, and how to keep them feeling good when they are sick. Many a poor tramp, who has seen only the rough side of life, has felt soothed by his kindness, and buoyed up to recovery by his optimism, while being controlled by his firmness.

There is no other disease in which the influence brought to bear upon the mind of the patient so determines the recovery or nonrecovery as pneumonia. It is a self-limited disease, and those influences which soothe the mind and quiet the nervous system bring about a complete re-establishment of the nervous equilibrium, allowing the blood to circulate normally through the peripheral blood vessels of the body, and thus relieve the tension or high pressure upon the heart and inflamed lung, with its fatal termination to pneumonia patients.

One of Old Frank's characteristics is kindness, which is encouraging in contradistinction to sympathy, which is depressing and weakening.

There is more or less mental depression in all pneumonia patients, as the individual is rendered painfully conscious of his helplessness. This results in fear, and such sufferers enjoy sympathy as

they enjoy morphin, which inhibits the normal physiological processes and stealthily lessens their resistive powers to the disease. No worse influence can be exerted over the patient than the presence of a highly emotional person, who lavishly pours out sympathy to the destruction of all the optimistic and strengthening qualities of mind and body. So great are the influences brought to bear by the mind over the physiological processes of the body that a physician who unconsciously uses the power of suggestion to the detriment of his patient actually makes a very serious condition out of a trivial disorder. On the other hand, by the intelligent and judicious use of suggestion we can make a very trivial disorder out of a seemingly serious pathological condition, so far as the results are concerned.

The injury done to the unsuspecting public by physicians who are ignorant of the use and power of suggestion is far greater than is commonly supposed. Whole communities have become fear-stricken by the exaggerated serious reports of this class of physicians, who frequently ride day and night to see the victims of their perverted influence. Their very influence in the community in which they live spreads like a contagious disease, emanating from a focus, which stealthily moves among them, reaping financial reward for their indiscretions.

“Very sick, very sick,” is their watchword as they implant fear in their trail.

While the laity are being properly educated in the necessity of self-protection from the contagiousness of tuberculous disease, malarial and yellow fever carriers, and other infections, for the safety of their own lives they should also be protected from that pest to any community—the physician who unduly exaggerates the condition of his patients by reporting all cases as being seriously ill.

## CHAPTER XXIV.

### ENVIRONMENT—ITS INFLUENCE IN THERAPEUTICS.

Only the practical aspects of this subject remain to be considered. A physician in general practice must not only treat his patient, but be in absolute control of the environing influence brought to bear upon him as well, in order to secure the best results.

The sick-room, especially in the small towns and rural districts, is often the meeting place for gossipers, who unconsciously exercise a great influence upon the patient, frequently preventing recovery in an otherwise curable disease.

To say nothing of the value of quiet, rest, and sleep, which are hindered by this procedure, the discussion of other cases of a similar kind that have terminated unfavorably and which had come within the experience of the visitor, or remarks relating to the procedures of another physician whose methods are different from your own, all exercise an unconscious influence that makes the patient nervous, excites fear, and proves destructive to that confidential relation which should exist between patient and physician.

The physician who is timid and allows this state of affairs to exist, to the detriment of his patient, is jeopardizing his professional reputation.

A loud-mouthed, self-assertive woman, who is the unconscious drummer for a competitor, is to be found in every locality. Seeing the harmful influence of such an individual upon a patient with a continued illness, the simple instruction to "admit no visitors" is usually sufficient; but the madam in question is not always repulsed so easily, as she unduly exaggerates the importance of her presence to the welfare of the sufferer, and enforces her entrance in spite of your injunction, which she considers does not apply to her.

My own custom has been, under such conditions, to give my pa-



tient or his family the choice between my services and those of this unfriendly visitor.

Useless antagonism, however, never pays upon any occasion, but, where the welfare of your patient is at stake, people will appreciate any stand that you take in his behalf. "Do what's right, come what may," is a safe rule under any and all circumstances, and the self-respecting physician should exercise the courage and self-assertiveness to face these problems and leave no stone unturned that might retard the recovery of his patients. The successful men in the medical profession are those who have the stamina to stand by their convictions and allow no intervening meddler to poison the environment of the sick-room.

In a large class of cases it is absolutely impossible to obtain successful results in private practice on account of our inability to secure the right environment, and here is where sanatorium and hospital facilities give the physician a wonderful advantage. In such places the environment is absolutely under his control and direction.

We should, however, as far as possible, overrule any factor in private practice that will in any way set up an undesirable mental attitude on the part of the patient in regard to his own condition, or that will create mental states that are injurious; for mental states influence metabolism, and encourage or retard all the normal physiological processes, and wonderfully help or woefully hinder the recovery of your patient.

In all classes of professional work there is a fine art in adapting one's self to whatever environment one may be thrown into, and in maintaining that prestige which the successful physician must never surrender. When to be dictatorial, when to coeree, when to be lenient and kind, and when even to soothe and palliate by your presence, and at the same time be in absolute control of the situation, are all important considerations in the successful practice of medicine.

People sometimes need to be aroused and lifted out of mental states which prove to be adverse to their recovery, and new ones substituted in their place; and this applies not only to the patient, but to every one coming into his or her presence. It is our duty,

as physicians, to create an environment wherever our patients are to be found that will help to make them get well.

To illustrate, here is a patient sick with pneumonia, a disease that frightens the majority of people. On my second visit I find the family and others in attendance depressed and down-hearted, which, of course, renders the patient morbidly conscious of his condition. It is evident to me that I must alter that environment and re-establish hope in my patient, or the outlook is very grave. Do I send for a consultant? Not unless it is a baby less than two years old. What I do is to look every member of that family squarely in the face, and kindly but positively tell them, and also the patient, that he is going to get well. I have frequently emphasized that suggestion, and assured the patient that I had seen a hundred people ten times sicker than he with pneumonia, and every one of them recovered.

Then, getting close to him, with my hand on his head, I quietly and calmly assure him that I have never treated a pneumonia patient above two years old who did not get well, with the single exception of one old man who had a bilateral pleuropneumonia, with an enormous effusion, and I tell the truth.

I leave that home with a newly created helpful environment as a therapeutic resource, and under such conditions my patient is enabled to relax and to proceed with a consciousness that gives rise to mental states favorable to his recovery.

Do I depend alone upon the psychologic factors thus set in operation? No, I give my patient the benefit of every other possible therapeutic adjunct, from the application of a brick—heated to a red heat and placed in boiling water, and allowed to remain therein until all simmering ceases, wrapped in a woolen cloth, and the moist heat confined by a blanket—to the diseased lung, or a cornmeal and mustard poultice, renewed and applied hot every hour or two, or an icebag in their stead, to the use of all other measures, medicinal, dietetic, and hygienic.

The hot brick, taken out of boiling water, has a weighty psychological significance aside from being an excellent vehicle to retain heat and moisture, which it gradually liberates to the great comfort of the sufferer. I do not hesitate to tell both my patient and his

family that this hot brick relieves the pain, relaxes the patient all over, and causes the blood to circulate more freely to the periphery, and thus relieves the lung of its congestion and inflammation, reduces his temperature, enables him to sleep, and helps to make him a well man. I tell him in perfect candor and truthfulness that I have never known a patient who has used the hot brick heated to a white heat, and then taken out of boiling water and applied as indicated, to fail to recover.

Is the point clear? I am using that hot brick as a means of suggestion. Aside from the therapeutic value of heat and moisture, this harmless palliative resource is used to substitute sense impressions that are pleasant and comfortable in the place of existing ones that are distressing. This enables my oral suggestion, strongly and emphatically driven in upon his consciousness, to call myriads of living cells in his organism into helpful, useful, and active service.

In a crisis like this the entire picture of the disease is changed by the personality of the physician.



## CHAPTER XXV.

### THE BRUTALITY OF FRANKNESS.

**Honesty Imperative.**—A physician who fully appreciates the influence exerted by suggestion upon the mind, and the influence exerted by the mind over the physiological processes of the body, will habitually give a more favorable prognosis than the one who does not appreciate the potency of such measures.

Every physician who has successfully practiced medicine for a few years has observed instances where the family of a sick member, upon becoming aware of the attending physician's grave prognosis, has insisted upon having a consultant, who, upon his advent in the sick-room, has taken a more hopeful view of the patient's chances for recovery, and at once a marked improvement has begun, which has not abated until complete restoration to health has been secured.

A medical man in the West related this experience: He was once called to see an Indian chief, seriously ill with an acute double lobar pneumonia, with high fever and severe pain. After a careful examination he frankly and honestly made it known to the family of the sick warrior that in his opinion he could not get well and would have to die. The brave old chief did not so easily take his suggestion to die, and he refused to accept the physician's services, continuing to take a well-known Indian remedy to render him less conscious of his suffering, and, while surrounded by weird noises and dances, and other savage ceremonies, the recuperative powers of the cells of his organism were allowed to assert themselves, and he made a safe recovery.

To this day that tribe of Indians refuses to accept the services of physicians, having had the strong conviction implanted that the white man's medicine is unreliable.

A gentleman of my acquaintance was sick for many months with chronic interstitial nephritis, probably of alcoholic origin, and a

competent pathologist found large quantities of tube-casts in his urine, which bore a large percentage of albumin, and with his report gave his opinion that the prognosis was grave. His attending physician and also a consultant gave him no encouragement. He was persuaded to take an infusion of some kind prepared by an illiterate farmer who was strongly convinced that this would effect a cure.

His physicians allowed the harmless experiment, to satisfy his patient, who was eager to try anything that offered a possibility of recovery. With every dose of the infusion, however, he became more influenced by the farmer's conviction of his recovery, and he began to improve from the time he commenced the remedy until within a year was able to attend to business. All cases of degenerative kidney disease are not necessarily fatal, but he was steadily growing weaker all the while until he began the farmer's prescription, which probably benefited him more through its psychic influence than otherwise.

I was called some years ago in consultation to see a little boy ten years of age, possibly infected with malaria at first, but he also had a subacute gastroenterocolitis. He had been sick for nearly two weeks, was still having frequent watery, mucous discharges from his bowels, and had for thirty-six hours vomited everything taken into his stomach. He had a pulse of 150; temperature, 100.5° F.; pale, weak, and anemic. His physician had given him the standard medicinal remedies, as recommended by our best authorities on children's diseases, and the child was constantly growing weaker. He had notified the family that the outlook was grave, and was quite willing to adopt any suggestions that I might offer.

I indorsed all his measures, but suggested that they be discontinued on the grounds that the results did not warrant their further use. He was anxious for me to share the responsibility of the situation, and readily consented that only  $\frac{1}{30}$  grain of calomel be given every hour while the patient was awake.

Sitting by the bedside, I dipped my fingers into a bowl of ice water and began to gently stroke the little sufferer's forehead. I was alone with him at the time, while the attending physician was out of the room with his mother, giving orders for the day. By

the time they returned to the sick-room I had suggested the patient into a refreshing sleep, and had also given him other suggestions appropriate to his condition. That he should be asleep was somewhat of a surprise to his mother, whose anxiety and nervousness had served to keep him from doing as well as he would possibly have done had she been more self-composed.

“Will you do me the favor, Mrs. Blank, to take that bowl away from the bedside, and remove all towels from the bed also?” I asked.

“Why, Doctor, the child would vomit all over his bed and also on my floor,” responded she.

“Madam, take the bowl away, and cover your floor and his bed with newspapers, and, if he vomits one time, put them back. He will rest well today and sleep most of the time. You will have to awaken him to give the tablets, but that will quiet his stomach and keep him from vomiting again. Keep the room absolutely quiet, allowing no conversation at all to disturb him. Allow him to drink all the water he wishes when you give the tablet, to quiet his stomach and make him sleep. He will want some chicken and barley broth tomorrow, and, if Doctor Blank says so, I think he will enjoy it.”

The mother looked queer, but removed the bowl and towels. I also requested her to tell him to go to sleep when she gave the tablets.

The little patient rested well that night, and when we returned the next day his face brightened and he smiled as he bade us good-morning.

“Oh, he is so much better,” exclaimed his mother, “and he is begging for something to eat.” He improved every day and went on to recovery in due time.

Every word spoken by me to that mother while the child was asleep was a suggestion, an indirect suggestion, which is always the most powerful kind.

Even a child four years old appreciates sense impressions, or suggestions made upon his brain cortex, far more than is realized by people and physicians in general. A little boy of my knowledge, four years of age, was sick with an acute capillary bronchitis, and



his father, who was a physician, felt very much concerned about his condition.

His mother, as was her custom, at bedtime began to have him recite his infant's prayer, and after her the child repeated: "Now I lay me down to sleep, I pray the Lord my soul to keep, if I should—" there he began to have a paroxysm of coughing, and when he could speak again he said, "Mamma, mamma, I don't want to say any dying prayer—I want to say a living prayer, like that papa told you."

The substitute for the standard orthodox style of prayer had been learned from one of the current journals, and went as follows:

"Now I lay me down to sleep,  
I know the Lord my soul shall keep,  
And I shall wake to see the light,  
For God is with me all the night."

To satisfy the child and his mother, the father said, "Yes, my boy, we don't want a dying prayer—at least not when we are sick," and he repeated the substitute, the child saying it after him, and then went quietly to sleep.

If an ignorant Indian chief, that child of the plains, and a little four-year-old boy can appreciate a living prognosis and a living prayer, so are all men and women influenced by sense impressions or suggestions that a gloomy prognosis produces, with its weakening, paralyzing, inhibitory influence to all the nerve centers.

It is a physician's duty, first, last, and all the time, to do that which will help the patient get well.

There are many instances where, in a case of extreme illness, the only help that can be given a patient is to inspire him with hope, encouragement, and optimism, allaying his fears, and bringing about those conditions necessary for the physiological processes to accomplish the work of restoring the patient to health.

By the influence exerted upon the mind we encourage all the physiological processes, and thus, through them, convert potential energy into dynamic energy. We help the cells of the body to accomplish their work of fighting the etiological factors of disease, whether due to pathogenic germs or to other factors.

Physicians have frequently reminded me, in discussing this phase

of our subject, that they have repeatedly witnessed a rapid lessening of the resistive powers and speedy death as soon as they rendered an unfavorable prognosis, given frankly and honestly in response to the question, "Doctor, do you think I am going to get well?"

If a patient who is extremely ill has important business matters in mind that are worrying him, let them be arranged to his satisfaction upon the ground that it will help him get well.

To such questions as, "Am I going to die?" you can evade a direct answer by giving one that will be perfectly satisfactory to your patient, and at the same time will create sense impressions that will set up a different line of thought.

I prefer to so impress my patient that such an idea will never come into his mind, and also to engage the services of every member of his family to help me to accomplish this result, while on the outside I take them into my confidence and express my opinion to them honestly and frankly.

Even in a case of acute multiple neuritis, with high fever, intense pain, hyperesthesia, and great tenderness, in which the disease reached its height in ten or twelve days, I was enabled to maintain a mental stoicism that was remarkable, and at the time of the patient's most distressing symptoms he repeated to me the suggestion that I had so often iterated to him. I had so often said to him, "You will get better," that he began to ask for the suggestion by saying, "I will get better, won't I, Doctor?" It was some months before he was able to go about on crutches, but I never let him get away from the conviction of recovery.

At the time of the Galveston flood an unfortunate man was picked up perfectly helpless, in a half-drowned, wounded condition, and for six months lay in bed wearing a plaster cast for a severe injury to his spine. Two years later he was hobbling on crutches, which he had been using for many months, but he was unable to get his hands to the floor and rise again without support. He was in constant pain, had numerous functional disturbances, insomnia, indigestion, frequent movements from his bowels, headaches, etc.

When I saw him I felt that possibly his nervous system was

retaining impressions after the results of the physical injury which caused his pain, disturbances of locomotion, and other symptoms had been removed; and, at the request of his physician, I gave him three suggestive treatments, using hypnotism as a means to secure the most effective results.

All his symptoms were relieved, including his indigestion and bowel complications, after three or four treatments; he put aside his crutches, and a week after the last treatment was comfortable and happy.

In all classes of practice the therapeutic value of suggestions, strongly put into the brain plasm of your patient, will help him to get well where recovery is possible.

In some classes of work all that a physician can accomplish for the patient is to help him endure his physical disabilities. This includes such cases as where the organic structure of the nerve cells is involved, atrophic changes have taken place in the spinal cord or any other parts of the motor nervous system, as well as inoperable pathological conditions, resulting from malignant disease, tuberculosis, and all such cases as are beyond the pale of recovery.

Even in these cases, however, we can use suggestive measures to enable the patient to better endure his sufferings, and do so without the aid of hypnotism, much to the comfort of both the patient and his family.

In two cases of malignant disease—in one case of the uterus and in another of the stomach—occurring in two people above the age of sixty, I kept them each so cheered by constantly holding before their attention a contemplation of their past lives, which had been filled with usefulness, of duty done and successful achievement in their own humble way, and so pointed out the moral heroism that they were displaying and the value of such an example of cheerfulness and optimism, that they were enabled to meet that sweetest and most welcome of all relievers of pain and suffering under such existing conditions, death, with hardly a word of complaint.

If our patients have sufficient recuperative powers to give even the slightest hope of recovery, let us strengthen that hope and help them get well.

If they are ill with incurable diseases, we should help them to



endure their suffering, all the while working for their recovery even without the slightest ray of hope to encourage us. Thousands and thousands of such efforts have been rewarded by the recovery of apparently incurable patients.

A million years of advancement and progress will not have rendered our most expert diagnosticians sufficiently competent to prognosticate with infallibility, in all cases, against the determined and persistent effort of the truly alive physician who will stand up, with all odds against him, and fight for the recovery of his patient with every available therapeutic resource.

Absolute honesty and sincerity, under all circumstances, are imperative to the self-respecting physician, but the weakening, paralyzing, discouraging frankness of the pessimist is brutal.

## CHAPTER XXVI.

### MORAL STAMINA—A THERAPEUTIC POWER.

As we learn to discriminate between people of other classes presumably of like character and qualities, so do we also with physicians. There are among medical men some who, in the true sense of the word, are not physicians at all. Here is a type of the latter class. One day, in speaking of the importance of the psychological factor in therapeutics with a physician, he said, "Well, there may be something in that; for not long since I had a patient who lay in bed a little over three months, and I could not find a thing the matter with her, but I have never tried to exercise any influence over my patients in any way. They expect medicine, and I give it to them, and let them use their own minds to suit themselves. I am not in the profession for my health, and a man is liable to lose out with his patients by being too dictatorial."

"How often did you see her, Doctor?"

"Twice a day."

"And you let her stay in bed three months, saw her twice a day, and did not even tell her that there was no reason for her staying in bed, and advise that she get up and move about, take exercise, get fresh air, and take an interest in the affairs of life, both as a means of happiness and for her physical well-being?"

"No; she was a very sensitive woman, and I hated to hurt her feelings," he replied.

"What was your bill in that case, Doctor?"

"Four hundred and eighty dollars."

"And you are not afraid to hurt her feelings with that sized bill?"

"Oh, no; she was quite well satisfied and paid it without a murmur."

"Why, Doctor, if I saw no reason for that woman staying in

bed and having me visit her twice a day, I would as lief take money off a dead man's eyes as receive pay for such work."

"That is just the difference between us," said he.

And it was. And this illustrates a type of men everywhere who call themselves physicians.

Some physicians are actually convinced that they have done their duty when they have been kind, sympathetic, and attentive to their patients and prescribed for them medicinally. Since their patients are satisfied, they seem to feel that they have done their whole duty. So long as there is money in the case, the recovery of the patient does not seem to concern them.

The absolute lack of moral courage displayed by this class of doctors, who upon the surface give the appearance of being honest and conscientious professional gentlemen, is horrible to contemplate. They use narcotics freely, even when contraindicated, inhibiting the normal physiological processes, robbing their patients of self-reliance, rendering them absolutely dependent upon the physician, lessening in every way their resistive powers, and actually retarding recovery. We all have seen such men, who, in the spirit of cold commercialism, impress by word and conduct on their patients that they are very sick, when this attitude on the physician's part has proved to be a great causative factor in the case. Their patients, after a long illness, consider that their physician, in having impressed on them that such would be the case, has only displayed his knowledge and good judgment, whereas, in fact, this man in whom they have trusted has really been the greatest causative factor in the case.

Some physicians acquire a high reputation by giving a gloomy prognosis, thereby instilling fear into the minds of both patients and friends, bringing to bear upon them all the psychological conditions possible to depress them and hypnotize them into a long siege of illness. The power and efficacy of suggestion in the cause and cure of disease are but faintly appreciated by one in a thousand of the people of our time; hence their easy gullibility by such men. The student of psychotherapeutics can discern this class of physicians everywhere, who often stand high in the medical profession.



If I were to use the simile that I had in my employ a servant ever able and willing to obey my directions to have everything in the house just as I wanted it, you could form some idea of the power of the great involuntary nervous system in its control over the bodily functions. We influence this involuntary nervous system by the sense impressions we make upon the brain plasm of the patient whenever we come into his or her presence.

Fully nine-tenths of an individual's psychic powers or protoplasmic energies are subconscious—that is, he, the intellectual man, is unconscious of them. These we can influence for the good or harm of our patient. The physician who shakes his head, and gives a high-sounding name of the disease, often fastens the condition stronger upon his patient by adding a psychoneurotic element when there is no pathological basis for the condition named.

A lady of my acquaintance had been sick for several months, and her physician took with him to see her a consultant who appreciated the psychic element in therapeutics. Together in the consulting room they discussed this case.

“What is the matter with her, Doctor?”

“Just weak and nervous, can't sleep, does not eat, discouraged, and getting worse every day.”

The consulting physician quickly saw that the attending physician was the most aggravating causative factor in this case.

“Why does not she get better?” said he to the consultant.

“Because you don't talk and act right.”

“What must I do and how should I talk?”

“Why, give her a sleeping capsule, and tell her that you are going to give her a good night's sleep. Then turn to the nurse and say, ‘Give one of these sleeping capsules at eight o'clock, and, if she is not sleeping soundly by nine, give her another, but in no event give her more than two—she will sleep soundly all night.’ Say it as if you meant it. Say it as if you had not the slightest doubt about it. Then, turning to the patient, say, ‘You are going to sleep well tonight and will feel much better in the morning.’

“When you come to see her tomorrow, smile pleasantly as you walk into the room and, as you bid her good-morning, take her

hand, and, feeling her pulse, affirm, 'You are better.' Tell her she will improve every day now. Say to her, 'You will enjoy your food today and not be nervous, and will feel much stronger; you are going to get well; going right along to recovery.' Keep this up as you see her at every visit. Getting in behind a neurasthenic case like this, with all the bodily functions perverted, you can stir latent energies and stimulate nervous centers into activity, and be a factor for good."

The physician did so and his patient was soon well.

Too many physicians are nothing more than slaves to their own desires. They see in their patient's illness a chance to make money. They feel that they have done their duty when they have prescribed for them in a perfunctory manner, and, putting their reliance solely in drugs, they overlook entirely the psychologic factor in therapeutics. They even tell their patients that they are seriously sick, purely for personal aggrandizement.

The result is undue nervousness, overanxiety, sleeplessness, perverted functions, and constant progress from bad to worse. These symptoms they attempt to relieve by narcotics. They enter the sick room in this indifferent, half-hearted, selfish manner, and their efforts are worse than useless.

See in your patient potentialities that are susceptible to external stimuli, and regard something besides the physical manifestation of the individual. Treat the man himself, the intelligent organized force—call this mind, soul, or spirit—that functionates in perfect correlation with the neuron elements, and stir them to renew, energize, vitalize, and strengthen every part of his physical organism.

What do we stir? Call it what you will—let it be the "vis medicatrix naturæ," the "resident energy within," "neuric energy," the "subconscious self," the "involuntary nervous system," the "psychic man," "spirit," "mind," or "soul"—the name matters not. This fact is true—man has within him reserve energy that can be stirred into activity. By suggestion the physiological processes of the body can be influenced for his good. We can produce such impressions upon his brain plasma as will quiet nervousness, relieve pain, promote sleep, and, acting thus, we can conserve his energy, resulting in a better appetite, better digestion, and im-

proved nutrition. We thus re-establish all the perverted physiological processes. By this means you can get your patient well when drugs and other remedial agents absolutely fail. If medicine or surgery is indicated, by all means use it.

The great trouble is that many of the men in our profession are ignorant of the potency of the psychologic factor as a therapeutic adjunct. Some who have had a glimpse of these latent possibilities lack the moral stamina to boldly take hold and do their part. I know men who would face a cannon absolutely devoid of physical fear, yet too timid and half-hearted in the sick-room to do more than give drugs, nine-tenths of which are worse than useless in this class of functional and neuropathic conditions.

Many of these sick people need a good, sound, intellectual flogging. They need to be told that they alone are to blame for their condition. Let them know that health is a natural condition and comes to every one who conforms to nature's laws, which they are continually violating every day of their lives.

Emerson has well said: "Man may boast that he can violate the laws of nature and maintain health; the lie is on his lips, the conditions on his soul."

Let your patient know that to maintain health he must conform to the laws of health. Get hold of him and put him in possession of himself. Urge him to take into his system plenty of nature's healthful beverage, pure water, to eliminate impurities from his system and to encourage all functional activity. A man should drink not less than four or five pints of water a day. Tell him or her to exercise freely every muscle and hasten the blood to every part of his system, to eliminate effete material as well as to build up, nourish, and renew the life and strength of every cell in his body. Advise him against becoming a slave to his appetites, over-eating, sexual excess, etc.

Fully nine-tenths of the American people eat too much meat, and keep their nervous systems overtaxed to dispose of the amount of food in excess of what is actually necessary for nutrition. Get such people, when nervous, to learn to relax and to practice deep breathing as a resource of healthfulness. Impress upon them the pleasure, beauty, and glory of work, and useful endeavor and



achievement, as a means to invigorate and strengthen both mind and body. Let them know that we are born into this beautiful world surrounded by everything to make us happy and keep us well, but that the world is ruled by law and we must conform to laws of health, and that when we do that we shall be well and happy, which is our highest privilege, and not before.

It is often the case that our patients need education and encouragement, knowledge and guidance—other names for suggestion—and not medicine or sympathy, which only fixes them deeper in the mire; but there are some who are called physicians who have not the courage to attempt to make use of these therapeutic measures.

Why let Christian scientists, osteopaths, and other species of charlatanism thrive upon a large class of cases when, if we were but equipped in this higher art in therapeutics, we could day by day infuse health and happiness, joy and sunshine, into the lives of weak, erring, miserable children of this world who are crying to us for help. Our patients are not merely chemical laboratories, but human beings, with intelligent faculties to comprehend our suggestions that act upon every part of the body through the nervous centers. If properly presented, they will regulate all perverted functions in perfect accord with the physiological processes of the body.

Man is not a machine, but a living organism. The unseen part of man—mind, spirit, or soul—constitutes the dynamics of this human organism, functioning in perfect correlation with the neuron elements, and they constitute the greatest therapeutic factor at our command, ever present and ready for utilization.

## CHAPTER XXVII.

### SUGGESTION IN EDUCATION.

The prime purpose of education is to equip the individual to make the struggle for existence. More than ever before do we now realize that this necessitates the development of the body as well as the mind—that body, mind, and character are all qualities of the one individual, and that it is practically impossible to elevate one quality while the others are weak or degraded. The problems of health concern all that contributes to the evolution of the individual—physically, mentally, and morally.

The capacities and capabilities of the body should occupy more consideration in our educational system than is done at the present time. When education or religion interferes with the physical development of children, it strikes a weakening blow at the quality of brain plasm possessed by the child, and, to obtain the best results in mental development, this should be kept at a high standard. Moreover, any factor that retards physical growth and development, while education is enforced, seriously jeopardizes the life of the individual, and our American cities have thousands of physically weak, neurasthenic boys and girls who have been maimed for life under the strain of the existing educational methods.

Every one should be environed by those conditions that maintain the highest standard of protoplasmic energy during the period of childhood and adolescence. The impressions that are made upon the brain through the senses from the cradle to the grave are the suggestions that constitute the education of an individual. Here those that are useful and good, or harmful and false, are alike recorded, to furnish foodstuff for the mind, which is manifested in thought and conduct.

School training, after all, consists only in furnishing an environment in which certain suggestions, ideas, mental pictures, concepts, or impressions can be photographed on the rapidly developing cere-

bral cells. Here consciousness itself is evolved, habits are formed, and a new world is opened to view as a child's perceptive powers are strengthened and individuality begins to assert itself.

While a certain quality of physical traits and habit tendencies are transmitted to the offspring, by far the most potent factors in making children what they become are the inherited environing conditions which bring to bear upon the child their unconscious suggestive influences. What we are is largely the result of what we have experienced in life. Habits of thought, traits of character, religious beliefs, moral convictions, etc., are all directly the result of impressions that have been registered upon our cerebral cells. Environment contributes both to our physical and mental constitutions.

In the slums of one of our great American cities I noticed a little two-year-old child, without shoes, bareheaded, and dirty, in ragged clothes that scarcely covered its poorly nourished body; reared in filth and poverty, with a drunken father to abuse its weak-faced mother, who tolerated her pitiable state of existence because she did not know any better. Had she been taught to work, and to think and do for herself, she could easily have extricated herself from this miserable role. That a child born under such conditions should become a prostitute, contract disease, and die before she was scarcely out of her teens would be as natural as the law of gravitation.

A girl whose father at the time of her birth was occupying the position of president of a great college, and who was reared in the lap of education and refinement, could have been nothing else than the mathematical resultant of the parallelogram of the forces that environed her.

A little child of my knowledge was taken at six months old by a couple of kind-hearted people, who provided it with all the physical necessities of life. They saw in this little one latent possibilities and potentialities that could be developed and trained into active, useful service, and they enjoyed watching its growth. They said she was beautiful, and the child smiled and cooed, and grew more beautiful. They informed their friends that she was smart, and every day reminded the little one of this belief in her,



and at an early age she did all sorts of useful service. They said that she was good and obedient, and, true to the law of suggestion, they molded those very qualities in her. They loved to listen to her merry prattle, and she early acquired a vocabulary of words to express her ideas.

Later, when she started to school, they believed that she would excel in her classes, and she led in every study. They encouraged her efforts to imitate her foster mother in cooking, and, though she soiled her clothing and wasted material, they were pleased, and she soon became an expert cook. They appreciated her efforts at the piano, and she developed into a talented musician. Still later in life she married, and was the pride and helper of her husband, and an honored woman in her community.

Such was the culminating force of suggestion in the home life in its influence upon the life and character of a motherless waif. Who can dispute the saying that "men and women make men and women?"

"You are a bad boy, just as bad as you can be, and I will never let you come down town with me again," said a mother to her little six-year-old, who was the impersonation of the character that his mother had exhibited for him every day of his life.

**Children are usually just what their parents make them.**

A little four-year-old boy was playing upon the floor with his fifteen-months-old baby sister. He impulsively jerked some of his toys from her baby hands, and she in turn began to cry. The mother, who was quietly sewing near by, witnessed the incident, and, looking up serenely, in a subdued tone called young America to her. He sulked up to her with a face that indicated that his rights were being transgressed, and he was not disposed to stand for it.

"Kiss me, my boy," said she, while she implanted a kiss upon his forehead. She then good-naturedly placed her fingers under his chin, and, with his face upturned to hers, quietly said to him, "You are mamma's little man; you are a good boy. Yes, you are; you are a good boy, and I know you are going to be just as sweet to your little sister as you can be. She is a little baby, but you are a little man. Now, I am going to see if you aren't."

In a few moments the mother looked up again, and her little son had piled around his sister all the toys he could find. He sat upon the floor, looking first at his sister and then at his mother, trying in vain to suppress his delight in his mother's approval, which he seemed sure he would get. "I told you so; come and kiss me again," said she, making a quick move as if to catch him while he dodged from the room with a joyous ha! ha!

The greatest factor in the education of a child, and the most important element in the development of character in children, is the confidence that we show them; for the confidence reposed by others in us determines the estimate that we place upon ourselves. To believe in a child is to beget self-confidence in that child.

After we are older, and have had more experience in the world, we are able to excuse ignorance, and we crave the confidence only of the best people. By this we estimate ourselves, but in children the love and confidence, and expressed appreciation, of those nearest and most closely related is the most powerful factor in the development and growth of all the latent elements of manhood and womanhood.

Children easily enter into sympathy with those with whom they are constantly associated, and the blighting influence of a home in which violent displays of temper are made, or hysterical conduct in any form is exhibited, is harmful to both the mental and physical development of children. Here they unconsciously acquire habits that frequently last them through life.

In the use of suggestion upon children for the correction of vice and the cure of evil habits, moral perversions, etc., both with and without hypnotism, no rule can be given that will apply to all children alike. One must know children and deal with each one according to his or her own individuality, first securing their confidence. They are very suggestible without hypnotism, and easily come under any influence by those who have their confidence.

In one of our large cities a revival meeting was conducted by an advertising revivalist under the auspices of several of the leading orthodox churches, and his text for seven days was, "Hell, the kind of place it is and who is going there." The physicians of that city were more than ordinarily busy during this period on account

of the psychoneurotic condition induced by the fear that such preaching had implanted in the minds of unthinking men and women.

At one of their special services for children, held by the revivalist during the latter part of his stay in that city, only "workers" were invited besides the children, thus securing such an environment and suggestive influence that hundreds of children, who were incapable of thinking and reasoning for themselves, were coerced into joining the church. Under these circumstances children are unconsciously molded into a particular line of religious belief which reflects the opinions of their parents or the makers of their church creed, and under this influence they are reared and educated. The power of choice is denied them, and they grow into manhood and womanhood stamped as if they were so many bricks.

We might as well expect to make a race horse out of a colt that had been imprisoned in a stable all his life, as to expect children reared under such an environment to become broad-minded, truth-loving men and women. As self-conscious, independent entities, they are not allowed to think for themselves, and, failing to exercise their intellectual faculties, their minds become dwarfed and useless. How many people are born and reared under such an enforced environment, from which they are never able to extricate themselves! They acquire a one-sided way of seeing things, and such mental processes, continuously indulged in, form habits, and such mental habits form fixed psychophysiological complexes in the brain plasma to the extent that it becomes impossible for the individual to think or believe any other way.

Mental faculties are mainly acquired, and are the product of environment and education. Chief among these are memory, imagination, speech, knowledge, conception, judgment, will, and reason. Reason is mankind's highest, truest, noblest faculty, but it is able to draw conclusions only from the light of experience.

Many advanced thinkers believe that "the will is higher than the mind, and that its rightful prerogative is to govern and direct the mind just as it is the prerogative for the mind to govern and direct the body." This seems to be true when we see an individual using his entire mental equipment at a given salary to promul-



gate a fixed religious dogma, or when "a lawyer receives a retainer and commands his mind forthwith to busy itself with all its resources of reasoning and persuasion for the party who pays him. Even his emotions from the extremes of pathos to those of indignation may be pressed into the service as well."<sup>1</sup>

There are others who deny that there is such a faculty as "will," who take the position that mankind is impelled to action by desire and held in restraint by fear, and between desire and fear each human being stands.

Yet even will, desire, and fear are only qualities of the individual body and mind, and they conform to the general law of evolution, being the outcome of heredity, environment, and education. The logical conclusion, then, is that each human being is what he is by the operation of the same infallible law that moves the earth around the sun and that controls the stars.

People mean to do well. They are seeking happiness as best they know how, according to their instinctive impulses inherent within the protoplasmic mechanism of the physical organism, modified or guided by knowledge and experience.

Some of the greatest, noblest, truest characters that exist in the world today are clergymen, who are so far in advance of the creed of the church under whose jurisdiction they are laboring that they have become a law unto themselves. They have been impelled by desire to do that which is right, and useful, and true until they are found standing in orthodox pulpits, fearlessly doing all within their power to liberate men and women from the tyranny of creeds and dogmas, ignorance and superstition, through which all creeds have been evolved. They are interpreting the problems of life in the light of present-day knowledge, and eagerly seeking the contributions shed upon the pathway of human endeavor and achievement by the light of science.

"To live by science requires intelligence and faith, but not to live by it is folly." Men stand where they are in the world today held by the tyranny of fear and ignorance, unless liberated by knowledge and experience. Frequently physicians who stand high in the medical profession have said to me frankly and honestly

---

<sup>1</sup>Thompson: Brain and Personality.

that they felt the necessity of a more thorough knowledge of the theories and methods of using psychotherapeutics, but they "were afraid their practices would be ruined if the people should find it out." When such men are teachers in our medical colleges, their pupils bear the stamp of moral weakness upon their professional characters. They are the legitimate product of weakness and fear as manifested in the personality of a physician.

A most valuable part of education is the incentives and intellectual ideals implanted through personal association.

## CHAPTER XXVIII.

### SELF-MASTERY AS A FINE ART.

"Man exists . . . not for what he can accomplish, but for what can be accomplished of him."—Göthe.

By suggestion we can add a dynamic quality to the mental equipment of an individual who is receptive. A new element is given to his personality by the impression made upon his brain plasm, which better equips him to meet the exigencies of life, and whereby he can be educated into the art of self-mastery.

A little child, seven years old, was beginning her first day in school, and appeared bewildered and confused as she anticipated the new experiences that the day had in store for her. As she started out of the home her father, who was awaiting the arrival of the right psychological moment, called her to him.

"Papa, mamma says I must hurry, or I shall be late," responded the child as she came up closer to find out what her father wanted.

"You have plenty of time, my daughter," said he. "I have a secret to tell you if you will promise not to tell anybody. Do you know there is not a smarter child in this town than you are?"

"No, papa, I did not know that."

"Well, there is not, and I will show you. Who can run faster than you among your little friends?"

"None of them," was her answer.

"Who rides a wheel or plays dolls better than you?"

"None," she answered.

"Well, here is our secret. They can not learn faster in school than you can. They are all smart, but they don't know it. The girl that does what her teacher tells her is the one that learns the fastest. Now, that is our secret. You go and find out what your lesson is, and come home and we will help you to study, and by the end of the term you will be at the head of your class."



The child's answer was, "All right, papa; if you will help me, yes, I will."

"Go to school now, you have plenty of time, but don't tell anybody our secret."

The child walked away with a new element added to her consciousness. She went with head erect, and a smile on her face that indicated that she was going out to conquer. Of course, this was followed by other similar suggestions, and during the eight years since that time that little girl has stood at the head of her classes and found in her school work a genuine pleasure.

In another instance a child, thirteen years of age, was competing for a prize given in elocution. Her father had also offered her a reward, and expressed a wish that she win that medal. She had worked hard to succeed, and on the morning of the contest the father called her into his den and handed her the promised reward for winning the contest.

"But," said she, "I haven't won it yet."

"See here, daughter," was his response, "I know, and your teacher knows, that you render that selection aright. Now, it matters not one bit what the judges or the audience think of it. Go, render your selection to suit yourself and to do credit to your teacher, but forget all about the prize or the opinion of the judges."

She went away relieved of all apparent anxiety, and shared the prize with an older contestant.

The question of self-mastery is one of education and self-development. By suggestion we can plant ideas that give rise to impulses or incentives within the individual to make effort at self-development, self-education, and self-control.

Every one should be made to feel that he is born to be of use in the world and should be taught how to exercise his capacity, for it is only through the self-reliance gained by our own activities that we can make a success in any vocation in life. The individual who can be of most help to others is the one who sees the greatest possibilities within them.

The problem of life for every individual is the one of self-mastery—how best to conserve and direct our energies into useful, whole-

some lines of thought and action. To be of help to others, one must at least in some degree have become master of one's self.

It has been a matter of observation to see a physician so utterly lacking in self-control that he was incapacitated to use efficacious suggestion upon an individual, even after the latter had assumed an attitude of voluntary receptivity. In him the self-conscious ego had not been evolved sufficiently to give him force of character to be of influence.

It is for each one of us to decide whether we shall control and govern ourselves in the light of reason, education, and experience, or be held by the opinions of others. To do our best in life, we must be independent, strong, capable, and free.

The leaders of all professions in all ages have been men who have overleaped the limitations of environment, of ignorance and superstition, and have dared to stand up for what they believed to be right.

To have achieved self-mastery is to be guided by reason, impelled by truth, and freed from the tyranny of fear, selfishness, and ignorance. It denotes courage, humble service, magnanimity, sympathy, friendliness, and a tenacious stand for the right. To reach this high ideal of moral attainment, human evolution must go on forever. We are as yet in the **ameba** and **moneron** stage of our appreciation of this higher conception of ourselves and our relation to others.

"With this poor life, with this mean world  
I'd fain complete what in me lies;  
I strive to perfect this—my me;  
My sole ambition's to be wise."

Fear is the natural consequence of weakness and ignorance. To be masters of our bodies does not mean that the physical basis of existence is to be ignored. Far from it. On the other hand, to maintain a strong, healthy body is the first essential to development. Will power and determination are natural accompaniments of a healthy organism.

There is a peculiar psychic quality that is the heritage of some individuals. They are content to drift with the crowd, and have not the courage to dare to use their own reasoning faculties. The

problem of education is to deliver these individuals from such tendencies and thus to prevent them from lapsing into physical weaklings, mental nonentities, or moral cowards.

It is the inalienable birthright of every human being to manifest the highest expression of individuality and selfhood—to give the world the very best that he can make of himself according to the limitations of heredity, environment, and education. Fear and selfishness are the greatest barriers to the progress of aspiring humanity.

The “thou shalt” and “thou shalt not” of an irresponsible hierarchy no longer fetters the spirit of the man who has obtained sufficient self-mastery to live up to the light and knowledge of the present age.

But not for ourselves alone must we live. We gain in strength by helping others, by assuming responsibility, by work and useful achievement.

A great deal of the hysteria and neurasthenia, and despondency and weakness, of men and women is due to their failure to exercise sufficient self-mastery—to use the powers and capabilities inherent within the cells of their organism. Such people we can wonderfully benefit by suggestion.

Medicine will ever have a place in our therapeutic armamentarium, but it is a crime to use it to relieve nervousness and psychoneurotic and functional disturbances, by lulling and inhibiting the normal physiological processes, where the individual should be taught the art of self-mastery, self-control, self-activity, and conformity to such physiological methods of development as breathing, relaxation, dietetics, water drinking, exercise, and work, with sunshine, fresh air, and cheerfulness.

The use of suggestion in therapeutics is nothing more or less than getting an individual to exercise self-mastery and self-control.

Here I am reminded of a stalwart man, six feet two inches high, weighing one hundred and ninety-eight pounds, who had a wife and two children in another portion of his state, while he was being supported by his brother, and all the while nursing and encouraging a psychoneurotic condition. His physician informed me of this element of sloth and laziness that was a great factor



in his case, besides his morbid self-consciousness, and sought my aid to arouse him from such psychic incumbrances and put him in possession of himself.

He came into the office walking with a cane, and, besides his symptoms of indigestion and insomnia, he complained of a constantly painful and weak back.

My treatment was to give such suggestions as to drive back his morbid existing sense impressions. To substitute a new consciousness, he was placed with head on one chair and heels on another, and made to sustain my weight of two hundred pounds upon his body. Then, looking him in the face after he was awakened, I informed him frankly and honestly of the test we had made and assured him that a stronger man did not exist in his state, that all he needed was exercise, and that the right thing for him to do was to go to work. I met him upon his own plane—that of a physical laborer—and used such methods as would most convince him that he was a man, and he appreciated it. He did go to work and had no further trouble.

Such harsh treatment is not applicable in private practice, but, when I see people whining and complaining, and morbidly self-conscious of their own life's battles, I can only wish that they could be aroused in some way and be made to see the pleasure, and beauty, and glory of work.

Upon the exercise of our own self-activity does the welfare of the future race depend. The intellectual world brings life's greatest pleasures, but, as we now understand it, the head and hands must be educated together. Mental and physical development must go hand in hand.

When wealth causes the individual to depend upon the physical and mental efforts of others to do for him what he should do for himself, it is a means of degeneration and weakness.

It is all a question of mental attitude. We must ever press onward for the acquirement of more knowledge, the discovery of new truths, and for facts revealed by new experiences. We must never be willing to accept as a finality the imperfection of present attainments.

To be glad to live for life's own sake, to love and to help others

for the pleasure it gives us, and in our own humble way to crown our lives with useful endeavor and achievement, leaves no excuse for the question, Is life worth while?

It never becomes stale, flat, and unprofitable, save as it reflects our own stupidity.





## REFERENCES.

- Babinski, J., 287  
 Barker, Lewellys F., 27, 31  
 Beaumont, William, 66  
 Bernheim, H., 28  
 Binet, Paul, 28  
 Bleuler, E., 287  
 Bodine, A. A., 242  
 Bonaparte, Napoleon, 155  
 Breuer, Joseph, 287  
 Brill, A. A., 292  
 Buchanan, Sir George, 39  
  
 Chareot, M., 138  
 Crothers, T. D., 52  
  
 Donley, John E., 54  
 Dubois, Paul, 28  
  
 Emerson, Ralph Waldo, 115  
  
 Fisher, Irving, 346  
 Forel, August, 28  
 Freud, Sigmund, 27, 104, 255, 287,  
     288, 291, 292, 295, 298, 302, 304,  
     311, 314, 315, 316, 317  
 Friedlander, A., 314  
  
 Gerrish, Frederick H., 28  
 Gowers, Sir William, 137  
 Gurlt, E. J., 229  
  
 Häckel, Ernst, 114  
 Hammond, G., 40  
 Harvey, William, 122  
 Howard, Clifford, 334  
  
 James, William, 40  
 Janet, Jules, 28  
 Jastrow, Joseph, 156  
 Jenner, Edward, 122  
 Jones, Ernest, 33  
 Julliard, Gustave, 229  
 Jung, Carl G., 28, 255, 287, 304, 305,  
     310, 315, 317  
  
 Kelly, Howard A., 53, 54  
  
 Liebeault, M., 28  
  
 Mayo, C. H. and W. J., 234, 242  
 Metschnikoff, Elie, 95  
 Meyer, Adolph, 287, 292, 303, 315  
 Morton, A. W., 242  
 Münsterberg, Hugo, 25, 28, 31, 37, 38,  
     46, 47, 50, 55, 292, 315  
  
 Nystrom, Anton, 273  
  
 Oppenheim, Hermann, 213  
 Ortner, Robert, 54  
  
 Potter, Nathaniel B., 54  
 Prince, Morton, 28, 47, 63, 106, 107,  
     117, 287, 292, 311, 315  
 Putnam, J. J., 28, 287, 292  
  
 Rogers, Edmund J. A., 39, 40  
 Ruskin, John, 127  
  
 Schrenck-Notzing, 264  
 Scott, James Foster, 341  
 Shakespeare, William, 33  
 Sherman, Jacob Gould, 30  
 Sidis, Boris, 28, 107, 287, 292, 311,  
     313, 315  
 Spencer, Herbert, 117  
 Spiller, William G., 213  
 Steckel, Wilhelm, 317  
  
 Tennyson, Alfred, 85  
 Thompson, W. H., 386  
  
 Verworn, Max, 85  
 Vesalius, Andreas, 122  
 Virchow, Rudolf, 128  
  
 Weichelbaum, Anton, 324  
  
 Ziehen, Theodor, 49, 51



## INDEX.

### A

Abnormal complex, 47  
 Abuse of personality of physician, 359  
   of suggestion, 59  
 Acquisitions, intellectual, 48  
   physiological, 48  
 Acute diseases, psychotherapy in, 140  
 Adenoids, example of hypnotism in  
   operation for, 195  
 Adjunct, suggestion as, to anesthesia,  
   228  
 Alcoholism, example of hypnotism in,  
   201, 224  
 Alteration, thought as factor in physi-  
   ological, 111  
 Amputation, example of hypnotism  
   in, 191  
 Amusement, hypnotism not used for,  
   224  
   suggestion not used for, 224  
 Anabolism, optimism conduces to, 97  
 Analysis of personality, 112  
 Anesthesia, cause of mortality in, 232  
   mortality from chloroform, 229  
   from ether, 229  
   produced by suggestion, 73  
   suggestion as adjunct to, 228  
   in chloroform, 238, 240  
   in surgical, 235  
   surgical, with ether and suggestion,  
   237  
 Anesthetics, physiological action of,  
   232  
 Anorexia, example of psychotherapy  
   in, 212  
 Anthropomorphic theism, 125  
 Appendicitis, neurasthenia as cause  
   of, 41  
   psychasthenia as cause of, 41  
 Applicability of psychotherapy in med-  
   ical practice, 28  
 Application of psychotherapy, require-  
   ments of, 326  
   psychotherapy of universal, 24  
 Arm, stiffening of, by suggestion, 79  
 Armamentarium of physician, 127

Association method as affecting the  
   ego, 315  
   example of, 308  
   Jung's, 217, 305  
   philosophy of, 314  
   philosophy of Jung's, 308  
   of ideas, 47  
 Attendant, example of personality of,  
   360  
 Autosuggestion, basis for, 318  
   mental effect of, 319  
   philosophy of, 318  
   physical effect of, 321  
 Awakening interest in psychotherapy,  
   21

### B

Basis for autosuggestion, 318  
 Beastiality in sexual instinct, 274  
 Bisexual elements of parents in child,  
   304  
 Bleeding, prevention of, by suggestion,  
   80, 93  
 Bodily function, suggestion stimu-  
   lates, 331  
 Body, evolution of, 121  
   mind and, in psychotherapy, 37  
   sticking pin in, by suggestion, 79,  
   81  
   stiffening of, by suggestion, 80  
 Bright's disease, psychotherapy in, 54  
 Broca's convulsions, 88  
 Bronchitis, example of hypnotism in,  
   189  
 Brutality of frankness, example of,  
   368  
   of physician, 368  
 Business, personality of person as  
   factor in, 354

### C

Cat, example of dream analysis about,  
   313  
 Catabolism, effect of mind on, 66  
   pessimism conduces to, 97



- Catheterization, example of hypnosis in, 184
- Cause of mortality in anesthesia, 232
- Cell function, psychotherapy as controlling, 40
- Cervix, example of suggestion in lacerated, 241
- Character, effect of suggestion on, 60
- Charlatan, occasion for, 110
- Charlatanism, occasion for, 65
- Child, bisexual elements of parents in, 304
- influence of parent on, 382
- of religious emotion on, 384
- of suggestion on, 382
- Chloroform anesthesia, mortality from, 229
- suggestion in, 238, 240
- physiological action of, 231
- Christian science, effect of suggestion in, 62
- effects of, 23
- fallacy of, 328
- mistakes of, 327
- occasion for, 52
- principle of, 319
- psychotherapeutic value of, 135
- source of membership of, 337
- suggestion as factor in, 154
- scientist, occasion for, 24
- Chronic cases, psychotherapy in, 55
- Circumcision, example of suggestion in, 240
- Circumstances form religious belief, 338
- Clay pills, example of suggestion with, 131
- Commercialism of physicians, 375, 378
- Complex, abnormal, 47
- normal, 47
- Confidence, self-suggestion requires, 145
- Conscious, definition of, 52
- mind amenable to suggestion, 91
- definition of, 88
- function of, 91
- Consciousness as a factor, 119
- Consent necessary for hypnotization, 63, 83, 117
- Conservation of energy, 340
- philosophy of, 340
- Contentment as aid to health, 349
- Convulsions, Broca's, 88
- Co-operation of patient as factor in therapeutics, 345
- Correct diagnosis as safeguard, 326
- Correctness of psychotherapeutic diagnosis, 218
- Corset as factor in morbidity, 346
- Cosmos as an organism, 113
- compared with man, 113
- Curative agent, psychotherapy as, 42

## D

- Definition of conscious, 52
- of conscious mind, 88
- of disease, 128
- of fear, 125
- of force in man, 117
- of hypnotic suggestion, 62
- of hypnotism, 89, 162
- of hypnotized subject, 76
- of knowledge, 112
- of mind, 87
- of personal magnetism, 102
- of post-hypnotic suggestion, 104
- of psychic trauma, 288
- of psychoanalysis, 288
- of psychotherapy, 21, 48, 54
- of subconscious, 52
- of subconscious mind, 90
- of stimulus words, 306
- of suggestion, 60, 130
- of suggestive therapeutics, 110
- Deleterious effect of religious emotion, 335
- hypnotism not, 224
- Demonstration of hypnotism, 69
- Demonstrator, efficacy of psychotherapy depends on, 25
- Dental surgery, example of hypnotism in, 195
- Dentistry, example of suggestion in, 228
- Depressant, personality of physician as, 142
- Development of nervous system, 51
- Diagnosis, correctness of psychotherapeutic, 218
- example of incorrect, 329, 330
- Diet for mental development, 346
- for physical development, 346
- Diphtheria, improper use of suggestion in, 327
- Disease, definition of, 128
- education as preventive of, 217
- pessimism conduces to, 111
- suggestion in incurable, 373
- vis medicatrix naturæ in, 40
- Diseases of mental origin, 23
- psychotherapy in acute, 140
- in mental, 27
- Dissociation of ideas, 48
- of personality, 107
- Divine healing, suggestion as factor in, 154
- Dogmas, evolution and, 125

- Dogmatism of medicine, 126  
of theology, 126
- Dream analysis as factor in psychoanalysis, 311  
as factor in suggestion, 312  
example of, about cat, 313  
about parturition, 313  
about snake, 312
- E
- Education as factor in physical development, 381  
as factor in sexual instinct, 269, 276  
as preventive of disease, 277  
instead of medicine, 380  
suggestion in, 381
- Educational measure, psychotherapy as, 33
- Effect of Christian science, 23  
of emotion on organs, 108  
of hypnotism on subject, 81  
of mental attitude of patient, 143  
of mental healing, 23  
of mind on catabolism, 66  
on metabolism, 66  
of self-suggestion on physiognomy, 110  
of suggestion in Christian science, 62  
on character, 60
- Efficacy of psychotherapy depends on demonstrator, 25  
doubted, 238  
of suggestion, hypnotism as proof of, 69
- Ego, association method as affecting the, 315  
in man, 114
- Emanuel movement, occasion for, 52
- Emanuelists, psychotherapy as employed by, 136
- Emotion, effect of, on organs, 108  
religion as factor in hysterical, 302  
religious, and sexual instinct, 123  
subconscious mind the seat of, 108
- Employment of psychotherapy without knowledge, 131, 132, 133, 134
- Energy, conservation of, 340
- Environment as factor in neurosis, 293, 302  
as factor in sexual instinct, 269  
in therapeutics, 364  
mind affected by, 89  
physician as factor in, 366
- Epilepsy, psychotherapy in, 213  
symptoms mistaken for, 213
- Erotic emotion, religious emotion as factor in, 334
- Essentials for the patient, 345
- Ether and suggestion, surgical anesthesia with, 237  
anesthesia, mortality from, 229  
physiological action of, 231
- Ethical consideration of sexual instinct, 266
- Etiologic factor, pessimism as, 97
- Evolution and dogmas, 125  
of body, 121  
of mind, 121  
psychotherapy the result of, 57
- Example of association method, 308  
of brutality of frankness, 368  
of dream analysis about cat, 313  
about parturition, 313  
about snake, 312  
of effect of mental relief, 160  
of hypnotic suggestion, 74, 77, 78  
of hypnotism in alcoholism, 201, 224  
in amputation, 191  
in bronchitis, 189  
in catheterization, 184  
in dental surgery, 195  
in fibroid tumor, 183  
in gonorrhoea, 168  
in hysteria, 192  
in indigestion, 187  
in insomnia, 197  
in menorrhagia, 183  
in migraine, 172  
in morphin habit, 184  
in nocturnal enuresis, 177  
in obstetric anesthesia, 177  
in operation for adenoids, 195  
in psychological impotency, 196  
in psychoplepsy, 168  
in psychoneurasthenia, 198  
in psychoneurology, 176  
in psychoneurotic indigestion, 175  
in psychoneurotic paralysis, 173  
in pulmonary tuberculosis, 203  
in retention of urine, 184  
in retroverted uterus, 178  
in sciatica, 188  
in supraorbital neuralgia, 200  
in suprapubic cystotomy, 194  
in urethritis, 182  
in vomiting, 174  
in vomiting of pregnancy, 199
- of incorrect diagnosis, 329, 330  
of lack of moral stamina, 375  
of self-mastery, 391  
of personality of attendant, 360  
of physician, 356, 360  
of pre-hypnotic suggestion, 73, 77  
of psychotherapy in anorexia, 212  
in gastritis, 216  
in grand mal, 213

## Example of psychotherapy—cont'd.

- in insomnia, 223
  - in migraine, 209
  - in neurasthenia, 105, 214, 217
  - in obsessions, 210, 212, 226
  - in pain in head, 215
  - in paralysis, 215
  - in pneumonia, 141
  - in psychasthenia, 211
  - in sticking pin into skin, 221
  - in utero-ovarian disease, 211
  - of suggestion as soporific, 150
    - in affection of skin, 372
    - in bronchitis, 370
    - in circumcision, 240
    - in dentistry, 228
    - in exhaustion, 148
    - in gastroenterocolitis, 369
    - in lacerated cervix, 241
    - in mental development, 388
    - in morbid consciousness, 158
    - in nephritis, 368
    - in neurasthenia, 151
    - in neuritis, 372
    - in parturition, 249
    - in pleuritis, 151
    - in stiff arm, 143
    - in stiff body, 144
    - in stiff limb, 138
    - in surgery, 229
    - in warts, 145
    - on music band, 98
    - to hypnotized subject, 75
      - with clay pills, 131
      - with lemon, 98, 130
    - of telepathy, 100
    - of thought transference, 100
  - Exhaustion, example of suggestion in, 148
  - Expectant mother, psychotherapy in relation to, 243
  - Experiences, memory reproduces, 50
    - nervous system reproduces, 38, 45, 117, 131
  - Extreme illness, psychotherapy in, 371
    - procedure in, 371
- F
- Faith cure, suggestion as factor in, 154
  - Fallacy of Christian science, 328
  - Finé art, self-mastery as, 388
  - Fear, definition of, 125
  - Fevers, suggestion in, 139
  - Fibroid tumor, example of hypnotism in, 183
  - Field of psychotherapy, 112
  - Force, definition of, in man, 117

- Foundation of rational therapeutics, 207, 218
  - of sexual instinct, 262
- Frankness, brutality of, of physician, 368
- Freud's psychoanalysis, technic of, 295
  - psychology, 288
    - philosophy of, 297
  - scientific psychotherapy, 290
  - sexual theories, 293
- Function of conscious mind, 91
  - of psychotherapy, 46
  - of subconscious mind, 92
- Functional activity, psychotherapy
  - increases, 43
  - disorders, premature orgasm cause of, 262
  - stimulant, water as, 346

## G

- Gallstones, improper use of suggestion in, 328
- Gastritis, example of psychotherapy in, 216
- Gastroenterocolitis, example of suggestion in, 369
  - improper use of suggestion in, 328
- General practitioner, psychotherapy an ally of the, 41
  - utility of suggestion, 55
- Gonorrhœa, example of hypnotism in, 168
- Grand mal, example of psychotherapy in, 213
- Guidance of sexual instinct, 255

## H

- Habit, overeating as, 342
  - religious emotion as, 342
  - use of tobacco as, 342
    - of whisky as, 342
- Health, contentment as aid to, 349
  - medicine as aid to, 349
  - optimism conduces to, 111
  - relation of philosophy to, 332
    - of religion to, 332
  - relaxation as aid to, 351
  - religious training as impediment to, 337
    - roughing it as means of, 347
    - self-control as factor in, 346
    - self-reliance as factor in, 323
- Heredity as factor in sexual instinct, 268
- Hot brick as factor in suggestion, 366
- Hypnoïdization of Sidis, 313



Hypnotic suggestion, definition of, 62  
 example of, 74, 77, 78  
 ignorance of, 69  
 philosophy of, 219  
 treatment, 166  
 effect of, 167

Hypnotism as proof of efficacy of suggestion, 69  
 definition of, 89, 162  
 demonstration of, 69  
 effect of, on subject, 81  
 example of, in alcoholism, 201, 224  
 in amputation, 191  
 in bronchitis, 189  
 in catheterization, 184  
 in fibroid tumor, 183  
 in gonorrhoea, 168  
 in hysteria, 192  
 in dental surgery, 195  
 in indigestion, 187  
 in insomnia, 197  
 in menorrhagia, 183  
 in migraine, 172  
 in morphin habit, 184  
 in nocturnal enuresis, 177  
 in obstetric anesthesia, 177  
 in operation for adenoids, 195  
 in psychical impotency, 196  
 in psycholepsy, 168  
 in psychoneurasthenia, 198  
 in psychoneurology, 176  
 in psychoneurotic indigestion, 175  
 in psychoneurotic paralysis, 173  
 in pulmonary tuberculosis, 203  
 in retention of urine, 184  
 in retroverted uterus, 178  
 in sciatica, 188  
 in supraorbital neuralgia, 200  
 in suprapubic cystotomy, 194  
 in urethritis, 182  
 in vomiting, 174  
 in vomiting of pregnancy, 190  
 in insomnia, 165  
 in nausea, 246  
 in sleep, 54  
 in vomiting, 246  
 not deleterious, 224  
 not used for amusement, 224  
 therapeutically applied, 162

Hypnotization, consent necessary for, 63, 83, 117  
 method of, 117

Hypnotized subject, definition of, 76  
 example of suggestion to, 75  
 waking, 81

Hysteria, example of hypnotism in, 192  
 symptoms mistaken for, 213

Hysterical emotion, religion as factor in, 302

## I

Ideal of man, woman's, 275  
 of woman, man's, 275

Ideals, persons assimilate, 355

Ideas, association of, 47  
 dissociation of, 48

Ignorance as factor in masturbation, 263  
 of hypnotic suggestion, 69

Impotency, masturbation as cause of, 263  
 example of hypnotism in psychical, 196

Improper use of suggestion in diphtheria, 327  
 in gallstones, 328  
 in gastroenterocolitis, 328  
 in mastoiditis, 328  
 in rheumatism, 327

Incorrect diagnosis, example of, 329, 330

Increase of resistive power by suggestion, 92

Incurable disease, suggestion in, 373

Indication for surgery, 137

Indigestion, example of hypnotism in, 187

Individual psychology, 22

Infallible, physicians not, 329

Infection prevented by suggestion, 92

Influence of parent on child, 382  
 of religious emotion on child, 384  
 of suggestion on child, 382

Inhibitor, psychotherapy as physical, 26

Injury of masturbation, 264

Insanity, suggestion in preventing, 107  
 theory of, 107

Insomnia, example of hypnotism in, 197  
 of psychotherapy in, 223  
 hypnotism in, 165

Instinct, religious emotion and sexual, 123

Intellectual acquisitions, 48  
 plane of man, 113

Intuition, subconscious mind perceives by, 99

Invalid wife, personality of physician as factor in, 357.

Investigation of psychotherapy, 28

Irritations, operations for reflex, 39

## J

Jealousy of neurologists, 296

Jung's association method, 217, 305  
 philosophy of, 308

## K

Knowledge, definition of, 112  
of psychotherapy, 28

## L

Lacerated cervix, example of suggestion in, 241  
Lack of self-mastery, example of, 391  
Lemon, example of suggestion with, 98, 130  
Life, mental attitude as factor in, 393  
Love as foundation of marriage, 273

## M

Magnetic healer, occasion for, 24  
healing, suggestion as factor in, 154  
Magnetism, definition of personal, 102  
Man, cosmos compared with, 113  
definition of force in, 117  
ego in, 114  
intellectual plane of, 113  
philosophy of, 87  
physical plane of, 113  
spiritual plane of, 113  
woman's ideal of, 275  
Man's ideal of woman, 275  
Marriage, love as foundation of, 273  
mistake of early, 274  
sensual intoxication as factor in, 272  
sexual instinct as incident in, 274  
Mastoiditis, improper use of suggestion in, 328  
Masturbation as cause of impotency, 263  
ignorance as factor in, 263  
injury of, 264  
religious emotion as factor in, 260  
Measures, psychotherapeutic, 21  
Medical colleges, psychotherapy in, 43  
practice, applicability of psychotherapy in, 28  
schools, physiological psychology in, 65  
Medicaments, psychotherapy not to supplant certain, 42  
psychotherapy to supplant certain, 42  
Medicine as aid to health, 349  
dogmatism of, 126  
education instead of, 380  
relation of psychotherapy to general practice of, 32  
Memory reproduces experiences, 50  
subconscious mind as storehouse of, 103

Menorrhagia, example of hypnotism in, 183  
Mental attitude as factor in life, 393  
of patient, effect of, 143  
causation and physical effects, 23  
development, diet for, 346  
example of suggestion in, 388  
suggestion as factor in, 388  
disease, neurasthenic symptom as factor in, 281  
psychotherapy in, 27  
effect of autosuggestion, 319  
equipment of physician, 127  
function, suggestion stimulates, 331  
healing, effects of, 23  
origin, diseases of, 23  
relief, example of effect of, 160  
science, suggestion as factor in, 154  
states, recurrent, 107  
stimulus, psychotherapy as, 26  
Metabolism, effect of mind on, 66  
Method of employing suggestion, 72  
of hypnotization, 117  
Migraine, example of hypnotism in, 172  
of psychotherapy in, 209  
Mind affected by environment, 89  
and body in psychotherapy, 37  
conscious, amenable to suggestion, 91  
definition of, 87  
of conscious, 88  
of subconscious, 90  
effect of, on catabolism, 66  
on metabolism, 66  
evolution of, 121  
function of conscious, 91  
of subconscious, 92  
subconscious, amenable to self-suggestion, 110  
amenable to suggestion, 91  
as storehouse of memory, 103  
perceives by intuition, 99  
the seat of emotion, 108  
Mission of physician, 207  
Mistake of early marriage, 274  
Mistakes of Christian science, 327  
Monism in psychotherapy, 44  
philosophy of, 112  
Monogamy as factor in modifying sexual excesses, 341  
as ideal of sexual relation, 258  
Monoidealism in religion, 334  
Moral stamina as therapeutic power, 375  
example of lack of, 375  
Morbid condition, suggestion in altering, 104  
consciousness, example of suggestion in, 158

- Morbid—cont'd.  
 suggestion, effect of, 138  
 Morbidity, corset as factor in, 346  
 worry as factor in, 344  
 Morphin habit, example of hypnotism in, 184  
 Mortality, cause of, in anesthesia, 232  
 from chloroform anesthesia, 229  
 from ether anesthesia, 229  
 Mother, psychotherapy in relation to expectant, 243  
 Music band, example of suggestion on, 98

## N

- Nature, psychotherapy as assistant to, 36  
 Nausea, hypnotism in, 246  
 Neglect of psychotherapy, 30  
 of self-healing process of nature, 110  
 Nephritis, example of suggestion in, 368  
 Nervous system, development of, 51  
 reproduces experiences, 38, 45, 117, 131  
 Neurasthenia as cause of appendicitis, 41  
 of pneumonia, 41  
 of stomach trouble, 41  
 of tuberculosis, 41  
 of women's diseases, 41  
 example of psychotherapy in, 105, 214, 217  
 of suggestion in, 151  
 sexual instinct as factor in, 147  
 Neurasthenic symptom as factor in mental disease, 281  
 Neuritis, example of suggestion in, 372  
 Neurologists, jealousy of, 296  
 Neurosis and psychosis basis of psychic action, 44  
 environment as factor in, 293, 302  
 psychotherapy as treatment in, 303  
 repressed personality as factor in, 293  
 sexuality as factor in, 293  
 suggestion as treatment in, 293  
 Nocturnal enuresis, example of hypnotism in, 177  
 Nonpharmaceutic therapeutics, 135  
 Normal complex, 47

## O

- Object of psychoanalysis, 312  
 Obsessions, 47  
 example of psychotherapy in, 210, 212, 226

- Obstetric anesthesia, example of hypnotism in, 177  
 Obstetrics, psychotherapy in, 247  
 psychologic factor in, 247  
 Occasion for osteopath, 24  
 for charlatan, 110  
 for charlatanism, 65  
 for Christian science, 52  
 for Christian scientist, 24  
 for Emanuel movement, 52  
 for magnetic healer, 24  
 Operations for reflex irritations, 39  
 Optimism as therapeutic factor, 97  
 conduces to anabolism, 97  
 to health, 111  
 of tuberculosis patients, 109  
 Organism, cosmos as an, 113  
 Organs, effect of emotion on, 108  
 Osteopath, occasion for, 24  
 psychotherapy as employed by, 136  
 Osteopathy, suggestion as factor in, 154  
 Overeating as habit, 342  
 prevalence of, 379

## P

- Pain in head, example of psychotherapy in, 215  
 Paquelin cautery in psychasthenia, 226  
 Paralysis, example of psychotherapy in, 215  
 psychic, 138  
 Parents, bisexual elements of, in child, 304  
 influence of, on child, 382  
 Parturition, example of dream analysis about, 313  
 of suggestion in, 249  
 technic of suggestion in, 250  
 Patient, co-operation of, as factor in therapeutics, 345  
 effect of mental attitude of, 143  
 essentials for the, 345  
 not to suggest kind of treatment, 223  
 Personal magnetism, definition of, 102  
 Personality, analysis of, 112  
 as factor in suggestion, 70  
 dissociation of, 107  
 of attendant, example of, 360  
 of person as factor in business, 354  
 of physician, 227  
 abuse of, 359  
 as depressant, 142  
 as factor in invalid wife, 357  
 as factor in therapeutics, 352  
 example of, 356, 360  
 Persons assimilate ideals, 355



- Persons—cont'd.  
 not susceptible to psychotherapy, 223  
 susceptible to psychotherapy, 223
- Pessimism as etiologic factor, 97  
 conduces to catabolism, 97  
 to disease, 111
- Phagocytic resistance, theory of, 95
- Phenomena, recognition of psychical, 49
- Philosophy of association method, 314  
 of autosuggestion, 318  
 of conservation of energy, 340  
 of Freud's psychology, 297  
 of hypnotic suggestion, 219  
 of Jung's association method, 308  
 of man, 87  
 of monism, 112  
 of psychoanalysis, 310  
 of psychotherapy, 50, 84, 208, 219, 239  
 of religion, 333  
 of sexual instinct, 258  
 of stimulus words, 306  
 of suggestion, 83  
 of therapeutics, 207  
 of training subconscious self, 525  
 relation of, to health, 332
- Physical development, diet for, 346  
 education as factor in, 381  
 effect of autosuggestion, 321  
 effects, mental causation and, 23  
 inhibitor, psychotherapy as, 26  
 plane of man, 113  
 therapeutics, psychotherapy in relation to, 21
- Physician, abuse of personality of, 359  
 armamentarium of, 127  
 as factor in environment, 366  
 as therapeutic factor, 95, 102  
 brutality of frankness of, 368  
 commercialism of, 375, 378  
 example of personality of, 356, 360  
 mental equipment of, 127  
 mission of, 207  
 personality of, 227  
 abuse of, 359  
 as depressant, 142  
 as factor in invalid wife, 357  
 as factor in therapeutics, 352  
 psychic duty of, 118, 120  
 psychotherapy as function of, 59  
 self-mastery as factor in, 390
- Physicians not infallible, 329
- Physiognomy, effect of self-suggestion on, 110
- Physiological acquisitions, 48  
 action of anesthetics, 232  
 of chloroform, 231
- Physiological action—cont'd.  
 of ether, 231  
 alteration, thought as factor in, 111  
 manifestation of sexual instinct, 271  
 psychology, definition of, 49  
 in medical schools, 65  
 stimulus, psychotherapy as, 26  
 therapeutics, psychotherapy in relation to, 21.
- Pleuritis, example of suggestion in, 151
- Pneumonia, example of psychotherapy in, 141  
 neurasthenia as cause of, 41  
 psychasthenia as cause of, 41  
 psychotherapy in, 362
- Post-hypnotic suggestion, definition of, 104
- Potentialities, suggestion in developing, 116
- Practical theoretical considerations, 87
- Pre-hypnotic suggestion, example of, 73, 77
- Premature orgasm cause of functional disorders, 262
- Prevalence of overeating, 379
- Prevention of bleeding by suggestion, 80
- Principle of Christian science, 319  
 of psychotherapy, 112
- Problems of psychotherapy, 112
- Progress, virility as factor in, 285
- Prophylactic factor, psychotherapy as, 33
- Psychasthenia as cause of appendicitis, 41  
 of pneumonia, 41  
 of stomach trouble, 41  
 of tuberculosis, 41  
 of women's diseases, 41  
 example of psychotherapy in, 211  
 Paquelin cautery in, 226
- Psychic action, neurosis and psychosis basis of, 44  
 duty of physician, 118, 120  
 force as factor in therapeutics, 380  
 paralysis, 138  
 stimulation, 53  
 trauma, definition of, 288
- Psychical impotency, example of hypnotism in, 196  
 phenomena, recognition of, 49
- Psychoanalysis, definition of, 288  
 dream analysis as factor in, 311  
 in treatment of psychoneurosis, 287  
 object of, 312  
 philosophy of, 310  
 psychotherapy same principle as, 315

## Psychoanalysis—cont'd.

study of, 316  
 technic of Freud's, 295

## Psychoanalytic psychotherapy, 27

Psycholepsy, example of hypnotism in, 168

Psychologic factor in obstetrics, 247

Psychological manifestation of sexual instinct, 271

Psychology, definition of physiological, 49

Freud's, 288

individual, 22

philosophy of Freud's, 297

physiological, in medical schools, 65

Psychomotor states, recurrent, 107

Psychoneurasthenia, example of hypnotism in, 198

Psychoneurology, example of hypnotism in, 176

Psychoneurosis as factor in sexual instinct, 259

psychoanalysis in treatment of, 287

sexual instinct as cause of, 255

Psychoneurotic indigestion, example of hypnotism in, 175

paralysis, example of hypnotism in, 173

Psychosis, neurosis and, basis of psychic action, 44

Psychotherapeutic diagnosis, correctness of, 218

measures, 21

value of Christian science, 135

of suggestion, 130

Psychotherapy an ally of general practitioner, 41

of surgeon, 41

applicability of, in medical practice, 28

as adjunct to therapeutics, 137, 140, 148

as assistant to nature, 36

as controlling cell function, 40

as curative agent, 42

as educational measure, 33

as employed by Christian scientists, 24

by Emanuelists, 136

by osteopaths, 136

by Weltmerites, 136

as function of physician, 59

as mental stimulus, 26

as physical inhibitor, 26

as physiological stimulus, 26

as prophylactic factor, 33

as therapeutic adjunct, 54

factor, 33

as treatment in neurosis, 303

awakening interest in, 21

## Psychotherapy—cont'd.

based on scientific principles, 24

definition of, 21, 48, 54

efficacy of, depends on demonstrator, 25

doubted, 238

employment of, without knowledge, 131, 132, 133, 134

example of, in anorexia, 212

in gastritis, 216

in grand mal, 213

in insomnia, 223

in migraine, 209

in neurasthenia, 105, 214, 217

in obsessions, 210, 212, 226

in pain in head, 215

in paralysis, 215

in pneumonia, 141

in psychasthenia, 211

in sticking pin into skin, 221

in utero-ovarian disease, 211

field of, 112

Freud's scientific, 290

function of, 46

in acute diseases, 140

in Bright's disease, 54

in chronic cases, 55

in epilepsy, 213

in extreme illness, 371

in medical colleges, 43

in mental diseases, 27

in obstetrics, 247

in pneumonia, 362

in relation to expectant mother, 243

to physical therapeutics, 21

to physiological therapeutics, 21

in sexual instinct, 265

in tinnitus aurium, 94

in tuberculosis, 36

in uterine fibroid, 146

increases functional activity, 43

investigation of, 28

knowledge of, 28

mind and body in, 37

monism in, 44

neglect of, 30

not to supplant certain medications, 42

of universal application, 24

persons not susceptible to, 223

persons susceptible to, 223

philosophy of, 50, 84, 208, 219, 239

principles of, 112

problems of, 112

psychoanalytic, 27

rationale of, 207

relation of, to general practice of medicine, 32

to general practice of surgery, 32

requirements of application of, 326

- Psychotherapy—cont'd.  
 same principle as psychoanalysis, 315  
 scientific basis of, 44  
 special function of, 34  
 suggestion as tool of, 60  
 the result of evolution, 57  
 theory of, 46  
 to supplant certain medicaments, 42  
 value of, 218, 227  
 work as factor in, 343  
 Pulmonary tuberculosis, example of hypnotism in, 203
- R
- Rational therapeutics, 207  
 foundation of, 207, 218  
 Rationale of psychotherapy, 207  
 Reason as a factor, 119  
 Recognition of psychical phenomena, 49  
 Recurrent mental states, 107  
 psychomotor states, 107  
 Reflex irritations, operations for, 39  
 Relation of philosophy to health, 332  
 of psychotherapy to general practice of medicine, 32  
 to general practice of surgery, 32  
 of religion to health, 332  
 Relaxation as aid to health, 351  
 Religion as factor in hysterical emotion, 302  
 monoidealism in, 334  
 philosophy of, 333  
 suggestion as factor in, 157, 284  
 science as factor in, 333  
 relation of, to health, 332  
 Religious belief, circumstances form, 338  
 emotion and sexual instinct, 123  
 as factor in erotic emotion, 334  
 as factor in masturbation, 260  
 as factor in sexual instinct, 259  
 as habit, 342  
 deleterious effect of, 335  
 effect of, same as excessive sensuality, 335  
 influence of, on child, 384  
 training as impediment to health, 337  
 Repressed personality as factor in neurosis, 293  
 sexuality as factor in neurosis, 293  
 Requirements of application of, 326  
 Resistance, theory of phagocytic, 95  
 Resistive power, increase of, by suggestion, 92  
 venereal diseases lessen, 256
- Retention of urine, example of hypnotism in, 184  
 Retroverted uterus, example of hypnotism in, 178  
 Rheumatism, improper use of suggestion in, 327  
 Roughing it as means of health, 347
- S
- Safeguard, correct diagnosis as, 326  
 Sciatica, example of hypnotism in, 188  
 Science as factor in religion, 333  
 Scientific basis of psychotherapy, 44  
 principles, psychotherapy based on, 24  
 Self-control as factor in health, 346  
 Self-healing process of nature, neglect of, 110  
 Self-mastery as factor in physician, 390  
 in suggestion, 391  
 as fine art, 388  
 example of lack of, 391  
 Self-preservation instinct, sexual instinct second to, 341  
 Self-reliance as factor in health, 323  
 Self-suggestion, effect of, on physiology, 110  
 requires confidence, 145  
 subconscious mind amenable to, 110  
 Sensual intoxication as factor in marriage, 272  
 Sensuality, effect of religious emotion same as excessive, 335  
 Sexual excesses, monogamy as factor in modifying, 341  
 instinct as cause of psychoneurosis, 255  
 as factor in neurasthenia, 147  
 as factor in trauma, 289  
 as incident in marriage, 273  
 beastiality in, 274  
 education as factor in, 269, 276  
 environment as factor in, 269  
 ethical consideration of, 266  
 foundation of, 262  
 guidance of, 255  
 heredity as factor in, 268  
 philosophy of, 258  
 psychological manifestation of, 271  
 psychoneurosis as factor in, 259  
 psychotherapy in, 265  
 religious emotion and, 123  
 religious emotion as factor in, 259  
 second to self-preservation instinct, 341  
 relation, monogamy as ideal of, 258  
 theories, Freud's, 293



Sidis, hypnoidization of, 313  
 Sleep, hypnotism in, 54  
   suggestion in, 54  
 Snake, example of dream analysis  
   about, 312  
 Soporific, example of suggestion as,  
   150  
 Source of membership of Christian sci-  
   ence, 337  
 Special function of psychotherapy, 34  
 Spine, example of suggestion in affec-  
   tion of, 372  
 Spiritual plane of man, 113  
 Static machine in suggestion, 227  
 Sticking pin in body by suggestion, 79,  
   81  
   into skin, example of psychother-  
   apy in, 221  
 Stiff body, example of suggestion in,  
   144  
   arm, example of suggestion in, 143  
   limb, example of suggestion in, 138  
 Stiffening of arm by suggestion, 79  
   of body by suggestion, 80  
 Stimulation, psychic, 53  
 Stimulus, psychotherapy as mental, 26  
   as physiological, 26  
   words, definition of, 306  
   philosophy of, 306  
 Stomach trouble, neurasthenia as  
   cause of, 41  
   psychasthenia as cause of, 41  
 Study of psychoanalysis, 316  
 Subconscious, definition of, 52  
   mind amenable to self-suggestion,  
   110  
   amenable to suggestion, 91  
   as storehouse of memory, 103  
   definition of, 90  
   function of, 92  
   perceives by intuition, 99  
   the seat of emotion, 108  
   self, philosophy of training, 325  
   training, 318  
 Suggestion, abuse of, 59  
   anesthesia produced by, 73  
   as adjunct to anesthesia, 238  
   as factor, 120  
   in Christian science, 154  
   in divine healing, 154  
   in faith cure, 154  
   in magnetic healing, 154  
   in mental development, 388  
   in mental science, 154  
   in osteopathy, 154  
   in religion, 157, 284  
   as tool of psychotherapy, 60  
   as treatment in neurosis, 293  
   bleeding prevented by, 93  
   conscious mind amenable to, 91

Suggestion—cont'd.  
   definition of, 60, 130  
   of hypnotic, 62  
   of post-hypnotic, 104  
   dream analysis as factor in, 312  
   effect of, in Christian science, 62  
   morbid, 138  
   on character, 60  
   employed in theology, 60  
   example of, as soporific, 150  
   hypnotic, 74, 77, 78  
   in affection of spine, 372  
   in circumcision, 240  
   in dentistry, 228  
   in exhaustion, 148  
   in gastroenterocolitis, 369  
   in lacerated cervix, 241  
   in mental development, 388  
   in morbid consciousness, 158  
   in nephritis, 368  
   in neurasthenia, 151  
   in neuritis, 372  
   in parturition, 249  
   in pleuritis, 151  
   in stiff arm, 143  
   in stiff body, 144  
   in stiff limb, 138  
   in surgery, 229  
   in warts, 145  
   on music band, 98  
   pre-hypnotic, 73, 77  
   to hypnotized subject, 75  
   with clay pills, 131  
   with lemon, 130  
   general utility of, 55  
   hot brick as factor in, 366  
   hypnotism as proof of efficacy of, 69  
   ignorance of hypnotic, 69  
   improper use of, in diphtheria, 327  
   in gallstones, 328  
   in gastroenterocolitis, 328  
   in mastoiditis, 328  
   in rheumatism, 327  
   in altering morbid condition, 104  
   in chloroform anesthesia, 238, 240  
   in incurable disease, 373  
   in developing potentialities, 116  
   in education, 381  
   in fevers, 139  
   in preventing insanity, 107  
   in sleep, 54  
   in surgical anesthesia, 235  
   in syphilis, 139  
   increase of resistive power by, 92  
   infection prevented by, 92  
   influence of, on child, 382  
   method of employing, 72  
   not used for amusement, 224  
   philosophy of, 83  
   of hypnotic, 219

## Suggestion—cont'd.

- personality as factor in, 70
  - prevention of bleeding by, 80
  - psychotherapeutic value of, 130
  - self-mastery as factor in, 391
  - static machine in, 227
  - sticking pin in body by, 79, 81
  - stiffening of arm by, 79
    - of body by, 80
  - stimulates bodily function, 331
    - mental function, 331
  - subconscious mind amenable to, 91
  - technic of, in parturition, 250
  - therapeutic effect of, 109
  - therapeutics in conjunction with, 253
- Suggestive therapeutics, definition of, 110
- Supraorbital neuralgia, example of hypnotism in, 200
- Suprapubic cystotomy, example of hypnotism in, 194
- Surgeon, psychotherapy an ally of the, 41
- Surgery, example of suggestion in, 229
  - indication for, 137
  - relation of psychotherapy to general practice of, 32
- Surgical anesthesia, suggestion in, 235
  - with ether and suggestion, 237
- Symptoms mistaken for epilepsy, 213
  - for hysteria, 213
- Syphology, suggestion in, 139

## T

- Technic of Freud's psychoanalysis, 295
  - of suggestion in parturition, 250
- Telepathy, example of, 100
  - theory of, 99
- Theism, anthropomorphic, 125
- Theology, dogmatism of, 126
  - suggestion employed in, 60
- Theoretical considerations, practical, 87
- Theory of insanity, 107
  - of phagocytic resistance, 95
  - of psychotherapy, 46
  - of telepathy, 99
  - of thought transference, 99
- Therapeutic adjunct, psychotherapy as, 54
  - application of hypnotism, 162
  - effect of suggestion, 109
  - factor, optimism as, 97
    - physician as, 95, 103
    - psychotherapy as, 33
  - power, moral stamina as, 375

- Therapeutics, co-operation of patient as factor in, 345
  - definition of suggestive, 110
  - environment in, 364
  - foundation of rational, 207, 218
  - in conjunction with suggestion, 253
  - nonpharmaceutic, 135
  - personality of physician as factor in, 352
  - philosophy of, 207
  - psychic force as factor in, 380
  - psychotherapy as adjunct to, 137, 140, 148
    - in relation to physical, 21
    - in relation to physiological, 21
  - rational, 207
- Thought as factor in physiological alteration, 111
  - transference, example of, 100
  - theory of, 99
- Tinnitus aurium, psychotherapy in, 94
- Tobacco, use of, as habit, 342
- Training subconscious self, 318
- Trauma, definition of psychic, 288
  - sexual instinct as factor in, 289
- Treatment, hypnotic, 166
  - patient not to suggest kind of, 223
- Tuberculosis, example of hypnotism
  - in pulmonary, 203
  - neurasthenia as cause of, 41
  - psychasthenia as cause of, 41
  - psychotherapy in, 36
  - patients, optimism of, 109

## U

- Urethritis, example of hypnotism in, 182
- Urine, example of hypnotism in retention of, 184
- Use of tobacco as habit, 342
  - of whisky as habit, 342
- Uterine fibroid, psychotherapy in, 146
- Utero-ovarian disease, example of psychotherapy in, 211

## V

- Value of psychotherapy, 218, 227
  - in epilepsy, 213
- Venereal diseases, lessen resistive power, 256
- Virility as factor in progress, 285
- Vis medicatrix naturæ in disease, 40
- Vomiting, example of hypnotism in, 174
  - hypnotism in, 246
  - of pregnancy, example of hypnotism in, 199

## W

- Waking a hypnotized subject, 81  
Warts, example of suggestion in, 145  
Water as functional stimulant, 346  
Weltmerites, psychotherapy as employed by, 136  
Whisky, use of, as habit, 342
- Will as factor, 119  
Woman, man's ideal of, 275  
Woman's ideal of man, 275  
Women's diseases, neurasthenia as cause of, 41  
    psychasthenia as cause of, 41  
Work as factor in psychotherapy, 343  
Worry as factor in morbidity, 344























~~RETURN TO  
DEPARTMENT OF PSYCHOLOGY LIBRARY  
UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO~~



FL 15-2 56

MN  
M

Munro, Henry Sumner

603100

A handbook of suggestive therapeutics. 3d ed.

University of Toronto  
Library

DO NOT  
REMOVE  
THE  
CARD  
FROM  
THIS  
POCKET

Acme Library Card Pocket  
LOWE-MARTIN CO. LIMITED

